



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

DUPL. SOLD. = 718.6 1. 448

Standard Classical Works.

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY



FROM THE  
AMERICAN ANTIQUARIAN SOCIETY  
BY EXCHANGE OF DUPLICATES

March 22, 1918

**Cicero's Select Orations.** With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Prac-  
DER, D.D.

ewritten,  
ALBERT

Prose  
DER, D.D.

an Imi-  
JOHNSON,  
edition,  
al Index,

most un-  
g educa-

cal Latin  
Exercise  
Series of  
ysis, and  
ness, Ph.  
mo. 302

dition of  
tical syn-  
from its

. 12mo.

. With  
graphical  
SPENCER,



3 2044 097 063 382

**PROF. HARKNESS'S SERIES**  
**OF**  
**LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.**

---

The unprecedented success of Harkness's Latin Grammar, and the consequent demand for a New Series of Elementary Latin Text-Books based upon that work, early induced the Publishers to issue such a series. Accordingly, one year since, a Latin Reader by the same author, intended as a companion to the Grammar, was published, and went into immediate and general use. We now have the pleasure of announcing the Introductory Latin Book as also ready.

This volume, as the name implies, is introductory to the entire series. It is intended not only to supply the place of the author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, but also to be placed in the hands of every beginner in Latin. It aims to furnish the pupil the very knowledge which he especially needs to enable him to start aright in his course. The great objection to most First Latin Books, that they fill the memory of the learner with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this work; as all the grammatical portions of it are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar, to which it is introductory. We ask the attention of Classical Instructors to this volume, confident that they will find in it the aid which they have long needed in the work of the class-room.

The several works in the Series of Latin Text-Books now announced, will be carefully adapted to each other, and will be made to develop one uniform system of instruction. Of the method adopted in these works we deem it unnecessary to speak. Its excellence, as illustrated in the Grammar and Reader, is already abundantly attested by the unanimous verdict of Classical Instructors.

The Series contemplates the following works:

1. An Introductory Latin Book.

This is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin.

2. A Grammar, Reader, and Latin Composition.

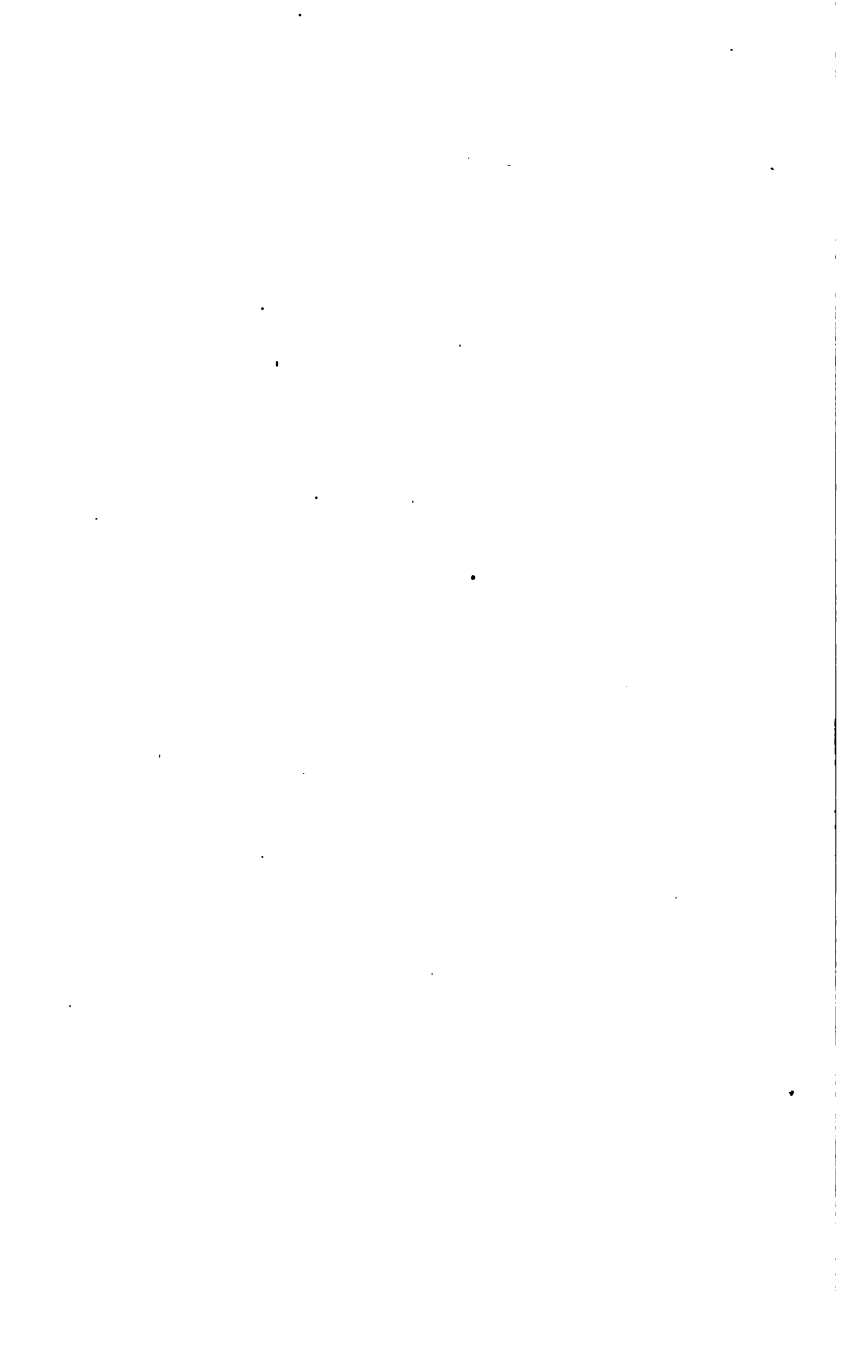
These three works are intended to be commenced in concert. The first will accompany the student throughout his whole course of Latin study; the second is introductory to Latin authors; while the third will furnish a progressive series of exercises in writing Latin, so prepared as to run parallel with the usual course of reading in that language. Until this last work is published, the author's Second Latin Book will furnish Exercises in Latin Composition.

3. Editions of Latin authors with copious references to Harkness's Latin Grammar.

**D. APPLETON & CO.,**

**Publishers.**

**NEW YORK, July, 1866.**





## Standard Classical Works.

---

**Cicero de Officiis.** With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. TRACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

**Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of Latin Language and Literature in Brown Univ'y. 12mo. 575 pages.

**Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the Use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown Univ'y. 12mo. 329 pages.

**Quintus Curtius: Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great.** Edited and Illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.

**Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.\*** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGEON. 12mo. 397 pages.

It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.

**The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 458 pages.

**Tacitus' Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.

**Virgil's Æneid.\*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 593 pages.

The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

---

## Greek Text-Books.

**A First Greek Book\* and Introductory Reader.** By A. HARKNESS, Ph. D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book," "Second Latin Book," &c. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.

—♦— SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.



George Maynard, Paxton. Apr. 30<sup>th</sup> 18.

*over omnia vires*

THE PROPERTY OF

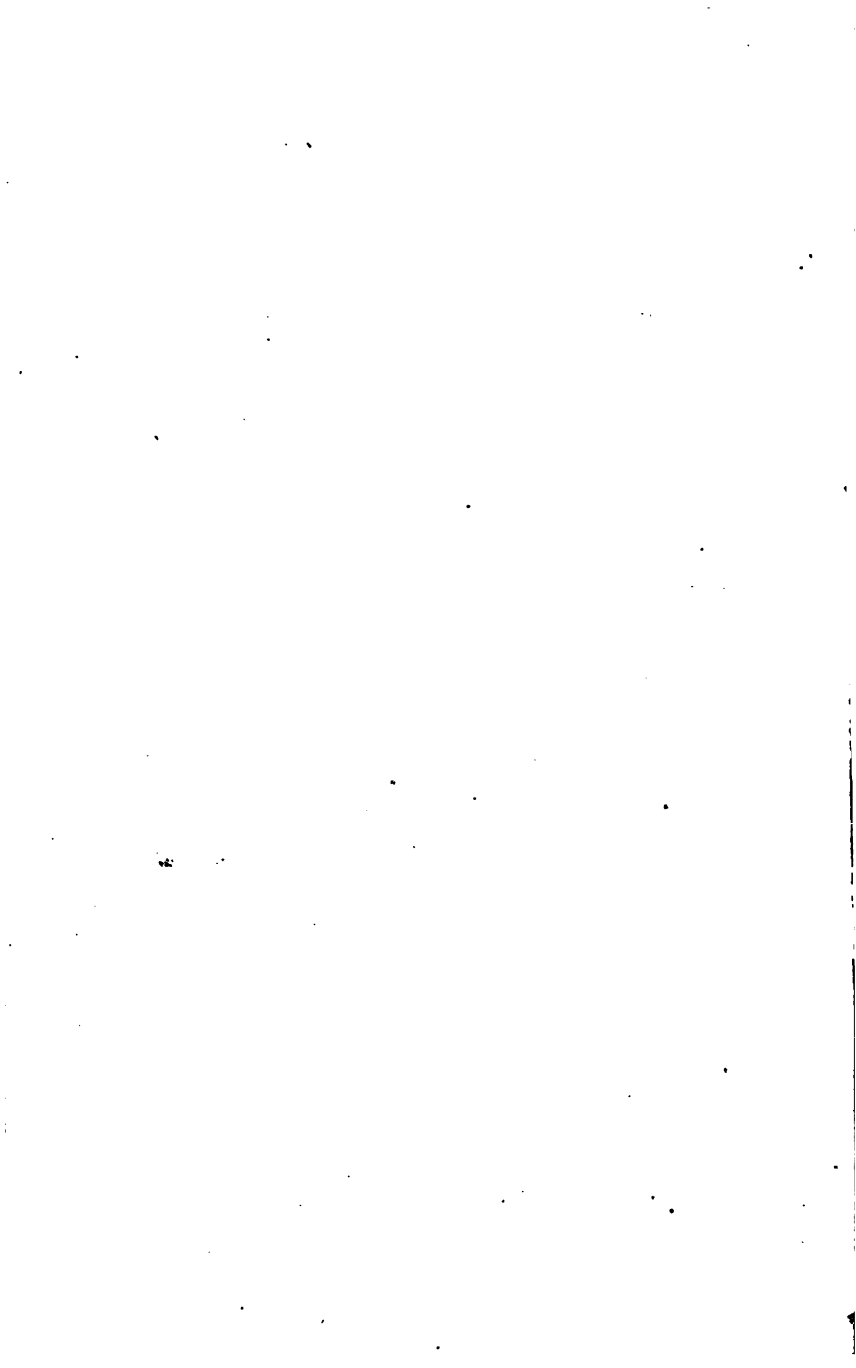
George Maynard.

WORCESTER, MASS.

1873.

A curious fact about the dead languages  
is that they still live. [Harper's Bazar.

It was talked to death.



A  
LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY,

AUTHOR OF

"A FIRST LATIN BOOK," "A SECOND LATIN BOOK," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

NEW YORK  
D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,  
448 & 445 BROADWAY.  
LONDON: 16 LITTLE BRITAIN.  
1867.

Edw. T 918.67.448



*American Antiquarian Society*

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.

## P R E F A C E .

---

THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers, that the subject of Latin Grammar, often regarded as dry and difficult, may be presented to the learner in a form at once simple, attractive, and philosophical. It is the aim of this manual to aid the instructor in the attainment of this most desirable end.

That the present is a favorable time for the production of a Latin Grammar scarcely admits of a doubt. Never before were there such facilities for the work. The last quarter of a century has formed an epoch in the study of language and in the methods of instruction. During this period some of the most gifted minds of Germany have been gathering the choicest treasures in the field of philology, while others have been equally successful in devising improved methods of instruction. In our own country too, the more enterprising teachers have caught the spirit of improvement, and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

laws, while parallel with this, in smaller type, it furnishes a fuller discussion of irregularities and exceptions for later study and for reference.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. In the regular paradigms, both of declension and of conjugation, the stems and endings have been distinguished by a difference of type, thus keeping constantly before the pupil the significance of the two essential elements which enter into the composition of inflected forms.

6. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself. The leading principles of construction have been put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after being separately discussed, are presented in a body at the close of the Syntax.

7. The subdivisions in each discussion are developed, as far as practicable, from the leading idea which underlies the whole subject. Thus in the treatment of cases, moods, and tenses, various uses, comparatively distinct in themselves, are found to centre around some leading idea or thought, thus imparting to the subject both unity and simplicity.

8. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

9. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with



the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher's patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive. The different uses have not only been carefully classified, but also distinguished by characteristic and appropriate terms, convenient for the class-room.

For the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual in the study of Latin, it is in contemplation to publish a smaller Grammar on precisely the same plan as the present work, and with the same mode of treatment. This will be especially adapted to the wants of those who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.

A Latin Reader, prepared with special reference to this work and intended as a companion to it, will be published at an early day.

In conclusion the author cheerfully acknowledges his indebtedness to other scholars, who have labored in the same field. The classification of verbs is founded in part on that of Grotefend and Krüger, a mode of treatment generally adopted in the recent German works on the subject, and well exhibited by Allen in his *Analysis of Latin Verbs*.

In Prosody much aid has been derived from the excellent works of Ramsay and Habenicht.

On the general subjects of Etymology and Syntax, his indebtedness is less direct, though perhaps no less real. His views of philology have been formed in a great measure under the moulding influence of the great German masters; and perhaps few Latin Grammars of any repute have appeared within the last half century, either in this country, England, or Germany, from which he has not received valuable suggestions. In the actual work of preparation, however, he has carried out his own plan, and presented his own modes of treatment, but he has aimed to avoid all untried novelties and to admit only that which is sustained by the highest authority, and confirmed by the actual experience of the class-room.

The author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous Instructors who have favored him with valuable suggestions; especially to his esteemed friend and colleague, Professor J. L. Lincoln, of this University.



# CONTENTS.

## PART FIRST ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet, . . . . .	1
Sounds of Letters, . . . . .	2
I. English Method of Pronunciation, . . . . .	2
II. Continental Method, . . . . .	5
Syllables, . . . . .	6
Quantity, . . . . .	7
Accentuation, . . . . .	7

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### NOUNS.

Gender, . . . . .	8
Person and Number, . . . . .	9
Cases, . . . . .	10
Declensions, . . . . .	10
First Declension, . . . . .	11
Greek Nouns, . . . . .	11
Gender, . . . . .	12
Second Declension, . . . . .	12
Greek Nouns, . . . . .	14
Gender, . . . . .	15
Third Declension, . . . . .	15
Class I.—With Nominative Ending, . . . . .	16
Class II.—Without Nominative Ending, . . . . .	17
Formation of Cases, . . . . .	20
Greek Peculiarities, . . . . .	29
Gender, . . . . .	30
Fourth Declension, . . . . .	34
Gender, . . . . .	35
Fifth Declension, . . . . .	36
Gender, . . . . .	36
Comparative View of Declensions, . . . . .	37
General Table of Gender, . . . . .	39
Declension of Compound Nouns, . . . . .	39

	Page.
Irregular Nouns, . . . . .	40
I. Indeclinable, . . . . .	40
II. Defective, . . . . .	41
III. Heteroclites, . . . . .	42
IV. Heterogeneous, . . . . .	43

## CHAPTER II.

## ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions, . . . . .	44
Third Declension, . . . . .	47
Formation of Cases, . . . . .	49
Irregular Adjectives, . . . . .	50
Comparison, . . . . .	51
I. Terminational Comparison, . . . . .	51
Irregular, . . . . .	51
Defective, . . . . .	52
II. Adverbial Comparison, . . . . .	53
Numerals, . . . . .	54
I. Numeral Adjectives, . . . . .	54
II. Numeral Adverbs, . . . . .	58

## CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns, . . . . .	59
Possessive, . . . . .	60
Demonstrative, . . . . .	60
Relative, . . . . .	62
Interrogative, . . . . .	63
Indefinite, . . . . .	63

## CHAPTER IV.

## VERBS.

Voices, Moods, . . . . .	65
Tenses, . . . . .	66
Numbers, Persons, . . . . .	67
Conjugation, . . . . .	67
Paradigms of Verbs, . . . . .	68
Synopsis of Conjugation, . . . . .	88
Deponent Verbs, . . . . .	91
Periphrastic Conjugation, . . . . .	94
Contractions and Peculiarities of Conjugation, . . . . .	95
Formation of the Parts of Verbs, . . . . .	96
Table of Verbal Inflections, . . . . .	98
Comparative View of Conjugations, . . . . .	102
Formation of Principal Parts, . . . . .	104
I. Regular Formations, . . . . .	104
Euphonic Changes, . . . . .	105
II. Irregular Formations, . . . . .	106
Principal Parts in Compounds, . . . . .	109

	Page.
Classification of Verbs, . . . . .	110
First Conjugation, . . . . .	110
Second Conjugation, . . . . .	112
Third Conjugation, . . . . .	115
Fourth Conjugation, . . . . .	125
Irregular Verbs, . . . . .	127
Defective " . . . . .	134
Impersonal " . . . . .	136

## CHAPTER V.

### PARTICLES.

Adverbs, . . . . .	137
Prepositions, . . . . .	139
Conjunctions, . . . . .	139
Interjections, . . . . .	141

## CHAPTER VI.

### FORMATION OF WORDS.

Derivation of Words, . . . . .	141
Derivative Nouns, . . . . .	141
Derivative Adjectives, . . . . .	145
Derivative Verbs, . . . . .	147
Derivative Adverbs, . . . . .	149
Composition of Words, . . . . .	150
Compound Nouns, . . . . .	152
Compound Adjectives, . . . . .	152
Compound Verbs, . . . . .	153
Compound Adverbs, . . . . .	153

## PART THIRD.

### SYNTAX.

## CHAPTER I

### SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences, . . . . .	154
II. Simple Sentences, . . . . .	155
III. Complex Sentences, . . . . .	158
IV. Compound Sentences, . . . . .	159

## CHAPTER II.

### SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

I. Agreement of Nouns, . . . . .	160
Predicate Nouns, . . . . .	160
Appositives, . . . . .	161
II. Nominative, . . . . .	162

Section.	Page.
III. Vocative, . . . . .	163
IV. Accusative, . . . . .	163
I. Direct Object, . . . . .	164
Two Accusatives, . . . . .	165
II. Subject of Infinitive, . . . . .	167
III. Agreement of Accusative, . . . . .	167
IV. Accusative in an Adverbial sense, . . . . .	168
With or without Prepositions, . . . . .	168
Accusative of Time and Space, . . . . .	168
Accusative of Limit, . . . . .	168
Accusative of Specification, . . . . .	169
V. Accusative in Exclamations, . . . . .	169
V. Dative, . . . . .	170
I. Dative with Verbs—Indirect Object, . . . . .	170
Dative of Advantage, . . . . .	171
Dative with Compounds, . . . . .	172
Dative of Possessor, . . . . .	173
Dative of Apparent Agent, . . . . .	173
Ethical Dative, . . . . .	174
Two Datives, . . . . .	174
II. Dative with Adjectives, . . . . .	175
III. Dative with Nouns and Adverbs, . . . . .	176
VI. Genitive, . . . . .	176
I. Genitive with Nouns, . . . . .	177
II. Genitive with Adjectives, . . . . .	180
III. Genitive with Verbs, . . . . .	182
Predicate Genitive, . . . . .	182
Genitive of Place, . . . . .	183
Genitive in Special Constructions, . . . . .	183
Genitive and Accusative, . . . . .	186
IV. Genitive with Adverbs, . . . . .	187
VII. Ablative, . . . . .	187
I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, . . . . .	188
Ablative of Price, . . . . .	190
Ablative with Comparatives, . . . . .	190
Ablative of Difference, . . . . .	191
Ablative in Special Constructions, . . . . .	192
II. Ablative of Place, . . . . .	193
Ablative of Source and Separation, . . . . .	195
III. Ablative of Time, . . . . .	196
IV. Ablative of Characteristic, . . . . .	197
V. Ablative of Specification, . . . . .	198
VI. Ablative Absolute, . . . . .	198
VII. Ablative with Prepositions, . . . . .	199
VIII. Cases with Prepositions, . . . . .	199

## CHAPTER III.

### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives, . . . . .	201
Use of Adjectives, . . . . .	202
Comparison, . . . . .	203

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

	Page.
Agreement of Pronouns, . . . . .	204
Personal and Possessive Pronouns, . . . . .	206
Reflexive Use, . . . . .	206
Demonstrative Pronouns, . . . . .	208
Relative Pronouns, . . . . .	209
Interrogative Pronouns, . . . . .	210
Indefinite Pronouns, . . . . .	211

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Section.		
I.	Agreement of Verbs, . . . . .	212
II.	Use of Voices, . . . . .	214
III.	Tenses of the Indicative, . . . . .	215
IV.	Use of the Indicative, . . . . .	218
V.	Tenses of the Subjunctive, . . . . .	219
	Sequence of Tenses, . . . . .	220
VI.	Use of the Subjunctive, . . . . .	223
	I. Potential Subjunctive, . . . . .	223
	II. Subjunctive of Desire, . . . . .	225
	III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result, . . . . .	226
	IV. Subjunctive of Condition, . . . . .	232
	V. Subjunctive of Concession, . . . . .	236
	VI. Subjunctive of Cause and Time, . . . . .	238
	VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions, . . . . .	242
	VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction, . . . . .	244
	IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse, . . . . .	245
	Moods in the Oratio Obliqua, . . . . .	246
	Tenses in Oratio Obliqua, . . . . .	247
VII.	Imperative, . . . . .	248
	I. Tenses of the Imperative, . . . . .	248
	II. Use of the Imperative, . . . . .	249
VIII.	Infinitive, . . . . .	250
	I. Tenses of the Infinitive, . . . . .	251
	II. Subject of the Infinitive, . . . . .	252
	III. Predicate after the Infinitive, . . . . .	253
	IV. Construction of the Infinitive, . . . . .	254
IX.	Subject and Object Clauses, . . . . .	258
X.	Gerund, . . . . .	262
	Gerundive, . . . . .	263
XI.	Supine, . . . . .	266
XII.	Participles, . . . . .	268

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs, . . . . .	270
Prepositions, . . . . .	271
Conjunctions, . . . . .	271
Interjections, . . . . .	274

## CHAPTER VII.

Rules of Syntax, . . . . .	Page 274
----------------------------	-------------

## CHAPTER VIII.

## ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Section.

I. Arrangement of Words, . . . . .	281
II. Arrangement of Clauses, . . . . .	285

## PART FOURTH.

## PROSODY.

## CHAPTER I.

## QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity, . . . . .	287
II. Special Rules of Quantity, . . . . .	289
I. Quantity of Final Syllables, . . . . .	289
II. Quantity in Increments, . . . . .	292
III. Quantity of Derivative Endings, . . . . .	295
IV. Quantity of Stem Syllables, . . . . .	297

## CHAPTER II.

## VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject, . . . . .	300
I. Metrical Feet, . . . . .	300
II. Verses, . . . . .	302
III. Figures of Prosody, . . . . .	304
II. Varieties of Verse, . . . . .	305
I. Dactylic Verse, . . . . .	305
II. Anapaestic Verse, . . . . .	308
III. Trochaic Verse, . . . . .	308
IV. Iambic Verse, . . . . .	309
V. Ionic Verse, . . . . .	312
VI. Choriambic Verse, . . . . .	312
VII. Logaeodic Verse, . . . . .	313
VIII. Miscellaneous Verses, . . . . .	315
III. Versification of Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Juvenal, . . . . .	315

## APPENDIX.

Figures of Speech, . . . . .	320
Latin Authors, . . . . .	322
Roman Calendar, . . . . .	323
Roman Money, Weights, and Measures, . . . . .	325
Abbreviations, . . . . .	327
Index of Verbs, . . . . .	328
Index of Subjects, . . . . .	336



# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts:

I. **ORTHOGRAPHY**, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. **ETYMOLOGY**, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. **SYNTAX**, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. **PROSODY**, which treats of quantity and versification.

---

## PART FIRST.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

---

#### ALPHABET.

2. **THE** Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.

1. *U* supplies the place of *w*.

2. *H* is only a breathing, and not strictly entitled to the rank of a letter.

3. *J* and *v* did not originally belong to the Latin: their places were supplied respectively by *i* and *u*, which were used both as vowels and as consonants.

4. *K* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in words of Greek origin.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes:

I. *Vowels*, . . . . . a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. *Consonants* :

1. Liquids, . . . . . l, m, n, r.

2. Spirants, . . . . . h, s.

3. Mutes: 1) Labials, . . . . . p, b, f, v.

2) Palatals, . . . . . c, g, k, q, j.

3) Linguals, . . . . . t, d.

4. Double Consonants, . . . . . x, z.

#### 4. Combinations of Letters.—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are—*ae, oe, au*.

2. *Double Consonants*—*x = cs or gs; z = ds or ts*.

3. *Ch, ph, th* are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c, p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

### SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Methods*.<sup>1</sup> For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

#### I. ENGLISH METHOD.

##### 1. Sounds of Vowels.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds. But

1. *These sounds* in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them.

2. *R, final*, or followed by another consonant, greatly obscures the vowel sound: thus *e, i* and *u* before *r* in *ver, vir* and *fur*, are scarcely distinguishable from each other, as in the English *her, fir, fur*; *a* and *o* before *r* are pronounced as in *far, for*, but between *qu* and *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar'-tus* as in *quarter*.

3. *Dr, following qua*, gives to *a* something of the sound of *o*: *quad'-rupes*, as in *quadruped*.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

—*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel: <sup>1</sup> *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.<sup>2</sup>

3. In penultimate<sup>3</sup> and unaccented syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A* unaccented has the sound of a final in *America*: *men'-sa*.

2) *A* after *qu*. See 6. 2.

3) *I* (also *y*) unaccented, not final, generally has the short sound of *e*; *nobilis* (nob'-e-lis), *Amycus* (Am'-e-cus). But in the first syllable of a word it has—(1) before an accented vowel or diphthong, its long sound, *di'-e-bus*; and (2) before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, sometimes the long sound, *i-do'-ne-us*; and sometimes the short sound, *philosophus* (phe-los'-o-phus).

4) *I* and *u* in special combinations. See 9. 2 and 4.

5) Before *bl*, *gl*, *tl*.—*U* has the short sound before *bl*; and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl*: *Pub-lic'-o-la*, *Ag-la'-o-phon*, *At'-las*.

6) In compounds, when the first part is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the short sound: *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the long sound before a consonant (8. 1), retain that sound in compounds: *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*.

**8. Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound—*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*: except *post*, *es* final, and *os* final in plural cases: *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In penultimate and unaccented syllables before *x* or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7. 3): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*.

3. In all other accented syllables before a consonant: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A*, *e*, and *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) fol-

<sup>1</sup> Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *etibi* the short sound.

<sup>2</sup> In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *t* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel; for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrya*.

<sup>3</sup> Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

lowed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, have the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl* (7. 5), has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

3) *Compounds*. See 7. 6.

## 2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like *e* :

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (Ce'-sar), *Oe'-ta* (E'-ta).

2) short: *Daed'-ā-lus* (Ded'-a-lus), *Oed'-i-pus*

*Au*, as in author: *au'-rum*.

*Eu*, . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.

1. *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: *hei*, *proin*.

2. *I* between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y* and another vowel has the sound of *y* consonant in yes: *Acha'ia* (A-ka'-ya), *Pompe'ius* (Pom-pe'-yus), *Latoia* (La-to'-ya), *Harpyia* (Har-py'-ya). These combinations of *i* with the following vowel are sometimes called semi-consonant diphthongs.

3. *Ui*, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui*, *hui*, *huic*.

4. *U*, with the sound of *w*, sometimes unites with the following vowel or diphthong:—(1) after *q*: *qui* (kwi), *qua*, *que*, *quae*:—(2) generally after *g*: *lingua* (lin'-gwa), *lin'-guis*, *lin'-guae*:—(3) sometimes after *s*: *sua'-deo* (swa'-deo). These combinations of *u* are analogous to those of *i* mentioned above under 2.

## 3. Sounds of Consonants.

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English, but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae* and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (sedo), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'-do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*. But

1) *Ch* is hard like *k*: *chorus* (ko'-rus), *Chi-os* (Ki'os). But see 13. 2.

2) *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound, as in son, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* final, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

2) In a few words *s* has the sound of *z*, because so pronounced in English words derived from them: *Cae'-sar*, Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser; *phys'-i-cus*, physic, etc.

3. *T* has its regular English sound, as in time: *ti-mor*, *to-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*; *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor). But

1) At the beginning of a word it has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus* (Zanthus).

2) Between *e* or *u* and an accented vowel, it has the sound of *gz*: *ca-i'-lis* (egzi'lis, as in exile); *ux-o'-ri-us* (ugzo're-us, as in uxorious).

**12. C, S, T, and X—Aspirated.**—Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated—*c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-y-on* (Sish'-e-on). But

1. *S*, immediately preceded by an accented vowel and followed by *i* with another vowel, has the sound of *zh*: *Moe'-si-a* (Me'-zhe-a). But some proper nouns retain the sound of *sh*: *A'-si-a* (A'-she-a), *Lys'-i-as*, *So'-si-a*, *The'-o-do'-si-a*, *Tys'-i-as*.

2. *T* loses the aspirate—(1) after *s*, *t*, or *x*: *Os'-ti-a*, *Al'-ti-us*, *mix'-ti-o*:—(2) in old infinitives in *ier*; *flec'-ti-er*:—(3) generally in proper names in *tion* (tyon): *Phi'-lis'-ti-on*, *Am-phi'-ty-on*.

**13. Silent Consonants.**—An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: Thus

1. *C* before *n*: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).

2. *Ch* or *ph* before a mute: *Chtho'-ni-a* (Thonia), *Phthi'-a* (Thia).

3. *G* or *m* before *n*: *gna'-rus*; *Mne'-mon*.

4. *P* before *s* or *t*: *Psy'-che*, *Ptol'-e-mae'-us*.

5. *T* before *m*: *Tmo'-lus*.

## II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.

### 1. Sounds of Vowels.

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound,<sup>1</sup> but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel sounds are as follows:

*ā* like *ä* in father: e. g. *a'-ra*.

*e*      *ā*      made:      *ple'-bes*.

*i*      *ē*      me:      *i'-ri*.

*o*      *ō*      no:      *o'-ro*.

*u*      *û*      do:      *u'-num*.

*y*      *ē*      me:      *Ny'-sa*.

<sup>1</sup> These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *æ* and *œ* like *a* in *made*, e. g. *æ'*-*tas*, *coe'*-*lum*.  
*au* " *ou* " *out*, " *au'*-*rum*.<sup>1</sup>

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method, but it varies somewhat in different countries.

## SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words, *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus, *mo'*-*re*, *vi'*-*ce*, *a-cu'*-*te*, *per-sua'*-*de*.

18. **Simple words** are divided into syllables as follows:

1. After a vowel (or diphthong), with the *Long Sound* (7), consonants must be joined to the following vowel: *pa'*-*ter*, *pa'*-*tres*, *a-gro'*-*rum*, *sa-cro'*-*rum*, *au-di'*-*vi*.

2. After a vowel with the *Short Sound* (8),

1) A *single* or *double consonant* is joined to such vowel, except after *i* unaccented: *gen'*-*e-ri*, *rex'*-*i*, *dom'*-*i-nus*.

2) *Two consonants* are separated: *bel'*-*lum*, *men'*-*sa*, *pat'*-*ri-bus*. But *x* following a consonant must be joined to the preceding syllable: *Xerx'*-*es*, *anx'*-*i-us*.

3) *Of three or more consonants*, the last, or, if a mute with *l* or *r*, the last two must be joined to the following vowel: *emp'*-*tus*, *tem'*-*plum*, *claus'*-*tra*, *trans'*-*tra*.

19. **Compounds** are divided into syllables,

1. Generally like simple words: *ed'*-*o-mo* (*e*, *dōmo*), *an-tef'*-*e-ro* (*ante*, *fero*), *be-nev'*-*o-lens* (*bene*, *volens*), *mag-nan'*-*i-mus* (*magnus*, *animus*).

2. But if the first part is entire and ends in a consonant, the compound is resolved into its component parts: *ab'*-*es*, *ab-i'*-*re*.

<sup>1</sup> In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately, but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs with nearly the same sound as in English.

## QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.<sup>1</sup>

21. Long.—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. Short.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *di'-es*, *vi'-ae*, *ni'-hil*.<sup>2</sup>

23. Common.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-gri*.

24. The signs  $\bar{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\acute{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\circ\phantom{a}$  denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ā-grō-rūm*.

## ACCENTUATION.

## I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables: *mons*, *nos*.

26. Other words are accented as follows:<sup>3</sup>

1. Words of two syllables—always on the first: *men'-sa*.

2. Words of more than two syllables—on the penult<sup>4</sup> if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the antepenult:<sup>4</sup> *hō-nō'-ris*, *con'-sū-lis*. But

1) Genitives in *i* for *ii* and vocatives in *i* for *ie* retain the accent of the full form: *in-ge'-ni* for *in-ge'-ni-i*; *Mer-cu'-ri* for *Mer-cu'-ri-e*.

2) Penults common in quantity take the accent when used as long.

3) Compounds are accented like simple words; but

(a) The enclitics, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, appended to words accented on the antepenult, throw back their accent upon the last syllable of that word: *hōm'-i-ne'-que*, *hōm'-i-nes'-que*.

(b) *Facio* compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *cal-e-fa'-cit*.

<sup>1</sup> Common, i. e. sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

<sup>2</sup> No account is taken of the breathing  $\tilde{\phantom{a}}$  (2. 2).

<sup>3</sup> In the subsequent pages the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

<sup>4</sup> Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

## II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mon'-u-e'-runt*; *mon'-u-e-ra'-mus*; *in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt*.

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-rif'-i-cent-tis'-si-mus*.

## PART SECOND.

## E T Y M O L O G Y .

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections*.

## CHAPTER I.

## N O U N S .

31. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicëro*, Cicero; *Rôma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dômus*, house.

1. A **Proper Noun** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicëro*, *Rôma*.

2. A **Common Noun** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, a man; *ëquus*, horse. Common nouns include

1) *Collective Nouns*—designating a collection of objects: *popûlus*, people; *exercitus*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*—designating properties or qualities: *virtus*, virtue; *justitia*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*—designating materials as such: *aurum*, gold; *lignum*, wood; *äqua*, water.

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case*.

## GENDER.

33. There are three genders—*Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter*.

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.



## 35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

## I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.
2. Names of *Rivers, Winds, and Months*: *Rhenus*, Rhine; *Notus*, south wind; *Aprilis*, April.

## II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.
2. Names of *Countries, Towns, Islands, and Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Roma*, Rome; *Delos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear tree.

## III. NEUTERS.

1. *Indeclinable Nouns*: *fas*, right; *nil*, nothing.
2. *Words and Clauses* used as *indeclinable* nouns: *triste vale*, a sad farewell; *difficile est amicitiam manere*, it is difficult for friendship to continue.<sup>1</sup>

## 36. REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. **Exceptions.**—The endings<sup>2</sup> of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus,

1) The names of rivers—*Albula*, *Allia*, *Lethe*, *Styx*, and sometimes others, are feminine by ending.

2) Some names of *countries, towns, islands, trees, and animals* take the gender of their endings. See 47. 1.

2. **Masculine or Feminine.**—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *civis*, citizen (man or woman); *comes*, companion; *bos*, ox, cow.

3. **Mobile Nouns** have different forms for different genders: *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter; *rex*, *regina*, king, queen; *leo*, *leaena*, lion, lioness.

4. **Epicene Nouns** have but one gender, but are used for both sexes. They apply only to the inferior animals, and usually take the gender of their endings: *anser*, goose (male or female), masculine; *aquila*, eagle, feminine.

## PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

<sup>1</sup> Here *vale* and the clause *amicitiam manere* are both used as neuter nouns.

<sup>2</sup> Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

## CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. **Oblique Cases.**—In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.**—In form the several cases are in general distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases Alike.**—But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

## DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called Declension.

40. **Five Declensions.**—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

*Genitive Endings.*

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
<b>ae,</b>	<b>i,</b>	<b>is,</b>	<b>ūs,</b>	<b>eī.<sup>1</sup></b>

41. **Stem and Endings.**—In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular,

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

---

<sup>1</sup> See 119. 1.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

*ā* and *ē*,—*feminine*; *ās* and *ēs*,—*masculine*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are declined as follows :

## SINGULAR.

	Example.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>a table,</i>	<i>ā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>of a table,</i>	<i>ae</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>to, for a table,</i>	<i>ae</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mensām,</i>	<i>a table,</i>	<i>ām</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>O table,</i>	<i>ā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mensā,</i>	<i>with, from, by a table,</i>	<i>ā</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>tables,</i>	<i>ae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mensarūm,</i>	<i>of tables,</i>	<i>arūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mensis,</i>	<i>to, for tables,</i>	<i>is</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mensās,</i>	<i>tables,</i>	<i>ās</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mensae,</i>	<i>O tables,</i>	<i>ae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mensis,</i>	<i>with, from, by tables.</i>	<i>is.</i>

1. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of this example it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—With these endings decline :

*Ala*, wing; *āqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victoria*, victory.

3. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur :

1) **As** for *ae* in the Gen. of *familia*, in composition with *pāter*, *māter*, *filius*, and *filia* : *paterfamilias*, father of a family.

2) **Al** for the genitive ending *ae*, in the poets : *aulāi* for *aulae*, of a hall.

3) **Um** for *arum* in the Gen. Plur. : *Dardanidum* for *Dardanidarum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.

4) **Abus** for *is* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., especially in *dea*, goddess, and *filia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deus*, god, and *filius*, son.

## 43. GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns of this declension in *ē*, *ās*, and *ēs* are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows :

**Epitōme, epitome. Aenēas, Aeneas. Pyrītes, pyrites.**

## SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> ĕpītōmĕ	<i>Aenēās</i>	<i>pŷrītēs</i>
<i>G.</i> epitōmĕs	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>D.</i> epitōmae	<i>Aenēae</i>	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>A.</i> epitōmĕn	<i>Aenēām, ān</i>	<i>pyritĕn</i>
<i>V.</i> epitōmĕ	<i>Aenēā</i>	<i>pyritĕ, ā</i>
<i>A.</i> epitōmĕ	<i>Aenēā.</i>	<i>pyritĕ, ā</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> ĕpītōmae	<i>pŷritae</i>
<i>G.</i> epitomārūm	<i>pyritārūm</i>
<i>D.</i> epitōmīs	<i>pyritīs</i>
<i>A.</i> epitōmās	<i>pyritās</i>
<i>V.</i> epitōmae	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>A.</i> epitōmīs.	<i>pyritīs.</i>

1. **Examples for Practice.**—*Aloe*, aloe; *boreas*, north wind; *comētes*, comet.

2. **Paradigma.**—Observe

1) That in the Plur. and in the Dat. Sing., Greek nouns are declined like *mensa*.

2) That in the Gen. Sing., only those in *e* depart from the regular ending *ae*.

3. Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mensa*. Many in *e* have also a form in *a*; *epitōme*, *epitōma*, epitome.

## 44. GENDER IN FIRST DECLENSION.

Feminine endings: **a, e.**

Masculine endings: **as, es.**

**EXCEPTIONS.**—*Masculine*—(1) a few in *a* by signification: *poēta*, poet; *agricōla*, husbandman. See 35. 1.—(2) *Hadria*, Adriatic sea; sometimes *dāma*, deer, and *talpa*, mole.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

**ēr, ĭr, ūs, os,**—*masouline*; **ŭm, on,**—*neuter*.

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ir, us, um*, and are declined as follows:

Servus, *slave*. Puer, *boy*. Ager, *field*. Templum, *temple*.

## SINGULAR.

N. serv <u>us</u>	puer	ager	templ <u>um</u>
G. serv <u>i</u>	puer <u>i</u>	agr <u>i</u>	templ <u>i</u>
D. serv <u>o</u>	puer <u>o</u>	agr <u>o</u>	templ <u>o</u>
A. serv <u>um</u>	puer <u>um</u>	agr <u>um</u>	templ <u>um</u>
V. serv <u>e</u>	puer	ager	templ <u>um</u>
A. serv <u>o</u>	puer <u>o</u>	agr <u>o</u>	templ <u>o</u>

## PLURAL.

N. serv <u>i</u>	puer <u>i</u>	agr <u>i</u>	templ <u>a</u>
G. serv <u>orum</u>	puer <u>orum</u>	agr <u>orum</u>	templ <u>orum</u>
D. serv <u>is</u>	puer <u>is</u>	agr <u>is</u>	templ <u>is</u>
A. serv <u>os</u>	puer <u>os</u>	agr <u>os</u>	templ <u>a</u>
V. serv <u>i</u>	puer <u>i</u>	agr <u>i</u>	templ <u>a</u>
A. serv <u>is</u> .	puer <u>is</u> .	agr <u>is</u> .	templ <u>is</u> .

1. **Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of the paradigms it will be seen that they are declined with the following

*Case-Endings.*

1. ūs.                      2. ěr.                      3. ūm.

## SINGULAR.

N. ūs	— <sup>1</sup>	ūm
G. i	i	i
D. o	o	o
A. ūm	ūm	ūm
V. ě	— <sup>1</sup>	ūm
A. o	o	o

## PLURAL.

N. i	i	ā
G. ōrūm	ōrūm	ōrūm
D. is	is	is
A. ōs	ōs	ā
V. i	i	ā
A. is.	is.	is.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—Like SERVUS: *annus*, year; *dominus*, master.—Like PUER: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōcer*, father-in-law.—Like AGER: *fāber*, artisan; *magister*, master.—Like TEMPLUM: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. **Paradigms.**—Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the

<sup>1</sup> The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*; thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puērū*.

endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. ; Nom. *puer* for *puërus*, Voc. *puer* for *puëre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.<sup>1</sup>

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38. 3.

4. **Ager and Puer.**—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ager*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer*.

1) Nouns in *ir* : *vir*, *viri*, *man*.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger* : *armiger*, *armigëri*, armor-bearer ; *signifer*, *signifëri*, standard-bearer.

3) *Adulter*, *aduller* ; *Liber*, *Bacchus* ; *presbÿter*, *elder*.  
*Celtiber*, *Celtiberian* ;<sup>2</sup> *libëri*, *children* ; *söcer*, *father-in-law*.  
*gëner*, *son-in-law* ; *Mulciber*, *Vulcan* ;<sup>2</sup> *vesper*, *evening*.  
*Iber*, *Spaniard*.<sup>2</sup>

5. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur :

1) **I** for **ii** by contraction, in the Gen. Sing. without change of accent : *ingë'ni* for *ingë'niï*, of talent.

2) **I** for **is**, common in proper names in *ius*, without change of accent : *Mercu'ri* for *Mercu'ris*, Mercury. Also in *fili* for *filis*, son ; *gëni* for *genie*, guardian spirit.

3) **Us** for **e** in the Voc., the regular form in *deus*, god, but rare in other words.

4) **Um** for **orum**, common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure : *talentum* for *talentorum*, of talents ; also in a few other words : *deum* for *deorum* ; *libërum* for *liberorum* ; *Argivum* for *Argivorum*.

6. **Deus.**—This has, Voc. Sing., *deus* ; Nom. Plur., *dei*, *dii*, *di* ; Gen., *deorum*, *deum* ; Dat. and Abl., *deis*, *diis*, *dis* ; otherwise regular.

## 46. GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns of this declension in **os** and **on** are of Greek origin.

1. Nouns in *os* are generally declined like those in *us*, except in the accusative singular, where they have *on* : *Delös*, *Delä*, *Delö*, *Delön*, etc., island Delos.

2. Nouns in *on* are declined like *templum*, with *on* for *um* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative.

3. Most Greek nouns generally assume in prose the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, but sometimes, especially in poetry, they retain in one or more cases the peculiar endings of the Greek. Thus,

<sup>1</sup> In *puer*, *e* belongs to the stem, and is accordingly retained in all the cases ; but in *ager* it is inserted in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., as the pure stem *agr* would be difficult to pronounce.

<sup>2</sup> *Celtiber* and *Iber* have *e long* in the Gen., and *Mulciber* sometimes drops *e*.

- 1) *Genitive Singular*, **ō** (rarely **u**): *Andrōgeō* from *Andrōgeōs*.
- 2) *Accusative* " **o** or **on**: *Atho*, *Athon* " *Athos*.
- 3) *Nominative Plural*, **oe**: *cănēphōroe* " *cănēphōrōs*.
- 4) *Genitive* " **ōn** (**om**): *būcōllēōn* " *būcōllēōn*.
- 5) *Greek nouns in eus* admit certain forms of the third declension: *Orpheus*; G., *Orphēōs*; D., *Orphēi*; A., *Orpheā*; V., *Orpheu*.—*Panthūs* has Voc. *Panthū*, and *pelāgus*, Plur. *pelāge*.

#### 47. GENDER IN SECOND DECLENSION.

**Masculine endings: er, ir, us, os.**

**Neuter endings: um, on.**

##### I. FEMININE BY EXCEPTION.

1. *Nouns feminine by signification: Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth. See 35. 2, but observe that

Many names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees* follow the gender of their endings.—(1) *COUNTRIES: Bosphrus, Isthmus, Pontus*, masculine by ending; those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter by ending.—(2) *TOWNS: Candpus* and plurals in *ī*, masculine; those in *um* and plurals in *a*, neuter.—(3) *ISLANDS: those in um* and plurals in *a*, neuter.—(4) *TREES: oleaster and pinaster*, masculine. Some names of shrubs and plants are feminine, like those of trees, while others take the gender of their endings.

##### 2. Other Feminine exceptions are

- 1) Most names of gems: *amethystus, sapphirus*.
- 2) *Alvus*, belly; *carbāsus*, sail; *cōlus*, distaff; *hūmus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve.
- 3) Many Greek feminines, as (1) nouns in *odus, metros, thongus: periōdus*, period; *diametros*, diameter; *diphthongus*, diphthong; (2) *abyssus*, abyss; *atōmus*, atom; *dialectos*, dialect.

##### II. NEUTER BY EXCEPTION.

*Pelāgus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), common people.

#### THIRD DECLENSION.

#### 48. Nouns of the third declension end in

**a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.**

##### I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:

**o, or, os, er, es increasing in the genitive.**

##### II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

**as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive, s preceded by a consonant.**

##### III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

**a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.**

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the nominative singular. These all end in *e, s, or x*.

## II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the nominative singular.

In class II. the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consūlis*; stem, *consul*, a consul; *leo*, leonis, stem, *leon* (Nom. drops n), lion; *carmen*, carminis, stem, *carmīn* (Nom. changes in to en), song.

### 50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s impure**,<sup>1</sup> and **x**:—with stem *ur-* changed in nominative.

Nubes, <i>f.</i> <i>cloud.</i>	Avis, <i>f.</i> <i>bird.</i>	Urbs, <i>f.</i> <i>city.</i>	Rex, <i>m.</i> <i>king.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------

#### SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> nūbēs	āvīs	urb̄s	rex <sup>1</sup>
<i>G.</i> nubīs	avīs	urbīs	rēgīs
<i>D.</i> nubī	avī	urbī	regī
<i>A.</i> nubēm	avēm	urbēm	regēm
<i>V.</i> nubēs	avīs	urb̄s	rex
<i>A.</i> nubē	avē	urbē	regē

#### PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>G.</i> nubīum	avīum	urbīum	regūm
<i>D.</i> nubībūs	avībūs	urbībūs	regībūs
<i>A.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>V.</i> nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
<i>A.</i> nubībūs.	avībūs.	urbībūs.	regībūs.

II. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s impure**, and **x**:—with stem *chang-* ed in nominative.

Miles, <i>m.</i> <i>soldier.</i>	Lapis, <i>m.</i> <i>stone.</i>	Ars, <i>f.</i> <i>art.</i>	Judex, <i>m.</i> <i>judge.</i>
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------------

#### SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> milēs	lāpīs	ars	jūdex <sup>1</sup>
<i>G.</i> militīs	lapīdīs	artīs	judicīs
<i>D.</i> militī	lapīdī	artī	judicī
<i>A.</i> militēm	lapīdēm	artēm	judicēm
<i>V.</i> milēs	lapīs	ars	judex
<i>A.</i> militē	lapīdē	artē	judicē

#### PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> militēs	lapīdēs	artēs	judicēs
<i>G.</i> militūm	lapīdūm	artiūm	judiciūm

<sup>1</sup> X in rex = *gs-g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the nom. ending; but in judex, x = *cs-c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the nom. ending.

<sup>2</sup> *Impure*, i. e., preceded by a consonant.



<i>D. militibūs</i>	<i>lapidibūs</i>	<i>artibūs</i>	<i>judicibūs</i>
<i>A. militēs</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>artēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>
<i>V. militēs</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>artēs</i>	<i>judicēs</i>
<i>A. militibūs.</i>	<i>lapidibūs.</i>	<i>artibūs.</i>	<i>judicibūs.</i>

III. Nouns in **as, os, us**, and **e**:—*those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.*

<i>Civitas, f.</i>	<i>Nepos, m.</i>	<i>Virtus, f.</i>	<i>Mare, n.</i>
<i>state.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>	<i>virtue.</i>	<i>sea.</i>

## SINGULAR.

<i>N. civitās</i>	<i>nēpōs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>mārē</i>
<i>G. civitatīs</i>	<i>nepōtīs</i>	<i>virtūtīs</i>	<i>marīs</i>
<i>D. civitatī</i>	<i>nepōtī</i>	<i>virtūtī</i>	<i>marī</i>
<i>A. civitatēm</i>	<i>nepōtēm</i>	<i>virtutēm</i>	<i>marē</i>
<i>V. civitās</i>	<i>nepōs</i>	<i>virtūs</i>	<i>marē</i>
<i>A. civitatē</i>	<i>nepōtē</i>	<i>virtutē</i>	<i>marī</i> <sup>2</sup>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. civitatēs</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	<i>marīa</i>
<i>G. civitatūm</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>nepōtūm</i>	<i>virtutūm</i>	<i>marīum</i>
<i>D. civitatibūs</i>	<i>nepotibūs</i>	<i>virtutibūs</i>	<i>marībūs</i>
<i>A. civitatēs</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	<i>marīa</i>
<i>V. civitatēs</i>	<i>nepōtēs</i>	<i>virtutēs</i>	<i>marīa</i>
<i>A. civitatibūs.</i>	<i>nepotibūs.</i>	<i>virtutibūs.</i>	<i>marībūs.</i>

## 51. CLASS II.—WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**:—*with stem unchanged in nominative.*

<i>Sol, m.</i>	<i>Consul, m.</i>	<i>Passer, m.</i>	<i>Vultur, m.</i>
<i>sun.</i>	<i>consul.</i>	<i>sparrow.</i>	<i>vulture.</i>

## SINGULAR.

<i>N. sōl</i>	<i>consūl</i>	<i>passēr</i>	<i>vultūr</i>
<i>G. sōlīs</i>	<i>consūlīs</i>	<i>passērīs</i>	<i>vultūrīs</i>
<i>D. sōlī</i>	<i>consūlī</i>	<i>passērī</i>	<i>vultūrī</i>
<i>A. sōlēm</i>	<i>consūlēm</i>	<i>passērēm</i>	<i>vultūrēm</i>
<i>V. sōl</i>	<i>consūl</i>	<i>passēr</i>	<i>vultūr</i>
<i>A. sōlē</i>	<i>consūlē</i>	<i>passērē</i>	<i>vultūrē</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. sōlēs</i>	<i>consūlēs</i>	<i>passērēs</i>	<i>vultūrēs</i>
<i>G. sōlībūs</i>	<i>consūlībūs</i>	<i>passērībūs</i>	<i>vultūrībūs</i>
<i>D. sōlībūs</i>	<i>consulibūs</i>	<i>passeribūs</i>	<i>vulturibūs</i>

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *civitatium*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

<i>A. solēs</i>	<i>consulēs</i>	<i>passerēs</i>	<i>vulturēs</i>
<i>V. solēs</i>	<i>consulēs</i>	<i>passerēs</i>	<i>vulturēs</i>
<i>A. solibūs.</i>	<i>consulibūs.</i>	<i>passeribūs.</i>	<i>vulturibūs.</i>

II. Nouns in *o* and *r* :—*with stem changed in nominative.*

<i>Leo, m.</i> <i>lion.</i>	<i>Virgo, f.</i> <i>maiden.</i>	<i>Pater, m.</i> <i>father.</i>	<i>Pastor, m.</i> <i>shepherd.</i>
--------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

## SINGULAR.

<i>N. leo</i>	<i>virgo</i>	<i>pāter</i>	<i>pastōr</i>
<i>G. leōnis</i>	<i>virginis</i>	<i>pātris</i>	<i>pastōris</i>
<i>D. leōni</i>	<i>virgini</i>	<i>patrī</i>	<i>pastōri</i>
<i>A. leōnēm</i>	<i>virginēm</i>	<i>patrēm</i>	<i>pastōrēm</i>
<i>V. leo</i>	<i>virgo</i>	<i>pāter</i>	<i>pastōr</i>
<i>A. leōnē</i>	<i>virginē</i>	<i>patrē</i>	<i>pastōrē</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>pastōrēs</i>
<i>G. leōnūm</i>	<i>virginūm</i>	<i>patrūm</i>	<i>pastōrūm</i>
<i>D. leonibūs</i>	<i>virginibūs</i>	<i>patribūs</i>	<i>pastoribūs</i>
<i>A. leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>pastōrēs</i>
<i>V. leōnēs</i>	<i>virginēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>	<i>pastōrēs</i>
<i>A. leonibūs.</i>	<i>virginibūs.</i>	<i>patribūs.</i>	<i>pastoribūs.</i>

III. Nouns in *en*, *us*, and *ut* :—*with stem changed in nominative.*

<i>Carmen, n.</i> <i>song.</i>	<i>Opus, n.</i> <i>work.</i>	<i>Corpus, n.</i> <i>body.</i>	<i>Capūt, n.</i> <i>head.</i>
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

## SINGULAR.

<i>N. carmēn</i>	<i>ōpūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>	<i>cāpūt</i>
<i>G. carminis</i>	<i>opēris</i>	<i>corpōris</i>	<i>capitis</i>
<i>D. carmini</i>	<i>opēri</i>	<i>corpōri</i>	<i>capiti</i>
<i>A. carmēn</i>	<i>opūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>	<i>capūt</i>
<i>V. carmēn</i>	<i>opūs</i>	<i>corpūs</i>	<i>capūt</i>
<i>A. carminē</i>	<i>opērē</i>	<i>corpōrē</i>	<i>capitē</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. carminā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>G. carminūm</i>	<i>opērūm</i>	<i>corpōrūm</i>	<i>capitūm</i>
<i>D. carminibūs</i>	<i>operibūs</i>	<i>corporibūs</i>	<i>capitibūs</i>
<i>A. carminā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>V. carminā</i>	<i>opērā</i>	<i>corpōrā</i>	<i>capitā</i>
<i>A. carminibūs.</i>	<i>operibūs.</i>	<i>corporibūs.</i>	<i>capitibūs.</i>

**52. Case-Endings.**—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the nominative and vocative singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

### *Case-Endings.*

#### SINGULAR.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	s <sup>1</sup> (es, is) — <sup>2</sup>	ŏ — <sup>2</sup>
<i>Gen.</i>	is	is
<i>Dat.</i>	i	i
<i>Acc.</i>	ēm (im) <sup>3</sup>	like nom.
<i>Voc.</i>	like nom.	" "
<i>Abl.</i>	ē, i	ē, i

#### PLURAL.

	Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Gen.</i>	ŭm, iŭm	ŭm, iŭm
<i>Dat.</i>	ibŭs	ibŭs
<i>Acc.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Voc.</i>	ēs	ă, iă
<i>Abl.</i>	ibŭs.	ibŭs.

**53. Declension.**<sup>4</sup>—To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the nominative singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

### **54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE :**

#### *Class I.*

rŭpes,	<i>Gen.</i> rupis, f.	rock,	hospes,	<i>Gen.</i> hospĭtis, m.	guest.
vestis,	vestis, f.	garment;	cuspis,	cuspidis, f.	spear.
trabs,	trăbis, f.	beam;	mons,	montis, m.	mountain.
lex,	lēgis, f.	law;	ăpex,	apĭcis, m.	summit.
libertas,	libertătis, f.	liberty;	sacerdos,	sacerdôtis, m.	priest.
sălus,	salŭtis, f.	safety;	sedĭle,	sedilis, n.	seat.

<sup>1</sup> In nouns in *o* (= *es* or *ge*), *s* is the case-ending, and the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem.

<sup>2</sup> The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed endings are less common than the others.

<sup>4</sup> For Irregularities see Formation of Cases (55-98) and Irregular Nouns.

## Class II.

<b>Ersul,</b>	<i>Gen. exsūlis, m. exile ;</i>	<b>dōlor,</b>	<i>Gen. dolōris, m. pain.</i>
<b>actio,</b>	<i>actiōnis, f. action ;</i>	<b>imāgo,</b>	<i>imaginis, f. image.</i>
<b>anser,</b>	<i>ansēris, m. goose ;</i>	<b>frāter,</b>	<i>fratris, m. brother.</i>
<b>nōmen,</b>	<i>nomīnis, n. name ;</i>	<b>tempus,</b>	<i>tempōris, n. time.</i>

## FORMATION OF CASES.

*Nominative Singular.*

55. The nominative singular may generally be formed from any oblique case in one of two ways :

I. By changing the ending of the given case to the nominative ending

**s (es, is) in masculines and feminines ; e in neuters :**  
*Acc. urbem, Nom. urbs ; avem, avis ; nūbem, nubes. So*  
*Gen. mārīs (neut.), Nom. mare.*

II. By dropping the ending of the given case: *Gen. consūlis, Nom. consul ; passēris, passer ; pastōris, pastor.*

1. THE FIRST METHOD applies in general to *mute stems*.

2. THE SECOND METHOD applies to most *liquid stems*.

3. EUPHONIC CHANGES :

1) **T, d, and r** before **s** are dropped ; **c** and **g** before **s** unite with it and form **x** ; **i** is sometimes changed to **e** : *Gen. civitatis, N. civitas* (for *civītatis*, *t* dropped) ; *G. militis, N. miles* (*mīlītis*, *t* dropped and *i* changed to *e*) ; *G. rēgis, N. rex* (*regs*).

2) *The endings on and in of masc. and fem. stems are generally changed to o* : *G. leōnis, N. leo* (for *lcon*) ; *G. virgīnis, N. virgo* (for *virgin*). But in neuters *in* is changed to *en* : *G. carminis, carmen* (for *carmin*).

3) *The endings er and or of neut. stems are generally changed to us* : *G. opēris, N. opus* (for *oper*) ; *G. corpōris, N. corpus* (for *corpor*).

4) *Other changes sometimes occur.*

*Genitive Singular.*

## I. GENERAL RULES.

56. Class I. forms the genitive singular by changing the nominative ending into *is* : *māre, mārīs*, sea ; *urbs, urbīs*, city ; *nūbes, nubīs*, cloud ; *hostis, hostīs*, enemy ; *arc* (arcs), *arcīs*, citadel ; *rex* (regs), *rēgis*, king.

1. CLASS I. includes, it will be remembered, nouns in *e, s* (with a few exceptions), and *x*.

2. THE NOMINATIVE ENDING in this class is

1) *e* in nouns in *e* : *mare*.

2) *s* in nouns in *s* ; but if *e* or *i* precedes, it may be *es* or *is* ; thus it is *s* in *urbs*, *es* in *nubes*, and *is* in *hostis*.

3) *s* in nouns in *x*: as the double consonant *x* = *cs* or *gs*, the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem and the *s* is the ending.

Accordingly the genitive changes the endings *e*, *s*, *es*, and *is* into *is*, as above.

3. IRREGULARITIES AND EXCEPTIONS.—See special rules, 58–83.

57. **Class II.** forms the genitive by adding *is* to the nominative: *sōl*, *sōlis*, sun; *carcer*, *carcēris*, prison; *pastor*, *pastōris*, shepherd; *lien*, *liēnis*, spleen.

1. **CLASS II.** includes all nouns of this declension not embraced under **Class I.**

2. **CHANGES AND IRREGULARITIES.**—See special rules.

## II. SPECIAL RULES.

### I. Words ending in a Vowel.

#### *Genitive Formation—Various.*

#### A.

58. Nouns in **a** form the genitive in **ātis**; *poēma*, *poemātis*, poem. These are of Greek origin.

#### E.

59. Nouns in **e** form the genitive in **is**; *māre*, *māris*, sea.

#### I.

60. Nouns in **i** form the genitive in **is**, or are indeclinable: *sināpi*, *sināpis*, mustard.

EXCEPTIONS.—The compounds of **mēll** form it in **ītis**: *oxymēli*, *oxymēlītis*, oxymel.

#### O.

61. Nouns in **o** form the genitive in **ōnis**: *leo*, *leōnis*, lion; *actio*, *actiōnis*, action.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ōnis**:—most national names, *Macēdo*, *Macedōnis*, Macedonian.

2. **inis**:—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, man; *nēmo*, nobody; *turbo*, whirlwind; and nouns in **do** and **go**: *grando*, *grandinis*, hail; *virgo*, *virginis*, maiden; except—*harpāgo*, *ōnis*; *ligo*, *ōnis*; *praedo*, *ōnis*, also *comēdo*, *cūdo*, *mango*, *spādo*, *unēdo*, *ūdo*.

3. **nīs**:—*cāro*, *carnīs*, flesh.

4. **ēnis**:—*Anio*, *Aniēnis*, river Anio; *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*.

5. **us**:—few Greek feminines: *Dido*, *Didus*.

#### Y.

62. Nouns in **y** form the genitive in **ŷis** (*ŷos*, *ŷs*), or

are indeclinable: *mis̄y*, *mis̄yis* (*mis̄yos*, *mis̄ys*) copperas. These are of Greek origin.

## II. Words ending in Mutes or Liquids: **c, l, n, r, t.**

*Genitive adds is.*

### C.

63. There are two nouns in **c**: *ālec*, *alēcis*, pickle; *lac*, *lactis*, milk.

### L.

64. Nouns in **l** form the genitive by adding **is**: *sōl*, *sōlis*, sun.

1. Two add **is**:—*fel*, *fellis*, gall; *mel*, *mellis*, honey.

2. Nouns in **āl** lengthen **a** in the Gen.; *anīmal*, *animalis*, animal; except *sal*, salt, and masculine proper names: *Hannībal*, *Hannibālis*.

### N.

65. Nouns in **n** form the genitive by adding **is**, but those in **ēn** form it in **inis**: *paeān*, *paeānis*, paeon; *flūmen*, *flūminis*, stream.

1. The few nouns in **ēn** (e long), mostly Greek, add **is**: *liēn*, *liēnis*, spleen.

2. Nouns in **an**, **on**, **in**, **yn** are Greek, and sometimes have **os** for **is** in the Gen.: *Pān*, *Pānos* for Panis, god Pan.—Some in **on** have **onis** or **ontis**: *aēdon*, *aedōnis*, nightingale; *Xenophon*, *Xenophontis*.

### R.

66. Nouns in **r** form the genitive by adding **is**: *carcer*, *carcēris*, prison; *fulgur*, *fulgūris*, lightning.

1. Nouns in **ār** generally lengthen **a** in the Gen.: *calcār*, *calcāris*, spur; but a few retain the short vowel.—*Far*, corn, has *faris*; *hēpar*, liver, *hepātis*.

2. Some nouns in **er** drop **e** in the genitive:

1) Those in **ter**: *pāter*, *patris*, father; except *lāter*, *latēris*, tile, and Greek nouns: *crāter*, *cratēris*, bowl.

2) *Imber* and names of months in **ber**: *imber*, *imbris*, shower; *September*, *Septembris*.

3. *Iter*, way, has *itinēris*; *Jupīter*, *Jōvis*.

4. Nouns in **or** have generally **ōris**: *pastor*, *pastōris*, shepherd; but a few retain the short vowel. *Cor*, heart, has *cordis*.

5. Four in **ur** have **ōris**: *ēbur*, ivory; *fēmur*, thigh; *jēcū*, liver; *rōbur*, strength; but *femur* has also *femīnis*, and *jecur*, *jecinōris*, *jecinēris*, and *jocinēris*.

## T.

67. Nouns in **t** form the genitive in **itis**: *cāput*, *capitis*, head. *Caput* and its compounds are the only nouns in **t**.

III. Words ending in **S** preceded by a Vowel or Diphthong.

*Genitive Formation—Various.*

## AS.

68. Nouns in **as** form the genitive in **atis**: *aetas*, *aetatis*, age; *civitas*, *civitatis*, state.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ātis**:—*ānas*, *anātis*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns.
2. **ādis**:—*vas*, *vādis*, surety; *Arcas*, Arcadian, and fem. Greek nouns;<sup>1</sup> *lampas*, *lampādis*, torch.
3. **āris**:—*mas*, *māris*, a male.
4. **āsīs**:—*vas*, *vāsīs*, vessel.
5. **assis**:—*as*, *assis*, an as (a coin).
6. **antis**:—only masc. Greek nouns; *adāmas*, *antis*, adamant.

## ES.

69. Nouns in **ēs** (e long) form the genitive in **is**: *fāmes*, *famis*, hunger; *nūbes*, *nubis*, cloud.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **edis**:—(1) **ēdis**: *hēres*, *herēdis*, heir; *merces*, reward.—(2) **ēdis**: *pes*, *pēdis*, foot.—(3) **aedis**: *praes*, *praedis*, surety.
2. **eris**:—(1) **ēris**: *Cēres*, *Cerēris*.—(2) **aeris**: *aes*, *aeris*, copper.
3. **etis**:—(1) **ētis**: *quies*, rest, with compounds, *inquies*, *requies*, and a few Greek words: *lēbes*, *tāpes*.—(2) **ētis**: *abies*, fir tree; *aries*, ram; *paries*, wall.
4. **essis**:—*bes*, *bessis*, two thirds.
5. **i**:—a few Greek proper names: *Xerxes*, *i*.

70. Nouns in **ēs** (e short) form the genitive in **itis**: *mīles*, *militis*, soldier.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ētis**:—*interpres*, interpreter; *sēges*, crop; *tēges*, covering.
2. **idis**:—*obses*, hostage; *praeses*, president.

## IS.

71. Nouns in **is** form the genitive in **is**: *āvis*, *avis*, bird; *cānis*, *canis*, dog.

<sup>1</sup> Greek nouns sometimes have *ados* for *adis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. *ōris* :—*cīnis*, *cinēris*, ashes ; *cucūmis*, cucumber ; *pulvis*, dust ; *vōmis*, ploughshare.
2. *īdis* :—*cūpis*, cup ; *cassis*, helmet ; *cuspis*, spear ; *lūpis*, stone ; *promulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek <sup>1</sup> words : as *tyrannis*, *īdis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ībis* and *tigris*.
3. *īnis* :—*pollis*, flour ; *sanguis*, blood.
4. *īris* :—*glis*, *gliris*, dormouse.
5. *issis* :—*sēmis*, *semis*, half an as.
6. *ītis* :—*lis*, strife ; *Dis*, *Quīris*, *Samnis*.

OS.

72. Nouns in *os* form the genitive in *ōris* : *flos*, *flōris*, flower ; *mos*, *mōris*, custom.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. *ōtis* :—*cos*, *cōtis*, whetstone ; *dos*, dowry ; *nēpos*, grandson ; *sacerdos*, priest ; and a few Greek words : *rhinocēros*, the rhinoceros.
2. *ōdis* :—*custos*, *custōdis*, guardian.
3. *ōis* :—few masc. Greek nouns : *kēros*, hero ; *Mīnos*, *Tros*.
4. *ōris* :—*arbo*s for *arbor*, tree.
5. *ossis* :—*os*, *ossis*, bone (*os*, mouth, regular : *ōris*).
6. *ōvis* :—*bos*, *ōvis*, ox.

US.

73. Nouns in *us* form the genitive in *ūris* or *ōris* : *lātus*, *latēris*, side ; *corpus*, *corpōris*, body.

1. *Genitive in ūris*.—*Acus*, foedus, fūnus, gēnus, glōmus, lātus, mīnus, ūlus, ūnus, ōpus, pondus, rūdus, scēlus, sīdus, ulcus, vellus, Vēnus, viscus, vulnus.

2. *Genitive in ōris*.—*Corpus*, dēcus, dedēcus, facīnus, fēnus, frīgus, lēpus, litus, nēmus, pectus, pēcus, pēnus, pignus, stercus, temptus, tergus.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. *ūris* :—(1) *ūris* : *crus*, leg ; *jus*, right ; *jus*, soup ; *mus*, mouse ; *pus*, pus ; *rus*, country ; *tus* (thus), incense ; *tellus*, earth.  
—(2) *ūris* : *Ligus*, *Ligūris*, Ligurian.
2. *ūtis* :—*juventus*, youth ; *sālus*, safety ; *senectus*, old age ; *servītus*, servitude ; *virtus*, virtue.
3. *udis* :—(1) *ūdīs* : *īncus*, anvil ; *pālus*, marsh ; *subscus*, dovetail.—  
(2) *ūdīs* : *pēcus*, *pecūdis*, a head of cattle.—(3) *audīs* : *fraus*, *fraudīs*, fraud ; *laus*, praise.

<sup>1</sup> Greek nouns sometimes have *īdos* or even *īos* for *īdis* ; *Salamis* has *Salamīnis* ; *Simōis*, *Simōentis*.



4. **uis** :—*grus, gruis*, crane ; *sus*, swine.
5. **untis** :—a few Greek names of places : *Trapezus, untis*.
6. **ōdis** :—Greek compounds in *pus* : *trīpus, tripōdis*, tripod.
7. **eos** :—Greek nouns in *eus*, when of this declension : *Thēseus, Theseos*.

YS.

74. Nouns in **ys** form the genitive in **ŷis, ŷos, ys** :  
*Othrys, Othryos*.

These are of Greek origin ; a few of them have *ŷdis* : *chlamys, chlamydis*, cloak.

#### IV. Words ending in *S* preceded by a Consonant.

*Genitive in is or tis.*

BS, MS, PS.

75. Nouns in **bs, ms, and ps** form the genitive by changing **s** into **is** : *urbs, urbis*, city ; *hiems, hiēmis*, winter ; *daps, dāpis*, food.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ipis** :—nouns in *ceps* from *capio* : *princeps, principis*, prince. Also *ādeps*, fat ; *forceps*, forceps.
2. **āpis** :—*auceps, aucūpis*, fowler.
3. **ŷphis** :—*gryps, grŷphis*, griffin.

LS, NS, RS.

76. Nouns in **ls, ns, and rs** form the genitive by changing **s** into **tis** : *puls, pultis*, broth ; *mens, mentis*, mind ; *ars, artis*, art.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

**dis** :—*frons, frondis*, leaf ; *glans*, acorn ; *juglans*, walnut.

#### V. Words ending in *X*.—*Genitive in cis or gis.*

AX.

77. Nouns in **ax** form the genitive in **ācis** : *pax, pācis*, peace.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ācis** :—*fax, fācis*, torch ; and a few Greek nouns.
2. **actis** :—few Greek names of men : *Astyānax*.

EX.

78. Nouns in **ex** form the genitive in **īcis** : *jūdex, judicis*, judge.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ecis**:—(1) **ēcis**: *ālex*, pickle; *vervez*, wether.—(2) **ēcis**: *nez*, murder; *fenīsez*, mower.—(3) **aecis**: *faez*, *faecis*, lea.
2. **egis**:—(1) **ēgis**: *lex*, law; *rex*, king, and their compounds.—(2) **ēgis**: *grex*, flock; *aquīlex*, water-inspector.
3. **ectīlis**:—*supellex*, *supellectīlis*, furniture.
4. **īgis**:—*rēmex*, *remīgis*, rower.
5. **is**:—*sēnex*, *sēnis*, old man.

## IX.

79. Nouns in **ix** form the genitive in **icis**: *rādic*, *radicis*, root.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **icis**:—*appendix*, appendix; *cūlix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *pīx*, pitch; *sālix*, willow, and a few others.
2. **īgis**:—*strīx*, screech owl; and a few Gallic names: *Dunnōrix*, *Orgetōrix*.
3. **ivis**:—*nīx*, *nīvis*, snow.

## OX.

80. Nouns in **ox** are: *vox*, *vōcis*, voice; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

There are also a few national names which form the genitive in **ōcis** or **ōgis**: *Cappādox*, *Cappadōcis*; *Allōbrox*, *Allobrogis*.

## UX.

81. Nouns in **ux** form the genitive in **ūcis**: *dux*, *dūcis*, leader.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following form it in

1. **ucis**:—(1) **ūcis**: *lux*, *lūcis*, light; *Pollux*.—(2) **aucis**: *fauz* (def.), *faucis*, throat.
2. **ugis**:—(1) **ūgis**: *frux*, *frūgis*, fruit.—(2) **ūgis**: *conjux*, *conjūgis*, spouse.

## YX.

82. Nouns in **yx** are from the Greek, and form the genitive variously: *Eryx*, *Erycis*, *Eryx*; *bombyx*, *bombŷctis*, silkworm; *Styx*, *Stygis*, *Styx*; *coccyx*, *coccygis*, cuckoo; *ōnyx*, *onŷchis*, *onyx*.

## X PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

83. Nouns in **x** preceded by a consonant change **x** into **cis**: *arx*, *arcis*, citadel.

EXCEPTIONS.—A few Greek nouns form it in *gis*: *phalanx*, *phalangis*, *phalanx*.

### *Dative Singular.*

84. ENDING :—*i*: *urbis*, *urbī*, city. But

The old dative in *e* also occurs: *aere*, for *aeri*.

### *Accusative Singular.*

85. ENDING :—like Nom., *ēm*, *īm*.

I. ENDING :—like nom. in neuters: *māre*, *mare*, sea.

II. ENDING :—*ēm*, in most masculines and feminines: *urbis*, *urbēm*.

III. ENDING :—*īm*, in the following:

1. In names of rivers and places in *is* not increasing in the genitive: *Tibēris*, *Tibērim*; *Hispālis*, *Hispālim*.

2. In *amussis*, rule; *būris*, plough-tail; *rāvis*, hoarseness; *sīlis*, thirst; *tussis*, cough; *vis*, force.

3. Generally in: *febris*, *pelvis*, *puppis*, *restis*, *secūris*, *turris*; sometimes in: *clāvis*, *messis*, *nāvis*.

4. In Greek nouns in *is*, G. *is*, and in many in *is*, G. *idos* or *idis*, though the latter have also the regular *idem*: *poēsis*, *poēsīm*; *Agis* (*Agidis*), *Agim* or *Agidem*. For Greek nouns see also 93.

### *Vocative Singular.*

86. ENDING :—like nominative; *rex*, *rex*. But

Some Greek nouns drop *s*: *Pallas*, *Palla*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. See 94.

### *Ablative Singular.*

87. ENDING :—*ē*, *i*.

I. ENDING :—*ē*, in most nouns; *urbis*, *urbe*, city.

II. ENDING :—*i*, in the following classes of words:

1. In neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*: *sedile*, *sedīli*, seat; *vectigal*, *vectigali*, tax; *calcar*, *calcāri*, spur. But

The following have *e*:—(1) Names of towns in *e*; *Praeneste*.—(2) Nouns in *al* and *ar* with a short in Gen.: *sal*, *sāle*, salt; *nectar*, *nectāre*, nectar.—(3) *Far*, *farre*, corn.—(4) Generally *rēte*, net, and in poetry sometimes *māre*.

2. In adjectives in *er* and *is* used substantively: *September*, *Septembri*, September; <sup>1</sup> *familiāris*, *familiārī*, friend. But

Adjectives used as proper names, and *juvēnis*, youth, have *e*; *Juvenāis*, *Juvenāle*, Juvenal.

<sup>1</sup> Names of months are adjectives used substantively, with *mensis*, month, understood.

8. In nouns in **is** with **im** in the accusative (85): *Tibēris, Tibērim, Tibēri; sitis, sitim, siti.*

III. ENDING :—**ē** or **i**; in nouns with **em** or **im** in the Acc.: *turris, turrem* or *turrim, turre* or *tūrri*. But

1. *Restis*, Acc. *restim*, rarely *em*, has *reste*; while *nāvis, navem*, rarely *im*, has generally *navi*.

2. *Greek nouns* in *is*, G. *idis*, generally have *e*, even though the Acc. may have *im*: *Pāris*, Acc. *Parim* or *Paridem*, Abl. *Paride*.

3. *Some other nouns* occasionally form the Abl. in *i*.—(1) several in *is*: *amnis, anguis, āvis, bilis, civis, classis, collis, ignis, orbis, postis, rātis, unguis*, and a few others.—(2) some names of towns, to denote the place in which: *Carthagīni*, at Carthage; *Tibūri*, at Tibur.—(3) *imber, rus, sors, supellez, vesper*, and a few others.

### *Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative Plural.*

#### 88. ENDING :—**ēs, ā, iā.**

I. ENDING :—**ēs** in masculines and feminines: *urbē, urbes*.

II. ENDING :—**ā, iā** in neuters:

1. **a** in most neuters: *carmen, carmina*.

2. **iā** in neuters which admit *i* in the ablative (87. II.): *māre, maria*.

III. RARE ENDINGS are

1. *The ancient endings*—**ēs** and **is** in the Acc. Plur. of masculines and feminines with *ium* in the Gen.: *civēs, civis*, for *cives*.

2. *The Greek endings*—**ēs, as, iā, e**. See 95 and 98.

3. *Vis*, force, has Plur.: *vires, virium, viribus, vires, vires, viribus*.

### *Genitive Plural.*

#### 89. ENDING :—**um, ium.**

I. ENDING :—**um** in most nouns: *leo, leonum*.

II. ENDING :—**ium** in the following classes of words:

1. In neuters with **iā** in the plural, i. e., those in *e, al, and ar* (*al* and *ar* with *a* in Gen.); *māre, maria, marium; animal, animalia, animalium, animal*.

2. In most nouns of more than one syllable in **ns** and **rs**:<sup>1</sup> *cliens, clientium, client; cohors, cohortium, cohort*.

3. In many nouns not increasing in the genitive:

1) Most nouns in **es** and **is** not increasing:<sup>2</sup> *nūbes, nubium; āvis, avium*.

2) *Cūro*, flesh; *imber*, storm; *linter*, boat; *uter*, leathern sack; *venter*, belly; and generally *Insūber*, Insubrian.

<sup>1</sup> Some of these often have *um* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *pārens*, parent, generally has.

<sup>2</sup> But *cānis, juvenis, strues, vātes*, have *um*; *āpis, mensis, sēdes, volucris*, *um* or *ium*; *compos, tum*.

4. In many monosyllables in *s* and *z*:<sup>1</sup> *urbs*, *urbium*; *arx*, *arcium*, *citadel*.

5. In many nouns in *as* and *is* (Plur. *ates* and *ites*). Thus

1) In names of nations: *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*; *Samnis*, *Samnitium*.

2) In *Optimātes* and *Penātes*, and occasionally in other nouns in *as*: *civītas*, *civitātum*, sometimes *civitātium*.

III. RARE ENDINGS.—*Bos* has *boum*: a few Greek words (especially titles of books) on: *Metamorphōses*, *Metamorphoseon*.

IV. WANTING.—The Gen. Plur. is often wanting in monosyllables.

### *Dative and Ablative Plural.*

90. ENDING:—*ībūs*: *urbis*, *urbibus*.

RARE ENDINGS are:

1. *is* or *ibus*—in neuters in *a*: *poēma*, D. and A., *poemātis*, or *poematibus*, poem.

2. *ubus*—in *bos*, *būbus* (rare *bōbus* for *bovibus*), ox; *sus*, *sūbus* for *suibus*, swine.

3. *si*, *sin*—in Greek words. See 97.

### GREEK PECULIARITIES.

91. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek, and some are entirely indeclinable.

#### *Greek Genitive Singular.*

92. ENDING:—sometimes *os* or *i* (rare) for *is*: *Daphnis*, *Daphnidos* for *Daphnīdis*; *Xerxes*, *Xerxi* for *Xerxis*.

1. ENDING:—*os*. (1) Many nouns in *as* and *is* have *ados* and *idos* for *adis* and *idis*: *Pallas*, *Pallādos*.—(2) Those in *ys* may have *yos* or *ys*: *Tēthys*, *Tēthyos*.—(3) Those in *eus* have *eos*: *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*.—(4) *Pan* has *Pānos*.

2. ENDING:—*i*. Proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, sometimes have *i* for *is*: *Achilles*, *Achilli*.

3. ENDING:—*us*. Greek feminines in *o*, *ēcho*, *Dido*, *Sappho*, have regularly *us* in the Gen. and the Greek ending *o* in the other cases, rarely the Latin *ōni*, *ōnem*, *ōne*; *Dido*, *Didus*, *Dido*.

#### *Greek Accusative Singular.*

93. ENDING:—often *a*: sometimes *im*, *in*; sometimes *en* for *em*: *Pericles*, *Periclea*; *poēsis*, *poēsim*, or *poesin*, poem; *Xerxes*, *Xerxen*.

1. THE ENDING *a* is used—(1) by prose writers in proper names and in *aēr* and *aether*,—(2) by the poets both in proper and in common nouns.

<sup>1</sup> This is true—(1) of monosyllables in *s* and *z* preceded by a consonant, except (ops) *ōpis* and the Greek nouns *gryps*, *lynx*, *sphynx*,—(2) of the following in *s* and *z* preceded by a vowel: *faux*, *glis*, *lis*, *mas*, *nix*, *nox*, *os* (*ossis*), *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus*.

2. THE ENDING **im** or **in** is used in Greek nouns in *is*, Gen. *is*, and sometimes in a few in *is*, Gen. *idis*: *poësis*, *poësim*, *poësin*; *Pāris* (*Paridis*), *Paridem*, *Parim*, *Parin*.

3. THE ENDING **en** is often used in proper names in *es*, Gen. *is*, and sometimes in a few in *es*, Gen. *etis*: *Aeschines*, *Aeschinen*; *Thāles*, *Thalētem* or *Thalen*.

4. THE ENDING **ym** or **yn**.—Greek nouns in *ys* have *ym* or *yn*: *Othrys*, *Othrym* or *Othryn*.

### *Greek Vocative Singular.*

94. ENDING sometimes drops **s**: *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. See 86.

1. **S** is dropped,—(1) regularly in nouns in *us* and *ys*, together with proper names in *as*, Gen. *antis*: *Perseus*, *Perseu*; *Cōtys*, *Coty*; *Atlas*, *Atla*,—(2) generally in nouns in *is* and sometimes in proper nouns in *es*: *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Socrātes*, *Socrātēs*, or *Socrāte*.

2. Proper names in *es* shorten the ending to *ēs*, when *s* is retained: *Socrātes*, *Socrātēs*.

### *Greek Nominative and Vocative Plural.*

95. ENDING:—sometimes **ēs** for **es**, especially in poetry: *Arcādēs* for *Arcādēs*.

1. THE ENDING **e** is used in a few neuters in *os*: *mēlos*, *mele*, song; these neuters are used only in the Nom. and Acc. *Tempe*, the vale *Tempe*, is plural.

2. THE ENDING **is** for *es* occurs in a few names of cities: *Sardis* for *Sardes*.

### *Greek Genitive Plural.*

96. ENDING:—**on**: only in a few words, almost exclusively titles of books: *Metamorphōses* (title of a poem), *Metamorphoseon*.

### *Greek Dative and Ablative Plural.*

97. ENDING:—**si**, before vowels **sin**, poetic: *Troādes*, *Troāsin*.

### *Greek Accusative Plural.*

98. ENDING:—**as**: *Macedōnes*, *Macedōnas*.

1. THE ENDING **e** is used in a few neuters in *os*: *mēlos*, *mele*; *Tempe*. See 95. 1.

2. THE ENDING **is** occurs in a few names of cities: *Sardis* for *Sardes*.

## GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. The Gender of nouns of this declension, when not determined by the general rules (35), may be ascertained from their endings, as follows:<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See also 43.

## I. MASCULINE ENDINGS.

**o, or, os, er, es** increasing in the genitive.

## O.

**100. Nouns in o** are masculine : *sermo*, discourse.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Feminine*, viz. :

1. Nouns in *o*, Gen. *inis* (i. e., most nouns in *do* and *go*, 61. 2), except *cardo* and *ordo*, masc., and *cupido* and *margo*, masc. or fem.
2. *Cūro*, flesh, and the Greek *Argo*, *ēcho*, an echo.
3. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* : *ratio*, reason; *concio*, an assembly; except numeral nouns in *io*, which (except *unio*) are masc.; *ternio*, *quaternio*.

## OR.

**101. Nouns in or** are masculine : *dolor*, pain.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine* :—*arbor*, tree.
2. *Neuter* :—*ādor*, spelt; *aequor*, sea; *cor*, heart; *marmor*, marble.

## OS.

**102. Nouns in os** are masculine : *mos*, custom.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine* :—*arbos*, tree; *cos*, whetstone; *dos*, dowry; *eos*, dawn.
2. *Neuter* :—*os*, mouth; *os*, bone; and a few Greek words: *chaos*, *ēpos*, *ēthos*, *mēlos*.

## ER.

**103. Nouns in er** are masculine : *agger*, mound.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine* :—*linter*, boat (sometimes masc.).
2. *Neuter* :—(1) *cadāver*, corpse; *iter*, way; *tūber*, tumor; *ūber*, udder; *ver*, spring; *verber*, scourge,—(2) botanical names in *er*, Gen. *ēris*: *ācer*, maple tree; *papāver*, poppy; *pīper*, pepper.

## ES INCREASING IN GENITIVE.

**104. Nouns in es** increasing in the genitive are masculine : *pes*, genitive *pedis*, foot.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine* :—*compes*, fetter; *merces*, reward; *merges*, sheaf; *quies*, rest (with its compounds); *sēges*, crop; *tēges*, mat; sometimes also *āles*, bird, and *quadrūpes*, quadruped.
2. *Neuter* :—*aes*, copper.

## II. FEMININE ENDINGS.

**as, is, ys, x, es** not increasing in genitive, **s** preceded by a consonant.

## AS.

105. Nouns in **as** are feminine: *aetas*, age.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—**as**, an as (a coin), *vas*, surety, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *antis*, as *adāmas*, adamant.
2. *Neuter*:—*vas*, vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, G. *ātis*, as *erysipēlas*.

## IS.

106. Nouns in **is** are feminine: *nāvis*, ship.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. Nouns in **ālis, ollis, cis, mis, nis, guis, quis**: *natalis*, birthday; *collis*, hill; *fascis*, bundle; *vōmis*, ploughshare; *ignis*, fire; *sanguis*, blood; *torquis*, collar. But a few with these endings are occasionally feminine: *aqualis*, *candalis*, *cānis*, *clūnis*, *amnis*, *cīnis*, *finis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axis*, axle; *fustis*, club; *pulvis*, dust;  
*būris*, plough-tail; *glis*, dormouse; *scrobis* (f.), ditch;  
*callis* (f.), path;<sup>1</sup> *lāpis*, stone; *sentis*, brier;  
*cassis*, net; *mensis*, month; *tigris* (f.), tiger;  
*caulis*, stem; *orbis*, circle; *torris*, brand;  
*corbis* (f.), basket; *postis*, post; *vectis*, lever.<sup>2</sup>  
*ensis*, sword;
3. Compounds of **as** (a coin): *sēmis*, *decussis*. Also *Lucretilis*, *mānes* (pl.).

## YS.

107. Nouns in **ys** are feminine: *chlāmys*, cloak.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—names of mountains, *Othrys*.

## X.

108. Nouns in **x** are feminine: *pax*, peace.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. Greek masculines: *cōraz*, raven; *thōraz*, cuirass.
2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the six feminines: *faex*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, (*prex*), *supellex*, and such as are fem. by signification.

## §5. II.

<sup>1</sup> The examples marked (f.) are sometimes feminine. *Corbis* and *tigris* are often feminine.

<sup>2</sup> For nouns in **is** masculine by signification, see §5. I.



3. Four in **ix**: *călix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *varix* (f.), swollen vein.
4. One in **ux**: *trădux*, vine-layer.
5. In **yx**: names of mountains and a few others.
6. In **lx** and **nx**: sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx.

## ES NOT INCREASING IN GENITIVE.

109. Nouns in **es** not increasing in genitive are feminine: *nubes*, cloud.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*acinăces*: sometimes *palumbes* and *vepres*.
2. *Neuter*:—a few rare Greek nouns: *cacoëthes*, *hippomănes*

## S PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

110. Nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant are feminine: *urbs*, city.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:

1. *Dens*, tooth, *fons*, fountain, *mons*, mountain, *pons*, bridge; generally *ădeps*, fat, and *rădens*, cable.
2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masc. noun understood,—(1) *oriens*, *occidens* (sol), east, west,—(2) *confluens*, *torrens* (amnis), confluence, torrent,—(3) *bidens*, *tridens* (raster), two-pronged hoe, trident,—(4) *sextans*, *quadrans* (as), parts of an as.
3. *Chălybs*, steel, *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few Greek names of animals: *ăpops*, *gryps*, *seps* (f.).
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpens*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *Animans*, animal, originally participle, is masc., fem., or neuter.

## III. NEUTER ENDINGS.

**a, e, i, y, o, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.**

**A, E, I, Y, O, L, N, T, AR.**

111. Nouns in **a, e, i, y, o, t, ar** are neuter: *poëma*, poem; *măre*, sea; *lac*, milk; *căput*, head.

## L.

112. Nouns in **l** are neuter: *animal*, animal.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—*măgil*, mullet; *sal* (also neuter in singular), salt; *sol*, sun.

## N.

113. Nouns in **n** are neuter: *carmen*, song.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*pecten*, comb; *ren*, kidney; *lien*, spleen; and Greek masculines in *an*, *en*, *in*, *on*: *pacan*, paeon; *cānon*, rule.
2. *Feminine*:—*aēdon*, nightingale; *alcyon* (halcyon), kingfisher; *icon*, image; *sinclon*, muslin.

## UR.

114. Nouns in *ur* are neuter: *fulgur*, lightning.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Masculine*:—*furfur*, bran; *turtur*, turtledove; *vultur*, vulture.

## US.

115. Nouns in *us* are neuter: *corpus*, body.

## EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Masculine*:—*lūpus*, hare; *mus*, mouse; Greek nouns in *pus* and a few others: *tripus*, tripod.
2. *Feminine*:—*tellus*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in *us*, Gen. *utis* or *udis*: *virtus*, virtue; *pālus*, marsh.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

*us*,—*masculine*; *u*,—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, *fruit*.      Cornu, *horn*.      Case-Endings.

## SINGULAR.

<i>N. fructūs</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ū</i>
<i>G. fructūs</i>	<i>cornūs</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ūs</i>
<i>D. fructui</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>ui</i>	<i>ū</i>
<i>A. fructū</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>ū</i>	<i>ū</i>
<i>V. fructūs</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ū</i>
<i>A. fructū</i>	<i>cornū</i>	<i>ū</i>	<i>ū</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. fructūs</i>	<i>cornuā</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>uā</i>
<i>G. fructuū</i>	<i>cornuū</i>	<i>uū</i>	<i>uū</i>
<i>D. fructibūs</i>	<i>cornibūs</i>	<i>ibūs (ūbūs)</i>	<i>ipūs (ūbūs)</i>
<i>A. fructūs</i>	<i>cornuā</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>uā</i>
<i>V. fructūs</i>	<i>cornuā</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>uā</i>
<i>A. fructibūs.</i>	<i>cornibūs.</i>	<i>ibūs (ūbūs).</i>	<i>ibūs (ūbūs).</i>

1. *Case-Endings*.—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus*, song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *gēnu*, knee.

3. **Modification of Third Declension.**—The fourth declension is but a modification of the third, produced by contraction: thus *fructus*, in the uncontracted form, was declined like *grus*, *gruis*, of Decl. III.: N. *fructus*, G. *fructuis* = *fructus*; D. *fructui*, A. *fructuem* = *fructum*, V. *fructus*; A. *fructus* = *fructu*: Plur. N. *fructues* = *fructus*, etc.

4. **Irregular Case-Endings.**—The following occur:

1) **Ūbūs** for *ibūs*, used regularly in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of

*Acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; *artus*, joint; *lācus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *pēcu*, cattle; *quercus*, oak; *spēcus*, den; *tribus*, tribe; *vēru*, spit: occasionally in a few other words, as *portus*, *sinus*, and *tonitrus*.

2) **Ūis**, the uncontracted form for *us*, in the Gen.: *fructuis* for *fructus*.

3) **Ū** for *ui*, in the Dat. by contraction: *equitātu* for *equitatus*, cavalry.

117. **Second and Fourth Declensions.**—Some nouns are partly of this declension and partly of the second.

1. *Dōmus*, house, declined as follows:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. domūs	domūs
G. domūs, domī	domuūm, domōrūm
D. domui (domō)	domibūs
A. domum	domōs, domūs
V. domūs	domūs
A. domō (domū)	domibūs.

In this word there is generally a difference of meaning between the forms of the second Decl. and those of the fourth; thus, G. *domus*, of a house; *domī*, at home: A. Pl. *domus*, houses; *domos*, often, homeward; to homes.

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *ficus*, *laurus*, *pinus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *us* and *u*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurus*, D. *lauro*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *lauru*, &c. So also *cōlus*, distaff.

3. A few nouns, especially *senātus* and *tumultus*, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the genitive ending *i* of the second: *senāti*, *tumulti*.

## 118. GENDER IN FOURTH DECLENSION.

Masculine ending: **us**.

Neuter ending: **u**.

### EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Feminine*:—(1) *ācus*, needle; *cōlus*, distaff; *dōmus*, house; *mānus*, hand; *porticus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe,—(2) *īdus*, ides; *Quinquātrus*, feast of Minerva; generally *pēnus*, store, when of this decl.; rarely *spēcus*, den,—(3) a few nouns

Fem. by signification (35. II.): *nūras*, daughter-in-law ;  
*ficus*, fig tree.<sup>1</sup>

2. *Neuter* :—*sēcus* (*sexus*), sex ; rarely, *spēcus*, den.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **es**,—*feminine*, and are declined as follows :

Dies, <i>day</i> .	Res, <i>thing</i> .	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.		
<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diēi</i>	<i>rēi</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>D. diēi</i>	<i>rēi</i>	<i>eī</i>
<i>A. diēma</i>	<i>rēma</i>	<i>ēm</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>ē</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>N. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>G. diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>	<i>ērum</i>
<i>D. diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	<i>ēbus</i>
<i>A. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>V. diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>ēs</i>
<i>A. diēbus.</i>	<i>rēbus.</i>	<i>ēbus.</i>

1. **Case-Endings**.—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

*Eī* in *eī* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. **Examples for Practice**.—*Acies*, battle array ; *effigies*, effigy ; *facies*, face ; *series*, series ; *species*, form ; *spes*, hope.

3. **Modification of Third Declension**.—The fifth declension, like the fourth, seems to be a modification of the third. It is produced by contraction (*ees* = *ēs* : *eībus* = *ēbus*), except in the genitive, where *eī* comes from *eie*, by dropping *e*, and *ērum* from *eum*, by inserting *r*.

4. **Irregular Endings** :—*ē* or *i* for *eī* in the Gen. and Dat. : *acie* for *aciēi* ; *pernicii* for *perniciēi*.

5. **Defective**.—Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur., and many admit no plural whatever.

### 120. GENDER IN FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension are feminine.

**Exceptions**.—*Masculine* :—*dies*, day, and *meridies*, midday, though *dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

<sup>1</sup> Also *Fem.* when it means *fig*.

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.								
Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		D. V.	
Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	
<i>N. ā</i>	ūs — <sup>2</sup>	ūm	s (es, is) <sup>3</sup> —	ě —	ūs	ū	ēs	
<i>G. ae</i>	ī	ī	īs	īs	ūs	ūs	ēī	
<i>D. ae</i>	ō	ō	ī	ī	uī	ū	ēī	
<i>A. ām</i>	ūm	ūm	ēm (īm)	like nom.	ūm	ū	ēm	
<i>V. ā</i>	ě —	ūm	like nom.	like nom.	ūs	ū	ēs	
<i>A. ā</i>	ō	ō	ě (ī)	ě (ī)	ū	ū	ē	

## PLURAL.

<i>N. ae</i>	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
<i>G. ārum</i>	ōrum	ōrum	ūm (iūm)	ūm (iūm)	uūm	uūm	ērūm
<i>D. is</i>	īs	īs	ībūs	ībūs	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs)	ēbūs
<i>A. ās</i>	ōs	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
<i>V. ae</i>	ī	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs
<i>A. is.</i>	īs	īs.	ībūs.	ībūs.	ībūs (ūbūs)	ībūs (ūbūs).	ēbūs.

## 122. By a close analysis it will be found,

1. That the five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of declension.

2. That these varieties have been produced by the union of different final letters in the various stems, with one general system of endings.

## 123. According to this analysis,

1. The stems in the five declensions end in the following letters:

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
a,	o,	consonant,	u,	e.
		(rarely i).		

2. The general case-endings are as follows: <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

<sup>2</sup> The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Decl. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45. 1).

<sup>3</sup> The inclosed endings are less common than the others.

<sup>4</sup> In this table observe,

1) That different endings characteristic of different genders may be found in one and the same declension.

2) That a slight difference of declension is however apparent in the double forms in *is*, *ī*; *ēs*, *ē*; *ām*, *rām*; *ībūs*, *īs*; but that in each of these double forms, the first seems to have been the original ending from which the second was derived.

SINGULAR.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> s —	ĕ, m —
<i>G.</i> ĭs, ĭ	ĭs, ĭ
<i>D.</i> ĭ	ĭ
<i>A.</i> ĕm, m	like nom.
<i>V.</i> like nom.	“ “
<i>A.</i> ĕ (ĭ)	ĕ (ĭ)
PLURAL.	
<i>N.</i> ĕs, ĭ	ĕ (ĭs)
<i>G.</i> ūm, rūm	ūm, rūm
<i>D.</i> ĭbŭs, ĭs	ĭbŭs, ĭs
<i>A.</i> ĕs	like nom.
<i>V.</i> like nom.	“ “
<i>A.</i> ĭbŭs, ĭs.	ĭbŭs, ĭs.

8. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems so as to produce the five declensions may be seen in the following

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF DECLENSIONS.

	I. Mensa.	II. Servo.	III. Reg.	IV. Fructu.	V. Re.
SINGULAR.					
<i>N.</i> {	<i>mensa-</i> mensā	<i>servo-s</i> servŭs	<i>reg-s</i> rex	<i>fructu-s</i> fructŭs	<i>re-s</i> rēs
<i>G.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i> mensae	<i>servo-i</i> servī	<i>reg-is</i> regĭs	<i>fructu-is</i> fructŭs	<i>re-i(s)</i> rēi
<i>D.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i> mensae	<i>servo-i</i> servō	<i>reg-i</i> regī	<i>fructu-i</i> fructuī	<i>re-i</i> rēi
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-m</i> mensām	<i>servo-m</i> servŭm	<i>reg-em</i> regēm	<i>fructu-(e)m</i> fructŭm	<i>re-(e)m</i> rēm
<i>V.</i> {	<i>mensa-</i> mensā	<i>servo-e</i> <sup>1</sup> servō	<i>reg-s</i> rex	<i>fructu-s</i> fructŭs	<i>re-s</i> rēs
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-e</i> mensā	<i>servo-e</i> servō	<i>reg-e</i> regē	<i>fructu-e</i> fructū	<i>re-e</i> rē
PLURAL.					
<i>N.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i> mensae	<i>servo-i</i> servī	<i>reg-es</i> regēs	<i>fructu-es</i> fructŭs	<i>re-es</i> rēs
<i>G.</i> {	<i>mensa-um</i> mensārŭm	<i>servo-um</i> servōrŭm	<i>reg-um</i> regŭm	<i>fructu-um</i> fructuŭm	<i>re-um</i> rērŭm
<i>D.</i> {	<i>mensa-is</i> mensīs	<i>servo-is</i> servīs	<i>reg-ibus</i> regībŭs	<i>fructu-ibus</i> fructībŭs	<i>re-ibus</i> rēbŭs
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-es</i> mensās	<i>servo-es</i> servōs	<i>reg-es</i> regēs	<i>fructu-es</i> fructŭs	<i>re-es</i> rēs
<i>V.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i> mensae	<i>servo-i</i> servī	<i>reg-es</i> regēs	<i>fructu-es</i> fructŭs	<i>re-es</i> rēs
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-is</i> mensīs	<i>servo-is</i> servīs	<i>reg-ibus</i> regībŭs	<i>fructu-ibus</i> fructībŭs	<i>re-ibus</i> rēbŭs

<sup>1</sup> Nouns in *us* of Dec. II. have *e* instead of *s*.

## 124. GENERAL TABLE OF GENDER.

I. Gender independent of ending.<sup>1</sup> Common to all declensions.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, ISLANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS, and WORDS and CLAUSES used as <i>Indeclinable Nouns</i> .

II. Gender determined by Nominative Ending.<sup>2</sup>

DECLENSION I.		
Masculine. as, es.	Feminine. a, e.	Neuter.
DECLENSION II.		
er, ir, us, os.		um, on.
DECLENSION III.		
o, or, os, er, es increasing in the genitive.	as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive, & preceded by a consonant.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
DECLENSION IV.		
us.		ul
DECLENSION V.		
	es.	

## DECLENSION OF COMPOUND AND IRREGULAR NOUNS.

## COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined: *respublica* = *res publica*, republic, the public thing; *jusjurandum* = *jus jurandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined: *paterfamilias* = *pāter familias* (42. 3), or *pāter familiae*, the father of a family.

<sup>1</sup> For exceptions, see 36.

<sup>2</sup> For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

## 126. PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.		
<i>N. respublica</i>	<i>jusjurandū</i>	<i>pāterfamilias</i>
<i>G. rēipublicae</i>	<i>jūrisjurandi</i>	<i>patrisfamilias</i>
<i>D. rēipublicae</i>	<i>jurijurandō</i>	<i>patrifamilias</i>
<i>A. rempublicām</i>	<i>jusjurandū</i>	<i>patremfamilias</i>
<i>V. respublicā</i>	<i>jusjurandū</i>	<i>paterfamilias</i>
<i>A. rēpublicā</i>	<i>jurejurandō</i>	<i>patrēfamilias</i>
PLURAL.		
<i>N. respublicae</i>	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>G. rērumpublicārū</i>		<i>patrumfamilias</i>
<i>D. rēbuspublicis</i>		<i>patribusfamilias</i>
<i>A. respublicās</i>	<i>jurajurandā</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>V. respublicae</i>	<i>jurajurandā.</i>	<i>patresfamilias</i>
<i>A. rēbuspublicis.</i>		<i>patribusfamilias.</i>

1. The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately : *res publica* ; *pāter familias* or *familias*.
2. The parts of *respublica* are *res* of the 5th Decl. and *publica* of the 1st.
3. The parts of *jusjurandum* are *jus* of the 3d Decl. and *jurandum* of the 2d.
4. The parts of *paterfamilias* are *pāter* of the 3d Decl. and *familias* (42. 8), the old Gen. of *familia*, of the 1st. Sometimes, though rarely, the Gen. *familiārū* is used in the plural : *patresfamiliārū* for *patres familias*.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes :

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS have but one form for all cases.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS want certain parts.

III. HETEROCLITES (*heteroclita*<sup>1</sup>) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (*heterogenea*<sup>2</sup>) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

## I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns :

The principal examples are :

- 1) *Fas*, right ; *nēfas*, wrong ; *īnstar*, equality ; *māne*, morning ; *nihil*, nothing ; *pondo*, pound ; *sexcus*, sex.
- 2) The letters of the alphabet, *a, b, c, alpha, beta*, etc.
- 3) Foreign words : *Jacob*, *Illeberri* ; though these are often declined :

<sup>1</sup> From *ērepos*, another, and *κλίσις*, inflection, i. e., of different declensions.

<sup>2</sup> From *ērepos*, another, and *γένος*, gender, i. e., of different genders.



*Jacobus, Jacōbi; Illeberis, Illeberri.* *Jesus* has *Jesum* in the accusative and *Jesu* in the other cases.

2. Some indeclinable nouns are also defective: *māns* wants the Gen. and Dat.; *fas* and *nēfas*, the Gen., Dat., and Abl.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

### I. Nouns defective in Number.

130. **Plural wanting.**—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *justitia*, justice; *aurum*, gold.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:

1) Proper names (except those used only in the plural): *Cicero*, *Rōma*.

2) Abstract Nouns: *fides*, faith; *justitia*, justice.

3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.

4) A few others: *meridies*, midday; *specimen*, example; *supellex*, furniture; *ver*, spring; *vespera*, evening, etc.

2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families*, *classes*; names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality; *Scipiones*, the Scipios; *vera*, vessels of copper; *avaritia*, instances of avarice; *odia*, hatreds.

In the poets, the *plur.* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the sing.

131. **Singular wanting.**—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are:

1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *majores*, forefathers; *posteri*, descendants; *gemini*, twins; *liberi*, children.

2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphi*, Delphi.

3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchanalia*, *Olympia*, *Saturnalia*.

4) Many names not included in these classes. Such are:

*Arma*, arms; *divitiae*, riches; *exequiae*, funeral rites; *eviviae*, spoils; *idus*, ides; *indutiae*, truce; *insidiae*, ambuscade; *mānes*, shades of the dead; *minae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *munia*, duties; *nuptiae*, nuptials; *reliquiae*, remains.

2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *unus ex* with the plural: *unus ex libris*, one of the children, or a child.

3. The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. **Plural with Change of Meaning.**—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural: Thus

#### SINGULAR.

*Aedes*, temple;

*Aqua*, water;

#### PLURAL.

*aedes*, (1) temples, (2) a house.<sup>1</sup>

*aquae*, (1) waters, (2) mineral springs.

<sup>1</sup> *Aedes* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

Auxilium, *help*;  
 Bōnum, *a good thing, blessing*;  
 Carcer, *prison, barrier*;  
 Castrum, *castle, hut*;  
 Comitium, *name of a part of the Roman forum*;  
 Cōpia, *plenty, force*;  
 Facultas, *ability*;  
 Finis, *end*;  
 Fortūna, *fortune*;  
 Gratia, *gratitude, favor*;  
 Hortus, *garden*;  
 Impedimentum, *hindrance*;  
 Littēra, *letter of alphabet*;  
 Lūdus, *play, sport*;  
 Mos, *custom*;  
 Nātālis (dies), *birth-day*;  
 Opēra, *work, service*;  
 Pars, *part*;  
 Rostrum, *beak of ship*;

Sal, *salt*;

auxilia, *auxiliaries*.  
 bona, *riches, goods*.  
 carcēres, *barriers of a race-course*.  
 castra, *camp*.  
 comitia, *the assembly held in the comitium*.  
 copiae, (1) *stores*, (2) *troops*.  
 facultates, *wealth, means*.  
 fines, *borders, territory*.  
 fortunae, *possessions, wealth*.  
 gratiae, *thanks*.  
 horti, (1) *gardens*, (2) *pleasure grounds*.  
 impedimenta, (1) *hindrances*, (2) *baggage*.  
 litterae, (1) *letters of alphabet*, (2) *epistle, writing, letters, literature*.  
 ludi, (1) *plays*, (2) *public spectacle*.  
 mōres, *manners, character*.  
 natales, *pedigree, parentage*.  
 operae, *workmen*.  
 partes, (1) *parts*, (2) *a party*.  
 rostra, (1) *beaks*, (2) *the rostra or tribuns in Rome (adorned with beaks)*.  
 sāles, *witty sayings*.

## II. Nouns defective in Case.

### 133. Some nouns are defective in case. Thus

1. Some want the *nominative, dative, and vocative singular*: (Ops), ōpis, *help*; (vix or vicis), vīcis, *change*.

2. Some want the *nominative and vocative singular*: (Daps), dāpis, *food*; (ditio), ditionis, *sway*; (frux), frūgis, *fruit*; (internecio), interneciōnis, *destruction*; (pollis), pollinis, *flour*.

3. Some want the *genitive, dative, and ablative plural*: thus most nouns of the fifth declension. See 119. 5.

So also many neuters: *far, fel, mel, pus, rus, tus*; especially Greek neuters in *os*, which want these cases in the singular also: *ēpos, mēlos*.

4. Some want the *genitive plural*: thus many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables: *nex, pax, pix*; *cor, cos, ros*; *sal, sol, lux*.

## III. Nouns defective in Number and Case.

134. Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other: *fors*, chance, has only *fors* and *forte*; *lues*, pestilence, has *lues, luem, lue*. Many verbal nouns in *u* have only the ablative singular: *jussu*, by order; *mandātu*, by command; *rogātu*, by request.

## III. HETEROCLITES.—TWO CLASSES.

I. Heteroclites with one form in the nominative singular.

II. Heteroclites with different forms in the nominative singular.

*Class First.*

135. Of DECLENSIONS II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*. See 117.

136. Of DECLENSIONS II. and III. are

1. *Jugĕrum*, an acre; regularly of the second Decl., except in the Gen. Plur., which is *jugĕrum*, according to the third. Other forms of the third are rare.

2. *Vas*, a vessel; of the third Decl. in the Sing., and of the second in the Plur.: *vas, vasis*; plural, *vasa, vasorum*.

3. Plural names of festivals in *alia*: *Bacchanalia, Saturnalia*; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *orum* of the second. *Ancile*, a shield, and a few other words also occur.

137. Of DECLENSIONS III. and V. are

1. *Requies*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requis* of the fifth.

2. *Fames*, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the ablative, *famē*, of the fifth (not *famē*, of the third).

*Class Second.<sup>1</sup>*

138. FORMS IN *ia* AND *ies*.—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *ies* of Decl. V.: *barbaria, barbaries*, barbarism; *duritia, durities*, hardness; *luxuria, luxuries*, luxury; *materia, materies*, material; *mollitia, mollities*, softness.

139. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *conātus, conātum*, an attempt; *eventus, eventum*, event; *praetextus, praetextum*, pretext.

140. Many other Examples might be added. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *juventus* (ūtis), youth; poetic, *juventa* (ae): *senectus* (ūtis), old age; poetic, *senecta* (ae): *paupertas* (ātis), poverty; poetic, *pauperies* (ei).

## IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.—TWO CLASSES.

I. With one form in the nominative singular.

II. With different forms in the nominative singular.

*Class First.*

141. MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

*Jocus*, a jest; plur., *joci* and *joca*.

*Locus*, place; “ *loci*, topics, passages in books, places; *loca*, places.

*Sibilus*, hissing; “ *sibili*; poetic, *sibila*.

142. FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

---

Sometimes called *Redundant nouns*, or *abundantia*.

*Carbāsus*, linen; plural, *carbasi* and *carbasa*, sails, &c.  
*margarita*, pearl; " *margaritae* and *margarita*, *ōrum*.  
*ostrea*, oyster; " *ostreae* and *ostrea*, *ōrum*.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender; thus

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:  
*Coelum*, heaven; plural, *coeli*.
2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:  
*Frēnum*, bridle; plur., *freni*, sometimes *frena*.  
*rastrum*, rake; " *rastri*, " *rastra*.
3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:  
*Epulum*, public feast; plur., *epulae*, meal, banquet.

#### Class Second.

144. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine and one in *um* neuter: *clipeus*, *clipeum*, shield; *commentarius*, *commentarium*, commentary; *cubitus*, *cubitum*, cubit; *jugulus*, *jugulum*, throat.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCLITES.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *conātus* (*us*), *conātum* (*i*), effort; *menda* (*ae*), *mendum* (*i*), fault.

## CHAPTER II.

### ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective, when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

#### I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Dec. II.

Fem., Dec. I.

Neut., Dec. II.

us<sup>1</sup> —,

a,

um.

They are declined as follows:

*Bonus, good.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	bonū <b>s</b>	bonā	bonū <b>m</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	bon <b>i</b>	bonae	bon <b>i</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	bon <b>o</b>	bonae	bon <b>o</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	bonū <b>m</b>	bonā <b>m</b>	bonū <b>m</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	bonē	bonā	bonū <b>m</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	bon <b>o</b>	bonā	bon <b>o</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	bon <b>i</b>	bonae	bonā
<i>Gen.</i>	bon <b>o</b> rū <b>m</b>	bonā <b>rū</b> m	bon <b>o</b> rū <b>m</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	bon <b>is</b>	bon <b>is</b>	bon <b>is</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	bon <b>os</b>	bonā <b>s</b>	bonā
<i>Voc.</i>	bon <b>i</b>	bonae	bonā
<i>Abl.</i>	bon <b>is</b>	bon <b>is</b>	bon <b>is</b> .

*Liber, free.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	libēr	libērā	libērū <b>m</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	libēr <b>i</b>	libērae	libēr <b>i</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	libēr <b>o</b>	libērae	libēr <b>o</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	libērū <b>m</b>	libērā <b>m</b>	libērū <b>m</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	libēr	libērā	libērū <b>m</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	libēr <b>o</b>	libērā	libēr <b>o</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	libēr <b>i</b>	libērae	libērā
<i>Gen.</i>	libēr <b>o</b> rū <b>m</b>	libērā <b>rū</b> m	libēr <b>o</b> rū <b>m</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	libēr <b>is</b>	libēr <b>is</b>	libēr <b>is</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	libēr <b>os</b>	libērā <b>s</b>	libērā
<i>Voc.</i>	libēr <b>i</b>	libērae	libērā
<i>Abl.</i>	libēr <b>is</b>	libēr <b>is</b>	libēr <b>is</b> .

<sup>1</sup> The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45. 1.

*Aeger, sick.*

SINGULAR.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegēr</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrāe</i>	<i>aegrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrāe</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>	<i>aegrām</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrō ;</i>
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrāe</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrum</i>	<i>aegrārum</i>	<i>aegrōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegrāe</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs.</i>

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *seruus* of Decl. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45. 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45. 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *er* and *ur* are declined like *liber* :

1) *Asper*, rough ; *lūcer*, torn ; *miser*, wretched ; *prosper*, prosperous ; *tēner*, tender ; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it : *dexter*, *dextera* or *dextra*.

2) *Satur*, sated ; *satur*, *satura*, *saturum*.

3) Compounds in *fer* and *ger* : *mortifer*, deadly ; *aliger*, winged.

**149. Irregularities.**—These nine adjectives have in the singular *ius* in the genitive and *i* in the dative :

*Alius*, another ; *nullus*, no one ; *solus*, alone ; *totus*, whole ; *ullus*, any ; *unus*, one ; *alter*, *-tēra*, *-tērūm*, the other ; *uter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, which (of two) ; *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, neither.

1. The Regular Forms occasionally occur in some of these adjectives : *alias*, *nulli*, for *alius*, *nullius* ; *altēro*, *altērae*, for *alteri*.

2. *I* in *ius* in poetry is sometimes short ; generally so in *alterius*.

3. *Alius* has *aliud* for *aliūm* in the neuter, and shortens the genitive *alius* into *alius*.

4. Like *uter* are declined its compounds : *uterque*, *utrovis*, *uterlibet*, *utercunque*. In *alteruter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *alterius utrius* ; and sometimes only the latter, as *alterutrius*.

## II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes:

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular:

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<b>er,</b>	<b>is,</b>	<b>e.</b>

They are declined as follows:

*Acer, sharp.*

## SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>G. acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrīs</i>
<i>D. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>
<i>A. acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>V. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>A. acrī</i>	<i>acrī</i>	<i>acrī;</i>

## PLURAL.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<i>N. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>G. acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>	<i>acriūm</i>
<i>D. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>A. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>V. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>A. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

1. Like *Acer* are declined:

1) *Alūcer*, lively; *campester*, level; *celēber*, famous; *cēler*,<sup>1</sup> swift; *equester*, equestrian; *paluster*, marshy; *pedester*, pedestrian; *pūter*, putrid; *salūber*, healthful; *silvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *volūcer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months: *Octōber*, *bris*.<sup>2</sup>

2. The Masculine in *is*, like the Fem., also occurs: *salūbris*, *silvestris*, for *salūber*, *silvester*.

<sup>1</sup> This retains *e* in declension: *celer*, *celēris*, *celēre*; and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

<sup>2</sup> See also 87. 2.

3. These forms in *er* are analogous to those in *er* (whether nouns or adjectives) of Dec. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in inserting *e* before *r*. Thus *ager*, originally *agrus*, drops *us*, giving *agr*, and then inserts *e* to facilitate pronunciation, giving *ager*; so *acer*, originally *acris*, drops *is* and inserts *e*; *acr*, *acer*.

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

M. and F.	Neut.
1. <b>is</b>	<b>e</b> , for positives.
2. <b>ior (or)</b>	<b>ius (us)</b> , for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

**Tristis, sad.**

**Tristior, more sad.<sup>1</sup>**

#### SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. tristis	tristē	N. tristior	tristiūs
G. tristis	tristis	G. tristioris	tristiōris
D. tristī	tristī	D. tristiorī	tristiōrī
A. tristēma	tristē	A. tristiorēma	tristiūs
V. tristis	tristē	V. tristior	tristiūs
A. tristī	tristī;	A. tristiorē (I)	tristiōrē (I);

#### PLURAL.

N. tristēs	tristiā	N. tristiorēs	tristiōrā
G. tristīum	tristīum	G. tristiorūm	tristiōrūm
D. tristībūs	tristībūs	D. tristiorībūs	tristiōrībūs
A. tristēs	tristiā	A. tristiorēs	tristiōrā
V. tristēs	tristiā	V. tristiorēs	tristiōrā
A. tristībūs	tristībūs.	A. tristiorībūs	tristiōrībūs.

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.—All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *z* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

**Felix, happy.**

**Prudens, prudent.**

#### SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. felix	felix	N. prudens	prudens
G. felicis	felicis	G. prudentis	prudentis
D. felicī	felicī	D. prudentī	prudentī

<sup>1</sup> Comparative. For the declension of *Plus*, see 155. 1.



<i>A. felicēm</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>A. prudentēm</i>	<i>prudens</i>
<i>V. felix</i>	<i>felix</i>	<i>V. prudens</i>	<i>prudens</i>
<i>A. felicē (I)</i>	<i>felicē (I);</i>	<i>A. prudentē (I)</i>	<i>prudentē (I);</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>N. felicēs</i>	<i>felicīā</i>	<i>N. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>G. felicium</i>	<i>felicium</i>	<i>G. prudentium</i>	<i>prudentium</i>
<i>D. felicibus</i>	<i>felicibus</i>	<i>D. prudentibus</i>	<i>prudentibus</i>
<i>A. felicēs</i>	<i>felicīā</i>	<i>A. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>V. felicēs</i>	<i>felicīā</i>	<i>V. prudentēs</i>	<i>prudentiā</i>
<i>A. felicibus</i>	<i>felicibus.</i>	<i>A. prudentibus</i>	<i>prudentibus.</i>

## FORMATION OF CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

154. Adjectives of the third declension form their cases in general like nouns of the same endings, but present the following peculiarities:

I. *Genitive Singular.*

155. This presents a few irregularities, but in general the same as in nouns (58-83). Thus

- The following in *ēs* form the genitive not in the regular *itis*, but in
  - ētis*:—*hēbes, indīgēs, praepes, tēres.*
  - idis*:—*dēses, rēses.*
- The following in *ēs* form it in
  - ēdis*:—compounds of *pes*, foot, as, *alīpes, bīpes, trīpes.*
  - ēris*:—*pūbes, impūbes* (sometimes *is*).
  - ētis*:—*inquies, locūples.*
- Adjectives in *ceps* form it in
  - cīpis*, if compounded of *capio*: *princeps, princīpis.*
  - cīpitis*, if compounded of *cāput*: *anceps, ancīpitis.*
- Four in *or* form it in *ōris*:—*mēmor, immēmor, bicorpor, tricorpor.*
- Other examples.—(1) *Compos* and *impos* form it in *ōtis*.—(2) Compounds in *cor* from *cor* have *cordis*: *concors, discors.*—(3) *Caelebs* has *caelībis*; *dis, dītis*; *intercus, intercūtis*; *praecox, praecōcis*; *vētus, vetēris*.

II. *Ablative Singular.*

156. I. ENDING:—*ē* or *i*, in comparatives and adjectives of one ending: *tristiōrē* or *rī*; *audacē* or *cī*.

II. “ *i*, in other adjectives: *acri*, *tristi*.

- Comparatives generally have *e*, and adjectives of one ending, generally *i*; but participles in *ans* and *ens* have only *e*, except when used adjectively.

2. The Ablative in *e* in many adjectives of one ending cannot be verified from ancient authors.—The ablative in *i* is in general preferable.

3. Some have only *e* in general use.—(1) *Pauper*, *paupere*, poor; *pubes*, *pubere*, mature;—(2) those in *es*, G. *itis* or *idis*: *ales*, *dases*, *dives*, *sopes*, *superates*;—(3) *caelebs*, *compos*, *impos*, *princeps*.

4. The Ablative in *e* sometimes occurs in poetry in positives of more than one ending: *cognomine* for *cognomini*, like named.

### III. Nominative, Accusative and Vocative Plural of Neuters.

157. I. ENDING:—*ia* in positives: *acria*, *tristia*.

II. “ *ia* in comparatives: *tristiora*.

1. *Vetus*, old, has *vetera*; *complures*, several, has *compluria* or *complura*.

2. The neuter plural is wanting in most adjectives of one ending, except those in *as*, *ns*, *rs*, *ax*, *ix*, *ox*, and numerals in *plex*.

### IV. Genitive Plural.

158. I. ENDING: *ium* in positives: *acrium*, *tristium*.

II. “ *ium* in comparatives: *tristiorum*.

1. Some adjectives want the genitive plural.

2. *Plures*, more, and *complures*, several, have *ium*.

3. The following have *um*:

1) Adjectives of one ending with only *e* in the ablative singular (156. 3): *pauper*, *pauperum*.

2) Those with the genitive in *eris*, *oris*, *uris*: *vetus*, *veterum*, old; *memor*, *memorum*, mindful; *cicur*, *cicurum*, tame.

3) Those in *ceps*: *anceps*, *incipitum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have *um*: *inops* (*ops*, *opum*), *inopum*, helpless.

### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be

I. Indeclinable: *fragi*, brave, good; *nequam*, worthless; *mille*, thousand.

II. Defective: (*ceterus*) *cetera*, *ceterum*, the other, the rest; (*sonis*) *sonis*, guilty.

III. Heteroclites.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us*, *a*, *um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hilurus* and *hiluris*, joyful; *exanimus* and *exanimis*, lifeless.

1. The Latin has but few indeclinable adjectives, except numerals (175).

2. Some adjectives want

1) The nominative singular masculine: (*ceterus*) *cetera*, *ceterum*, the other; (*ludicer*) *ludicra*, *ludicrum*, sportive.

2) One or more cases in full: (*seminex*) *seminecis*, half dead, defective in the nominative; *exspe*, hopeless, only used in the nominative; *exlex*, law-

less, only in nominative and accusative; *pernox*, through the night, only in nominative and ablative.

3) The neuter gender or genitive plural. See 157. 2 and 158. 1.

4) The singular: *pauci*, *ae*, *a*, few; *plerique*, the most; the latter wants also the genitive plural, supplied by *plurimi*. The feminine singular *plerâque* sometimes occurs. In good prose *extêrus* wants the singular; and *infêrus*, *supêrus*, and *postêrus* are used in the singular only in particular expressions: *mare infêrum*, the lower sea, i. e., south of Italy; *mare supêrum*, the upper sea, i. e., north of Italy, the Adriatic; *postêrus* in expressions of time: *diem postêrum*, the following day; *nocte postêra*, on the following night.

8. In most heteroclites only one form is in common use in classic prose; in a few, as in the examples under 159. III., both forms are approved.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. There are three degrees of comparison—Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*, high, higher, highest.

The Latin comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very* instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison*—by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison*—by adverbs.

### I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iôr,	iôr,	iûs.	issîmûs,	issîmâ,	issîmûm.

#### EXAMPLES.

*Altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*: *high*, *higher*, *highest*.

*lêvis*, *levior*, *levissimus*: *light*, *lighter*, *lightest*.

#### *Irregular Terminational Comparison.*

163. *Irregular Superlatives*.—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus

1. Adjectives in **er** add **rīmus** to the positive: *ācer*, *acrior*, *acerrimus*, sharp.

*Vetus* has *veterrimus*; *matūrus*, both *maturrīmus* and *maturissīmus*; *dexter*, *dextrīmus*.

2. Six in **ilis** add **līmus** to the stem:

*Facilis*, *difficilis*; *easy*, *difficult*.

*similis*, *dissimilis*; *like*, *unlike*.

*gracilis*, *humilis*; *slender*, *low*;

thus: *facilis*, *facilior*, *facillīmus*. *Imbecillis* has *imbecillīmus*, but *imbecillus* is regular.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives:

*Extērus*, *exterior*, *extrēmus* and *extīmus*, *outward*.

*infērus*, *inferior*, *infīmus* and *imū*, *lower*.

*supērus*, *superior*, *suprēmus* and *summū*, *upper*.

*postērus*, *posterior*, *postrēmus* and *postūmus*, *next*.

164. Compounds in **dicus**, **ficus**, and **volus** are compared with the endings **entior** and **entissīmus**, as if from forms in **ens**:

*Maledicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissīmus*, *slanderous*.

*munificus*, *munificentior*, *munificentissīmus*, *liberal*.

*benevōlus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissīmus*, *benevolent*.

1. *Egēnus* and *providūs* (needy and prudent), form the comparative and superlative from *ēgens* and *providens*: hence *egentior*, *egentissīmus*, etc.

2. *Mirificissīmus* occurs as the superlative of *mirificus*, wonderful.

3. Many adjectives in **dicus** and **ficus** want the comparative and superlative.

165. Special Irregularities of Comparison.

*Bōnus*, *melior*, *optīmus*, *good*.

*mālus*, *pējor*, *pessīmus*, *bad*.

*magnus*, *mājor*, *maxīmus*, *great*.

*parvus*, *minor*, *minīmus*, *small*.

*multus*, *plus*, *plurīmus*, *much*.

1. *Plus* is neuter, and has in the singular only N. and A. *plus*, and G. *plūris*. In the plural it has N. and A. *plūres* (m. and f.), *plūra* (n.), G. *plurīrum*, D. and A. *plurībūs*.

2. *Dives*, *frūgi*, *nēquam*:

*Dives*, { *divitior*, *divitissīmus*, } *rich*.

{ *ditior*, *ditissīmus*, }

*frūgi*, *frugalior*, *frugalissīmus*, *frugal*.

*nēquam*, *nequior*, *nequissīmus*, *worthless*.

### Defective Terminational Comparison.

166. Positive Wanting:

<i>Citerior</i> ,	<i>citīmus</i> ,	<i>nearer</i> .	<i>prior</i> ,	<i>prīmus</i> ,	<i>former</i> .
<i>deterior</i> ,	<i>detrerrīmus</i> ,	<i>worse</i> .	<i>propior</i> ,	<i>proxīmus</i> ,	<i>nearer</i> .
<i>interior</i> ,	<i>intīmus</i> ,	<i>inner</i> .	<i>ulterior</i> ,	<i>ultīmus</i> ,	<i>farther</i> . <sup>1</sup>
<i>ocior</i> ,	<i>ocissīmus</i> ,	<i>swifter</i> .			

<sup>1</sup> These adjectives are formed from *citra*, *de*, *intra*, Greek *ἐκός*, *proas* or *prope*, *ultra*.

## 167. Comparative Wanting—in the following:

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *meritus*, *meritissimus*, deserv-  
ing.

2. In these adjectives:

Diversus,	deversissimus,	<i>different.</i>	nōvus,	novissimus,	<i>new.</i>
falsus,	falsissimus,	<i>false.</i>	sacer,	sacerrimus,	<i>sacred.</i>
inclytus,	inclytissimus,	<i>renowned.</i>	vētus,	veterrimus,	<i>old.</i>

## 168. Superlative Wanting—in the following:

1. In most verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*: *docilis*, *docilior*, *docile*; *optabilis*, *optabilior*, desirable. But of these

Some are compared in full: *amabilis*, *facilis*, *fertilis*, *mobilis*, *nobilis*, *utilis*, etc.

2. In many adjectives in *ālis* and *ilis*: *capitalis*, *capitalior*, capital; *civilis*, *civilior*, civil.

3. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

Adolescens,	adolescentior,	minimus nātu, <sup>1</sup>	<i>young.</i>
juvēnis,	junior,	minimus nātu,	<i>young.</i>
sēnex,	senior,	maximus nātu, <sup>2</sup>	<i>old.</i>

4. A few other adjectives want the superlative: *agrestis*, *alacer*, *caecus*, *diuturnus*, *infinitus*, *longinquus*, *optimus*, *proclivis*, *propinquus*, *salutāris*, *supīnus*, *surdus*, *tēres*, *vulgāris*.

169. Both Comparative and Superlative Wanting.—Many adjectives have no terminational comparison:

1. Many from the nature of their signification, admitting no comparison; especially such as denote *material*, *possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time*: *aureus*, golden; *adamantīnus*, adamantine; *paternus*, paternal; *Rōmānus*, Roman; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *aestivus*, of summer; *hibernus*, of winter.

2. Many others.—Thus

1) Those in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those in *quus*: *idoneus*, suitable; *noxius*, hurtful. But a few in *us* have the superlative: *assidus*, *strenuus*. Other exceptions occur, especially in the poets: *pius*, *piissimus*; *egregius*, *egregiissimus*.

2) Many derivatives and compounds, especially (1) derivatives in *ālis*, *ilis*, *ulus*, *icus*, *inus*, *orus*: *mortalis* (mors), mortal; (2) compounds of verbs or of nouns: *particeps* (capio), sharing; *magnanimus* (animus), magnanimous.

3) Also *albus*, *almus*, *cadūcus*, *fērus*, *fessus*, *gnārus*, *lassus*, *mīrus*, *mutlus*, *nāvus*, *nefastus*, *rudis*, etc.

## II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxime*, most, to the positive:

<sup>1</sup> Smallest or youngest in age.

<sup>2</sup> Greatest or eldest in age.

Arduus, m̃gis arduus, maxime arduus, *arduous*.

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *adm̃dum*, *valde*, *op̃ido*, very; *im̃primis*, *ap̃prime*, in the highest degree; *valde magna*, very great; *im̃primis cl̃arus*, renowned in the highest degree. *Per* and *pro* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very*; *per̃difficilis*, very difficult; *praecl̃arus*, very illustrious.

2. Strengthening Particles are sometimes used.—(1) With the comparative: *etiam*, even, *multo*, *longe*, much, far: *etiam diligentior*, even more diligent; *multo diligentior*, much more diligent.—(2) With the superlative: *multo*, *longe*, much, by far; *quam*, as possible: *multo* or *longe diligentissimus*, by far the most diligent; *quam diligentissimus*, as diligent as possible.

## NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

### I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: *unus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: *primus*; first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: *sing̃uli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added

1. MULTIPLICATIVES.—These are adjectives in *plex*, G. *pl̃cis*, denoting so many fold: *simplex*, single; *duplex*, double; *triplex*, three-fold.

2. PROPORTIONALS.—These are declined like *bonus*, and denote so many times as great: *duplus*, twice as great; *triplus*, three times as great.

### 174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. <i>unus</i> , una, unum,	<i>primus</i> , <sup>1</sup> <i>first</i> ,	<i>sing̃uli</i> , one by one.
2. <i>duo</i> , duae, duo,	<i>secundus</i> , <i>second</i> ,	<i>bini</i> , two by two.
3. <i>tres</i> , tria,	<i>tertius</i> , <i>third</i> ,	<i>terni</i> ( <i>trini</i> ).
4. <i>quattuor</i> ,	<i>quartus</i> , <i>fourth</i> ,	<i>quaterni</i> .
5. <i>quinque</i> ,	<i>quintus</i> , <i>fifth</i> ,	<i>quini</i> .
6. <i>sex</i> ,	<i>sextus</i> ,	<i>sēni</i> .
7. <i>septem</i> ,	<i>septimus</i> ,	<i>septēni</i> .
8. <i>octo</i> ,	<i>octavus</i> ,	<i>octōni</i> .
9. <i>ñvem</i> ,	<i>ñnus</i> ,	<i>novēni</i> .
10. <i>d̃cem</i> ,	<i>decimus</i> ,	<i>dēni</i> .
11. <i>und̃cim</i> ,	<i>undecimus</i> ,	<i>undēni</i> .

<sup>1</sup> *Prior* is used instead of *primus* in speaking of two.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
12. duodēcim,	duodecīmus,	duodēni.
13. tredēcim or decem et tres,	tertius decīmus, <sup>1</sup>	terni dēni.
14. quattuordēcim,	quartus decīmus,	quaterni dēni.
15. quindēcim,	quintus decīmus,	quini dēni.
16. sedēcim or sexdē- cim, <sup>1</sup>	sextus decīmus,	sēni dēni.
17. septendēcim, <sup>1</sup>	septīmus decīmus,	septēni dēni.
18. duodeviginti, <sup>2</sup>	duodevicesīmus, <sup>7</sup>	duodevicēni.
19. undeviginti, <sup>2</sup>	undevicesīmus, <sup>7</sup>	undevicēni.
20. viginti,	vicesīmus, <sup>8</sup>	vicēni.
21. { viginti ūnus, ūnus et viginti, <sup>3</sup>	vicesīmus primus, ūnus et vicesīmus,	vicēni singŭli. singŭli et vicēni.
22. { viginti duo, duo et viginti,	vicesīmus secundus, alter et vicesīmus,	vicēni bini. bini et vicēni.
30. triginta,	tricesīmus, <sup>8</sup>	tricēni.
40. quadraginta,	quadagesīmus,	quadragēni.
50. quinquaginta,	quinquagesīmus,	quinquagēni.
60. sexaginta,	sexagesīmus,	sexagēni.
70. septuaginta,	septuagesīmus,	septuagēni.
80. octoginta,	octogesīmus,	octogēni.
90. nonaginta,	nonagesīmus,	nonagēni.
100. centum,	centesīmus,	centēni.
101. { centum ūnus, centum et ūnus, <sup>4</sup>	centesīmus primus, centesīmus et primus	centēni singŭli. centēni et singŭli.
200. ducenti, ac, a.	ducentesīmus,	ducēni.
300. trecenti,	trecentesīmus,	trecēni.
400. quadringenti,	quadringentesīmus,	quadringēni.
500. quingenti,	quingentesīmus,	quingēni.
600. sexcenti,	sexcentesīmus,	sexcēni.
700. septingenti,	septingentesīmus,	septingēni.
800. octingenti,	octingentesīmus,	octingēni.
900. nongenti,	nongentesīmus,	nongēni.
1,000. mille,	millesīmus,	singŭla millia.
2,000. duo millia, <sup>5</sup>	bis millesīmus,	bina millia.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes with the parts separated: *decem et sex*; *decem et septem*.

<sup>2</sup> Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo*; *decem et novem*; so 28, 29; 38, 39, etc., either by subtraction from *triginta*, etc., or by addition to *viginti*; *duodetriginta* or *octo et viginti*.

<sup>3</sup> If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is used, as in English, twenty-one, one and twenty.

<sup>4</sup> In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum viginti* or *mille et centum viginti*, 1,120.

<sup>5</sup> Sometimes *bina millia* or *bis mille*.

<sup>6</sup> Sometimes *decimus* precedes with or without *et*: *decimus et tertius* or *decimus tertius*.

<sup>7</sup> Sometimes expressed by addition, like the corresponding cardinals: *octāvus decimus* and *nonus decimus*.

<sup>8</sup> Sometimes written with *g*: *vigesīmus*; *trigesīmus*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
10,000. <i>dĕcem millia</i> ,	<i>decies millesĭmus</i> ,	<i>dĕna millia</i> .
100,000. <i>centum millia</i> ,	<i>centies millesĭmus</i> ,	<i>centĕna millia</i> .
1,000,000. <i>decies centĕna mil-</i> <i>lia</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>decies centies mille-</i> <i>sĭmus</i> ,	<i>decies centĕnamillia</i> .

1. *Ordinals with Pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

2. *Distributives* are used

1) To show the *number* of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece*; *ternos denarios accepĕrunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence

2) To express *Multiplication*: *decies centĕna millia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bĭna castra*, two camps. Here for *singŭli* and *terni*, *ŭni* and *trĭni* are used: *unae littĕrae*, one letter; *trinae littĕrae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes in reference to objects spoken of in pairs: *bĭni scĭŭphi*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *bĭna hastilia*, two spears.

## DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

### 1. Cardinals.

175. On the declension of cardinals observe

1. That the units, *ŭnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.

2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum* are indeclinable.

3. That the hundreds are declined.

4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

#### 1. Unus, one.

	Singular.			Plural.		
N. ŭnŭs,	ŭnă,	ŭnŭm,	ŭnĭ,	ŭnae,	ŭnă,	
G. unĭŭs,	unĭŭs,	unĭŭs,	unŏrŭm,	unărŭm,	unŏrŭm,	
D. unĭ,	unĭ,	unĭ,	unĭs,	unĭs,	unĭs,	
A. unŭm,	unăm,	unŭm,	unŏs,	unăs,	ună,	
V. unĕ,	ună,	unŭm,				
A. unŏ,	ună,	unŏ;	unĭs,	unĭs,	unĭs.	

#### 2. Duo, two.

N. duŏ,	duae,	duŏ,	trĕs, m. and f.	triă, n.
G. duŏrŭm,	duărŭm,	duŏrŭm, <sup>2</sup>	triŭm,	triŭm,

#### 3. Tres, three.

<sup>1</sup> Literally ten times a hundred thousand; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centĕna millia*: *centies centĕna millia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centĕna millia* is understood and only the adverb is expressed, and sometimes *centum millia* is used.

<sup>2</sup> *Duŏrum* and *duărŭm* are sometimes shortened to *duum*.



D. duobūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs,	tribūs,	tribūs,
A. duōs, duō,	duās,	duō,	trēs,	triā,
A. duobūs,	duābūs,	duōbūs.	tribūs,	tribūs.

1. The plural of *unus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun; *uni Ubii*, the Ubii alone, but in the strict numeral sense of *one*, it is used only with such nouns as, though plural in form, are singular in sense: *una castra*, one camp; *unae litterae*, one letter.

2. Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

177. Hundreds, *ducenti*, *trecenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bonus*: *ducenti*, *ae*, *a*.

178. *Mille* is used both as an adjective and as a substantive. As an adjective it is indeclinable; as a substantive it is used in the singular only in the nominative and accusative, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *māre* (50): *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

With the substantive *Mille*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the genitive: *mille hominum*, a thousand men (of men); but it is in the same case as *mille*, if a declined numeral intervenes: *tria millia trecenti milites*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

## 2. Ordinals and Distributives.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bonus* and distributives like the plural of *bonus*, but the latter often have *um* for *orum* in the genitive; *binum* for *binorum*.

## 180. NUMERAL SYMBOLS.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	16.	XVI.	101.	CI.
2.	II.	17.	XVII.	200.	CC.
3.	III.	18.	XVIII.	300.	CCC.
4.	IV.	19.	XIX.	400.	CCCC.
5.	V.	20.	XX.	500.	IO, or D.
6.	VI.	21.	XXI.	600.	DC.
7.	VII.	22.	XXII.	700.	DCC.
8.	VIII.	30.	XXX.	800.	DCCC.
9.	IX.	40.	XL.	900.	DCCCC.
10.	X.	50.	L.	1,000.	CIO, or M.
11.	XI.	60.	LX.	2,000.	CIOCIO, or MM.
12.	XII.	70.	LXX.	10,000.	CCIOO.
13.	XIII.	80.	LXXX.	100,000.	CCCIOOO.
14.	XIV.	90.	XC.	1,000,000.	CCCCIOOOO.
15.	XV.	100.	C.		

1. Latin Numeral Symbols are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IO or D = 500; CIO or M = 1,000.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol:  $\overline{\text{II}}$  = 2,000;  $\overline{\text{V}}$  = 5,000.

2. In the Combination of these symbols, except IO, observe

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 4 (5-1); VI = 6 (5+1).

3. In the Combination of IO observe

1) That each O (inverted C) after IO increases the value ten-fold: IO = 500; IOO =  $500 \times 10 = 5,000$ ; IOOO =  $5,000 \times 10 = 50,000$ .

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as O stands after it: IO = 500; CIO =  $500 \times 2 = 1,000$ ; IOO = 5,000; CCIOO =  $5,000 \times 2 = 10,000$ .

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IO = 500; IOC = 600; IOCC = 700.

## II. NUMERAL ADVERBS.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs. For convenience of reference we add the following table:

1. sēmel, <i>once</i>	15. { quinquiesdecies	80. octogies
2. bis, <i>twice</i>	16. { quindecies	90. nonagies
3. ter, <i>three times</i>	17. { sexiesdecies	100. centies
4. quāter	18. { sedecies	101. centies semel
5. quinquies	19. { septiesdecies	200. ducenties
6. sexies	20. { duodevicies	300. trecenties
7. septies	21. { octiesdecies	400. quadringenties
8. octies	22. { undevicies	500. quingenties
9. novies	23. { noviesdecies	600. sexcenties
10. dēcies	24. vicies	700. septingenties
11. undecies	25. sēmel et vicies	800. octingenties
12. duodecies	26. bis et vicies	900. noningenties <sup>1</sup>
13. { terdecies	27. tricies	1,000. millies
14. { tredecies	28. quadragies	2,000. bis millies
15. { quaterdecies	29. quinquagies	10,000. decies millies
16. { quattuordecies	30. sexagies	100,000. centies millies
	31. septuagies	1,000,000. millies millies.

1. In Compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicies*; the tens however with or without *et* sometimes precede: *vicies et bis* or *vicies bis*, but not *bis vicies*.

2. Another Class of numeral adverbs in *um* or *o* is formed from the ordinals: *primum*, *primo*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium*, *tertio*, for the third time.

<sup>1</sup> Also written *nongenties*.

## CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

182. THE Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ëgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ëgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows:

## SINGULAR.

N. <i>ëgö</i>	<i>tü</i>	
G. <i>mei</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>suï</i>
D. <i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>mö</i>	<i>tö</i>	<i>sö</i>
V.	<i>tü</i>	
A. <i>mö</i> ;	<i>të</i> ;	<i>së</i> ;

## PLURAL.

N. <i>nös</i>	<i>vös</i>	
G. <i>nostrüm</i> }	<i>vestrüm</i> }	<i>suï</i>
G. <i>nostrï</i> <sup>1</sup> }	<i>vestrï</i> <sup>1</sup> }	
D. <i>nöbis</i>	<i>vöbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>
A. <i>nös</i>	<i>vös</i>	<i>sö</i>
V.	<i>vös</i>	
A. <i>nöbis</i> .	<i>vöbis</i> .	<i>së</i> .

1. **Substantive Pronouns.**—Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.**—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of *himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

<sup>1</sup> On the use of these two forms see 446. 8.

3. **Emphatic Forms** in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egōmet*, I myself; *mihimēd*, *tēd*, etc. But the Nom. *tū* has *tūte* and *tūtēmēd*, for *tūmet*.

4. **Reduplicated Forms**:—*seš*, *tet*, *mēm*, for *se*, *te*, *me*.

5. **Ancient and Rare Forms**:—*mis* for *mei*; *tis* for *tui*; *mī* and *mē* for *mihī*; *mehe*, *med*, and *mēpte* for *me*; *tēd* for *te*.

6. **Cum**, when used with the *ablatives* of these pronouns, is appended to them: *mēcum*, *tēcum*.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

<i>meus</i> , <i>my</i> ,	<i>noster</i> , <i>our</i> ,
<i>tuus</i> , <i>thy</i> , <i>your</i> ,	<i>vester</i> , <i>your</i> ,
<i>suus</i> , <i>his</i> , <i>her</i> , <i>its</i> ,	<i>suus</i> , <i>their</i> .

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions: *meus*, *mēa*, *mēcum*; *noster*, *nostra*, *nostrum*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mī*, sometimes *mēus*.

1. **Emphatic Forms**, in *pte* and *met* occur, especially in the Abl. Sing.: *suapte*, *suāmet*.

2. **The Patrials**, *nostras*, of our country, and *vestras*, of your country, are also possessives. They have the genitive in *ātis*, and are declined as adjectives of Decl. III., but are little used.

3. **Cujus and Cujas**.—*Cujus* (a, um, whose?) and the patrial *cujas* (*ātis*, of what country?) also belong to possessives, though, not like other possessives, formed from personal pronouns, but from the interrogative *quis*, *cujus*. See 183.

## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. **Demonstrative Pronouns**, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

*Hic*, *ille*, *iste*, *ipse*, *is*, *idem*.

They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
<i>G.</i> hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
<i>D.</i> huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>A.</i> hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> hōc	hāc	hōc;	hīs	hīs	hīs.

*Illē, he or that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> illē	illā	illād	illi	illae	illā
<i>G.</i> illiūs	illiūs	illiūs	illōrūm	illārūm	illōrūm
<i>D.</i> illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>A.</i> illūm	illām	illād	illōs	illās	illā
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> illō	illā	illō;	illis	illis	illis.

*Istē, that.*

*Istē, that*, is declined like *illē*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

*Ipsē, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> ipsē	ipsā	ipsūm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
<i>G.</i> ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsōrūm	ipsārūm	ipsōrūm
<i>D.</i> ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>A.</i> ipsūm	ipsām	ipsūm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

*Is, he, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> is	eā	īd	īi	eae	eā
<i>G.</i> ejūs	ejūs	ejūs	eōrūm	eārūm	eōrūm
<i>D.</i> ei	eī	eī	īis (eīs)	īis (eīs)	īis (eīs)
<i>A.</i> eūm	eām	īd	eōs	eās	eā
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> eō	eā	eō;	īis (eīs)	īis (eīs)	īis (eīs).

*Idem, the same.*

*Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *idem* to *īdem* and *īdēm* to *īdēm*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*; thus:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> īdēm	eādēm	īdēm	īdēm	eaedēm	eādēm
<i>G.</i> ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
<i>D.</i> eidēm	eidēm	eidēm	īisdēm	īisdēm	īisdēm <sup>1</sup>
<i>A.</i> eundēm	eandēm	īdēm	eōsdēm	eāsdēm	eādēm
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> eōdēm	eādēm	eōdēm;	īisdēm	īisdēm	īisdēm. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *eisdēm* in all genders. *Idem* and *īisdēm* are in poetry dissyllables, and are sometimes written *īdem* and *īdēm*.



6. *Uter* and *Utercunque*, *which* and *whichever*, also occur with the force of relatives.

7. **Relative Adjectives**: *quālis*, e, such as; *quantus*, a, um, so great; *quōt*, as many as; *quōtus*, a, um, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *qualiscunque*; *quantusquantus*, *quantuscunque*; *quotquot*, *quotcunque*; *quotuscunque*.

*Quotquot* is indeclinable; in the other double forms both parts are declined; in the forms in *cunque*, of course only the first part is declined.

For *Quālis* the genitive of the relative with *mōdi* is often used: *cujusmōdi* (sometimes *cuiusmōdi*), *cujuscēmōdi*, of what kind, such as; *cujuscunquemōdi*, *cuiuscuiusmōdi* (for *cujuscujusmōdi*, 4), of whatever kind.

## V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.\*

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui* with their compounds.

*Quis* (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quīs	quae	quīd	quī	quae	quae
G. cuius	cujūs	cujūs	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs
A. quēm	quām	quīd	quōs	quās	quae
V.					
A. quō	quā	quō;	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs.

*Quī* (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui*.

1. *Quis* and *Quem* sometimes occur as feminine forms.

2. *Qui* as an *ablative* with an adverbial force in the sense of *how*? sometimes occurs. The other ancient forms are the same as in the relative, 187. 1.

3. **Compounds** of *quis* and *qui* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quisnam*, *quīnam*, *ecquis*, etc. But *ecquis* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae*.

4. **Interrogative Adjectives**: (1) *Quālis*, e, what? *quantus*, a, um, how great? *quōt*, how many? *quōtus*, a, um, of what number? *ūter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? See 149. (2) The Possessive interrogative, *cujus*, a, um, whose? and the Patrial *cujas*, *ātis*, of what country?

*Cujus* is defective and little used. It has the Nom. and Acc. Sing., and in the feminine also the Abl. Sing. and the Nom. and Accus. Plur.

## VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui* with their compounds.

190. *Quis* and *qui* are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.

1. *Quis* and *Qui* are generally used after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*; *si quis*, *si qui*. But they also occur without such accompaniment.

2. *Qua* for *Quae*.—After *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *qua*: *si quae*, *si qua*.

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. *The Indefinites*:

*aliquis*, *aliqua*, *aliquid* or *aliquod*, *some, some one*.  
*quispiam*, *quaequam*, *quidpiam*<sup>1</sup> or *quodpiam*, *some, some one*.  
*quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam* or *quoddam*, *certain, certain one*.  
*quisquam*, *quidquam*,<sup>1</sup> *any one*.

II. *The General Indefinites*:

*quisque*, *quaeque*, *quidque*<sup>2</sup> or *quodque*, *every, every one*.  
*quivis*, *quaevis*, *quidvis* or *quodvis*, *any one you please*.  
*quilibet*, *quaelibet*, *quidlibet* or *quodlibet*, *any one you please*.

1. *Declension*.—It may be remarked

1) That these compounds are generally declined like the simple *quis* and *qui*, but have in the Neut. Sing. both *quod* and *quid*, the former used *adjectively*, the latter *substantively*.

2) That *aliquis* has *aliqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Aliqui* for *aliquis* occurs.

3) That *quidam* generally changes *m* to *n* before *d*: *quendam* for *quemdam*.

4) That *quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

5) That *unus* prefixed to *quisque* does not affect its declension: *unusquisque*, *unaquaeque*, etc.

2. *Other Indefinites* are: *alius*, *alter*, *uter*, *alteruter*, *neuter*, *ullus*, *nul-  
lus*, *nemo*.

3. *Other General Indefinites* may be formed from *uter*: *uterque*, both, each; *uterque*, *uterlibet*, either you please.

4. *Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives*: *qualislibet*, *quaelibet*, of any sort; *aliquantus*, a, um, of some size; *aliquot* (indeclinable), several.

For *qualislibet* the Gen. of an indefinite pronoun with *modi* may be used: *cujusdammodi*, of some kind.

## CHAPTER IV.

### VERBS.

192. *VERBS* in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *legit*, he reads.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes written respectively, *quispiam* and *quicquam*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes written *quisque*.



193. Verbs comprise two principal classes :

I. **TRANSITIVE VERBS**,—which admit a direct object of their action : *servum verbērat*, he beats the slave.

II. **INTRANSITIVE VERBS**,—which do not admit such an object : *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

### I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices :

I. The **ACTIVE VOICE**,—which represents the subject as acting or existing : *pāter filium amat*, the father loves his son ; *est*, he is.

II. The **PASSIVE VOICE**,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing : *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

1. **Passive Wanting**.—Intransitive Verbs generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive. See 301. 3.

2. **Active Wanting**.—Deponent Verbs<sup>1</sup> are Passive in form, but not in sense : *loquor*, to speak. But see 221.

### II. MOODS.

196. Moods are either Definite or Indefinite :

I. The **Definite** or **Finite Moods** make up the Finite Verb ; they are :

1. The **INDICATIVE MOOD**,—which either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the fact : *lĕgit*, he is reading ; *lĕgitne*, is he reading ?

2. The **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**,—which expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc. : *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. The **IMPERATIVE MOOD**,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty* : *lĕge*, read thou.

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives ; they are :

<sup>1</sup> So called from *depono*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning.

1. The **INFINITIVE**,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb without any necessary reference to person or number : *legere*, to read.

2. The **GERUND**,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in **ING** : *amandi*, of loving ; *amandi causa*, for the sake of loving.

3. The **SUPINE**,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular* : *amatum*, to love, for loving ; *amatu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The **PARTICIPLE**,—which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles : two in the Active, the Present and Future—*amans*, loving ; *amaturus*, about to love ;—and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future—*amatus*, loved ; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

### III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses :

#### I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION :

1. Present : *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect : *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future : *amābo*, I shall love.

#### II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION :

1. Perfect : *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect : *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect : *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

### 198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect** and **Historical Perfect**.—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite* ; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal** and **Historical**.—Tenses are also distinguished as

- 1) *Principal* :—Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.
- 2) *Historical* :—Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.**—The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

#### IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two numbers: SINGULAR and PLURAL.

#### V. PERSONS.

200. There are three persons: FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

#### CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

##### INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
<b>āre,</b>	<b>ēre,</b>	<b>ĕre,</b>	<b>ire.</b>

202. **Principal Parts.**—Four forms of the verb,—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine,—are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.**—In any regular verb

1. The VERB-STEM may be found by dropping the infinitive ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.

2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.

3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. Sum, *I am*.

*Sum* is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
sūm,	essē,	fuī,	—.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sūm,	<i>I am,</i>	sūmūs,	<i>we are,</i>
ēs,	<i>thou art,</i> <sup>1</sup>	estīs,	<i>you are,</i>
est,	<i>he is;</i>	sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was.*

ērām,	<i>I was,</i>	ērāmūs,	<i>we were,</i>
erās,	<i>thou wast,</i>	erātīs,	<i>you were,</i>
erāt,	<i>he was;</i>	erant,	<i>they were.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be.*

ērō,	<i>I shall be,</i>	ērīmūs,	<i>we shall be,</i>
erīs,	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	erītīs,	<i>you will be,</i>
erit,	<i>he will be;</i>	erunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I have been, was.*

fuī,	<i>I have been,</i>	fuīmūs,	<i>we have been,</i>
fuistī,	<i>thou hast been,</i>	fuistīs,	<i>you have been,</i>
fuīt,	<i>he has been;</i>	fuērunt, fuēre,	<i>they have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been.*

fuērām,	<i>I had been,</i>	fuērāmūs,	<i>we had been,</i>
fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	fuērātīs,	<i>you had been,</i>
fuērāt,	<i>he had been;</i>	fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been.*

fuērō,	<i>I shall have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we shall have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you will have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he will have been;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Or *you are*; *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse; in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
sim,	<i>I may be,</i>	simūs,	<i>we may be,</i>
sis,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sītīs,	<i>you may be,</i>
sīt	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be.*

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essētīs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I may or can have been.*

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been.*

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissētīs,	<i>you might have been.</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ēs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estē,	<i>be ye,</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,</i>	estōtē,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essē,	<i>to be,</i>	
PERF. fuissē,	<i>to have been,</i>	
FUT. fūtūrūs <sup>1</sup> essē,	<i>to be about to be.</i>	FUT. fūtūrūs <sup>1</sup> about to be.

1. Rare Forms are: *fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt, fōrent, and fōrē*, for *essem, esses, esset, essent, and futūrus esse*. See 297. III. 2.

2. Antiquated Forms are: *siēm, siēs, siēt, sient*, for *sim, sis, sit, sint* ; also *fuām, fuās, fuāt, fuant*, for the same.

<sup>1</sup> *Futūrus* is declined like *bonus* ; N. *futūrus, a, um*, G. *futūrū, ae, t* ; so in the Infinitive : *futūrus, a, um esse*.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
āmō,	āmāre,	āmāvī,	āmātūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I love, am loving, do love.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

āmō,	<i>I love,</i>	āmāmūs,	<i>we love,</i>
āmās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>	āmātīs,	<i>you love,</i>
āmāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>	āmant,	<i>they love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love.*

āmābām,	<i>I was loving,</i>	āmābāmūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
āmābās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>	āmābātīs,	<i>you were loving,</i>
āmābāt,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	āmābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will love.*

āmābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	āmābīmūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
āmābīs,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>	āmābītīs,	<i>you will love,</i>
āmābīt,	<i>he will love ;</i>	āmābant,	<i>they will love.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I loved, have loved.*

āmāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>	āmāvīmūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
āmāvīstī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	āmāvīstīs,	<i>you have loved,</i>
āmāvīt,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	āmāvērunt, ērē,	<i>they have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved.*

āmāvērām,	<i>I had loved,</i>	āmāvērāmūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
āmāvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>	āmāvērātīs,	<i>you had loved,</i>
āmāvērāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	āmāvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have loved.*

āmāvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	āmāvērīmūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
āmāvērīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	āmāvērītīs,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
āmāvērīt,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	āmāvērint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can love.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

ămăm,	<i>I may love,</i>	ămămūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
ămăs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>	ămătīs,	<i>you may love,</i>
ămăt,	<i>he may love ;</i>	ămănt,	<i>they may love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should love.*

ămărăm,	<i>I might love,</i>	ămărămūs,	<i>we might love,</i>
ămărăs,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>	ămărătīs,	<i>you might love,</i>
ămărăt,	<i>he might love ;</i>	ămărent,	<i>they might love.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I may or can have loved.*

ămăvărīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	ămăvărīmūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
ămăvărīs,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>	ămăvărītīs,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
ămăvărīt,	<i>he may have loved ;</i>	ămăvărīnt,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have loved.*

ămăvissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	ămăvissēmūs,	<i>we might have loved,</i>
ămăvissēs,	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>	ămăvissētīs,	<i>you might have loved,</i>
ămăvissē,	<i>he might have loved ;</i>	ămăvissent,	<i>they might have loved.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămă,	<i>love thou ;</i>	ămătē,	<i>love ye.</i>
FUT. ămătō,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	ămătōtē,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
ămătō,	<i>he shall love ;</i>	ămăntō,	<i>they shall love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. ămărē,	<i>to love.</i>	PRES. ămăns, <sup>1</sup>	<i>loving.</i>
PERF. ămăvissē,	<i>to have loved.</i>		
FUT. ămătărūs <sup>2</sup> essē,	<i>to be about to love.</i>	FUT. ămătărūs, <sup>2</sup>	<i>about to love.</i>

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. ămăndī,	<i>of loving,</i>		
Dat. ămăndō,	<i>for loving,</i>		
Acc. ămăndūm,	<i>loving,</i>	Acc. ămătūm,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. ămăndō,	<i>by loving.</i>	Abl. ămătā,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Decline like *prudens*, 153.<sup>2</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 143.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnītūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneō	mōnēmūs
mōnēs	mōnētis
mōnēt;	mōnent.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising.*

mōnebām	mōnebāmūs
mōnebās	mōnebātis
mōnebāt;	mōnebant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

mōnebō	mōnebimūs
mōnebis	mōnebitis
mōnebit;	mōnebunt.

## PERFECT.

*I advised or have advised.*

mōnuī	mōnuimūs
mōnuistī	mōnuistis
mōnuīt;	mōnuērunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

mōnuērām	mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērās	mōnuērātis
mōnuērāt;	mōnuērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*

mōnuērō	mōnuērīmūs
mōnuēris	mōnuēritis
mōnuērit;	mōnuērint.



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can advise.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneām	mōneāmūs
mōneās	mōneātīs
mōneāt;	mōneant.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

mōnērēm	mōnērēmūs
mōnērēs	mōnērētīs
mōnērēt;	mōnērent.

## PERFECT.

*I may have advised.*

mōnuērīm	mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērīs	mōnuērītīs
mōnuērīt;	mōnuērint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

mōnuissēm	mōnuissēmūs
mōnuissēs	mōnuissētīs
mōnuissēt;	mōnuissent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē, advise thou;	mōnētē, advise ye.
FUT. mōnētō, thou shalt advise, mōnētō, he shall advise;	mōnētōtē, ye shall advise, mōnentō, they shall advise.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnērē, to advise.	PRES. mōnens, advising.
PERF. mōnuissē, to have advised.	
FUT. mōnītārūs essē, to be about to advise.	FUT. mōnītārūs, about to advise.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. mōnendi, of advising,	
Dat. mōnendō, for advising,	
Acc. mōnendū, advising,	Acc. mōnītū, to advise,
Abl. mōnendō, by advising.	Abl. mōnītū, to advise, be advised.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneor,	mōneri,	mōnitūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneor	mōnēmūr
mōneris, or rē	mōnemīni
mōnetūr;	mōnentūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*

mōnebār	mōnebāmūr
mōnebaris, or rē	mōnebāmīni
mōnebatūr;	mōnebantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*

mōnebōr	mōnebīmūr
mōneberis, or rē	mōnebīmīni
mōnebitūr;	mōnebuntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*

mōnitūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	mōnitī sūmūs
mōnitūs es	mōnitī estis
mōnitūs est;	mōnitī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*

mōnitūs ērām <sup>1</sup>	mōnitī ērāmūs
mōnitūs ēras	mōnitī ērātis
mōnitūs ērāt;	mōnitī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*

mōnitūs ērō <sup>1</sup>	mōnitī ērimūs
mōnitūs ēris	mōnitī ēritis
mōnitūs ērit;	mōnitī ērant.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneār	mōneāmūr
mōneāris, or rē	mōneāmīni
mōneātūr;	mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

mōnērēr	mōnērēmūr
mōnērēris, or rē	mōnērēmīni
mōnērētūr;	mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been advised.*

mōnītūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī sīmūs
mōnītūs sis	mōnītī sītīs
mōnītūs sīt;	mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

mōnītūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītūs essēs	mōnītī essētīs
mōnītūs essēt;	mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, be thou advised;	mōnēmīni, be ye advised.
FUT. mōnētōr, thou shalt be advised,	
mōnētōr, he shall be advised;	mōnentōr, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnēri, to be advised,	
PERF. mōnītūs essē, to have been advised,	PERF. mōnītūs, advised,
FUT. mōnītūm iri, to be about to be advised.	FUT. mōnendūs, to be advised.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgō,	rēgērē,	rexī,	rectūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I rule.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
rēgō		rēgimūs
rēgis		rēgitis
rēgit ;		rēgunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling.*

rēgebām		rēgebāmūs
rēgebās		rēgebātis
rēgebāt ;		rēgebant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

rēgām		rēgēmūs
rēges		rēgetis
rēget ;		rēgent.

## PERFECT.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

rexī		reximūs
rexisti		rexistis
rexīt ;		rexerunt, or <i>erō.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rexērām		rexērāmūs
rexērās		rexērātis
rexērāt ;		rexerant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*

rexerō		rexerimūs
rexeris		rexeritis
rexerīt ;		rexerint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can rule.*

## SINGULAR.

rēgām

rēgās

rēgāt ;

## PLURAL.

rēgāmūs

rēgātīs

rēgant.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

rēgērēm

rēgērēs

rēgērēt ;

rēgērēmūs

rēgērētīs

rēgērent.

## PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*

rexērīm

rexērīs

rexērīt ;

rexērīmūs

rexērītīs

rexērint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

rexissēm

rexissēs

rexissēt ;

rexissēmūs

rexissētīs

rexissent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, rule thou ;

rēgītē, rule ye.

FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule,  
rēgītō, he shall rule ;rēgītōtē, ye shall rule,  
rēguntō, they shall rule.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.

PRES. rēgens, ruling.

PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.

FUT. rectūrus essē, to be about  
to rule.

FUT. rectūrus, about to rule.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. rēgendī, of ruling,

Dat. rēgendō, for ruling,

Acc. rēgendūm, ruling,

Abl. rēgendō, by ruling.

Acc. rectūm, to rule,

Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

rēgōr,

Pres. Inf.

rēgī,

Perf. Ind.

rectus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am ruled.*

## SINGULAR.

rēgōr

rēgēris, or rē

rēgītūr;

## PLURAL.

rēgimūr

rēgimīni

rēguntūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*

rēgēbār

rēgēbāris, or rē

rēgēbātūr;

rēgēbāmūr

rēgēbāmīni

rēgēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

rēgār

rēgēris, or rē

rēgētūr;

rēgēmūr

rēgēmīni

rēgentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*rectus sum<sup>1</sup>

rectus es

rectus est;

recti sumus

recti estis

recti sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rectus eram<sup>1</sup>

rectus eras

rectus erat;

recti eramus

recti eratis

recti erant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rectus erō<sup>1</sup>

rectus eris

rectus erit;

recti erimus

recti eritis

recti erunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgār	rēgāmūr
rēgāris, or rē	rēgāminī
rēgātūr ;	rēgantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

rēgērēr	rēgērēmūr
rēgērēris, or rē	rēgērēmīnī
rēgērētūr ;	rēgērentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled.*

rectūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	rectī sīmūs
rectūs sis	rectī sitis
rectūs sit ;	rectī sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

rectūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	rectī essēmūs
rectūs essēs	rectī essētis
rectūs essēt ;	rectī essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, be thou ruled ; | rēgīmīnī, be ye ruled.

FUT. rēgītōr, thou shalt be ruled, | rēgantōr, ye shall be ruled.  
rēgītōr, he shall be ruled ;

## INFINITIVE

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, to be ruled.

PERF. rectūs essē, to have been ruled.

FUT. rectūm irī, to be about to be ruled.

PERF. rectūs, ruled.

FUT. rēgendūs, to be ruled.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audirē,	audivi,	audītum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I hear.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audimūs
audis	auditis
audit ;	audiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing.*

audiebām	audiebāmus
audiebas	audiebatis
audiebat ;	audiebant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

audiām	audiemus
audies	audietis
audiet ;	audient.

## PERFECT.

*I heard or have heard.*

audivi	audivimus
audivisti	audivistis
audivit ;	audiverunt, or ēre.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audiverām	audiveramus
audiveras	audiveratis
audiverat ;	audiverant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*

audiverō	audiverimus
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit ;	audiverint.



## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can hear.*

## SINGULAR.

**audiām**  
**audiās**  
**audiāt ;**

## PLURAL.

**audiāmūs**  
**audiātis**  
**audiant.**

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

**audirēm**  
**audirēs**  
**audirēt ;**

**audirēmūs**  
**audirētis**  
**audirent.**

## PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*

**audivērim**  
**audivēris**  
**audivērit ;**

**audivērimūs**  
**audivēritis**  
**audivērint.**

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

**audivissēm**  
**audivissēs**  
**audivissēt ;**

**audivissēmūs**  
**audivissētis**  
**audivissent.**

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. **audi,** *hear thou ;***audite,** *hear ye.*FUT. **auditō,** *thou' shalt hear,*  
**auditō,** *he shall hear ;***auditōtō,** *ye shall hear,*  
**audiantō,** *they shall hear. '*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. **audire,** *to hear.*PRES. **audiens,** *hearing.*PERF. **audivisse,** *to have heard.*FUT. **auditurus esse,** *to be*  
*about to hear.*FUT. **auditurus,** *about to hear.*

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. **audiendi,** *of hearing.*Dat. **audiendō,** *for hearing.*Acc. **audiendum,** *hearing.*Abl. **audiendō,** *by hearing.*Acc. **auditum,** *to hear.*Abl. **auditū,** *to hear, be heard.*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.  
audiōr,

Pres. Inf.  
audiri,

Perf. Ind.  
auditus sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am heard.*

SINGULAR.  
audiōr  
audiris, or rē  
auditur ;

PLURAL.  
audimur  
audimini  
audiuntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

audiebār  
audiebaris, or rē  
audiebātūr ;

audiebāmūr  
audiebāmini  
audiebantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*

audiār  
audieris, or rē  
audietūr ;

audiemūr  
audiemini  
audientūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*

auditus sūm <sup>1</sup>  
auditus es  
auditus est ;

auditi sūmus  
auditi estis  
auditi sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

auditus ērām <sup>1</sup>  
auditus ēras  
auditus ērāt ;

auditi ērāmus  
auditi ērātis  
auditi ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

auditus ērō <sup>1</sup>  
auditus eris  
auditus erit ;

auditi erimus  
auditi eritis  
auditi erunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

*I may or can be heard.*

## SINGULAR.

audīār  
audīārīs, or rē  
audīātūr ;

## PLURAL.

audīāmūr  
audīāminī  
audīantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

audīrēr  
audīrērīs, or rē  
audīrētūr ;

audīrēmūr  
audīrēmīnī  
audīrentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I may have been heard.*

audītūs sīm<sup>1</sup>  
audītūs sīs  
audītūs sīt ;

audītī sīmūs  
audītī sītīs  
audītī sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

audītūs essēm<sup>1</sup>  
audītūs essēs  
audītūs essēt ;

audītī essēmūs  
audītī essētīs  
audītī essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audīrē, be thou heard ; | audīmīnī, be ye heard.

FUT. audītōr, thou shalt be heard, |  
audītōr, he shall be heard ; | audīuntōr, they shall be heard.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audīrī, to be heard.

PERF. audītūs esse, to have been  
heard.

FUT. audītūm irī, to be about  
to be heard.

PERF. audītūs, heard.

FUT. audīendūs, to be heard.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot notes.

## VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation, and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth, wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows :

## ACTIVE VOICE.

214. *Capio, I take.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpērē,	cēpī,	captūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

## SINGULAR.

cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit ;

## PLURAL.

| cāpimūs, cāpitīs, cāpiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

cāpiebām, -iebās, -iebāt ;

| cāpiebāmūs, -iebātīs, -iebant.

## FUTURE.

cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt ;

| cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -ient.

## PERFECT.

cēpī, -istī, -it ;

| cēpimūs, -istīs, -erunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt ;

| cēpērāmūs, -ērātīs, -erant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

cēpērō, -ērīs, -erit ;

| cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

cāpiām, -iās, -iāt ;

| cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.

## IMPERFECT.

cāpērēm, -ērēs, -erēt ;

| cāpērēmūs, -erētīs, -erent.

## PERFECT.

cēpērīm, -ērīs, -erit ;

| cēpērīmūs, -erītīs, -erint.

## PLUPERFECT.

cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt ;

| cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

## IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES. cǎpě ;	cǎpītě.
FUT. cǎpītǒ, cǎpītǒ ;	cǎpītǒtě, cǎpiuntǒ.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. cǎpěřě.	PRES. cǎpiens.
PERF. cǎpissě.	
FUT. cǎptūrūs essě.	FUT. cǎptūrūs.

## GERUND.

## SUPINE.

Gen. cǎpiendī.	
Dat. cǎpiendǒ.	
Acc. cǎpiendūm.	Acc. cǎptūm.
Abl. cǎpiendǎ.	Abl. cǎptū.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cǎpiōr,	cǎpī,	cǎptūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cǎpiōr, cǎpēris, cǎpītūr ;	cǎpīmūr, cǎpīmīnī, cǎpiuntūr.

## IMPERFECT.

cǎpiebār, -iebāris, -iebatūr ;	cǎpiebāmūr, -iebāmīnī, -iebantūr.
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

## FUTURE.

cǎpiār, -ieris, -ietūr ;	cǎpiēmūr, -iemīnī, -ientur.
--------------------------	-----------------------------

## PERFECT.

cǎptūs sūm, ēs, est ;	cǎptī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
-----------------------	---------------------------

## PLUPERFECT.

cǎptūs ērām, ērās, ērāt ;	cǎptī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
---------------------------	------------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

cǎptūs ērǒ, ēris, ērit ;	cǎptī ērīmūs, ēritīs, ērunt.
--------------------------	------------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

## SINGULAR.

cāpiār, -iārīs, -iātūr;

## PLURAL.

| cāpiāmūr, -iāmīni, -iantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

cāpērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr;

| cāpērēmūr, -ērēmīni, -ērentūr.

## PERFECT.

captūs aīm, sīs, sūt;

| captī aīmūs, sītīs, sint.

## PLUPERFECT.

captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;

| captī essēmūs, essētīs, essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. cāpērē;

| cāpīmīni.

FUT. cāpītōr,

cāpītōr;

| cāpiuntōr.

## INFINITIVE.

PRES. cāpi.

PERF. captūs essē.

FUT. captūm iri.

## PARTICIPLE.

PERF. captūs.

FUT. cāpiendūs.

## SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

## 216. FIRST CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

āmō, āmārē, āmāvī, āmātūm.

2. MOODS AND TENSES.<sup>1</sup>

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPER.	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> āmō	āmēm	āmā	āmārē	āmāns.
<i>Imp.</i> āmābām	āmārēm			
<i>Fut.</i> āmābō		āmātō	āmātūrūs essē	āmātūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i> āmāvī	āmāvērīm		āmāvissē	
<i>Plup.</i> āmāvērām	āmāvissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> āmāvērō				

*Gerund*, āmandī, dō, etc. *Supine*, āmātūm, ū.

<sup>1</sup> These tables, it will be observed, are so arranged as to exhibit not only the synopsis of each mood through the different tenses, as, *INDIC. amo, amābam*, etc., but also the synopsis of each tense through the different moods, as, *PRES. amo, amem, ama*, etc. The pupil should make himself so familiar with the verbs, as they occur in his reading lessons, as to be able to give the synopsis of any mood through all the tenses, or of any tense through all the moods.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

āmōr, āmārī, āmātūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> āmōr	āmēr	āmārē	āmārī	-
<i>Imp.</i> āmābār	āmārēr			
<i>Fut.</i> āmābōr		āmātōr	āmātūm īrī	āmandūs.
<i>Perf.</i> āmātūs sūm	āmātūs sūm		āmātūs essē	āmātūs.
<i>Plup.</i> āmātūs ērām	āmātūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> āmātūs ērō				

## 217. SECOND CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneō	mōneām	mōnē	mōnērē	mōnens.
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbām	mōnērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbō		mōnētō	mōnītūrūs essē	mōnītūrūs.
<i>Perf.</i> mōnuī	mōnuērīm		mōnuissē	
<i>Plup.</i> mōnuērām	mōnuissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnuērō				

*Gerund*, mōnendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, mōnītūm, ū.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneor, mōnērī, mōnītūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneōr	mōneār	mōnērē	mōnērī	
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbār	mōnērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbōr		mōnētōr	mōnītūm īrī	mōnendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> mōnītūs sūm	mōnītūs sūm		mōnītūs essē	mōnītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> mōnītūs ērām	mōnītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnītūs ērō				

## 218. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgō, rēgērē, rēxī, rēctūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> rēgō	rēgām	rēgē	rēgērē	rēgens.
<i>Imp.</i> rēgēbām	rēgērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> rēgām		rēgītō	rectūrus essē	rectūrus.
<i>Perf.</i> rēxī	rexērīm		rexissē	
<i>Plup.</i> rexērām	rexissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> rexērō				

*Gerund*, regendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, rectūm, ū.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgōr, rēgī, rēctūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> rēgōr	rēgār	rēgērē	rēgī	
<i>Imp.</i> rēgēbār	rēgērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> rēgār		rēgītōr	rectūm iri	rēgendūs.
<i>Perf.</i> rēctūs sūm	rectūs sīm		rectūs essē	rectūs.
<i>Plup.</i> rectūs ērām	rectūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> rectūs ērō				

## 219. VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpī, captūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i> cāpiō	cāpiām	cāpē	cāpērē	cāpiens.
<i>Imp.</i> cāpiebām	cāpērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> cāpiām		cāpītō	captūrus essē	cāptūrus.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpī	cēpērīm		cēpissē	
<i>Plup.</i> cēpērām	cēpissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> cēpērō				

*Gerund*, cāpiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, captūm, ū.



## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cāpiōr, cāpī, captūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	cāpiōr	cāpiār	cāpērē	cāpī	cāpiendūs. captūs.
<i>Imp.</i>	cāpiebār	cāpērēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	cāpiār		cāpitōr		
<i>Perf.</i>	captūs sūm	captūs sīm		captūm irī captūs essē	
<i>Plup.</i>	captūs ērām	captūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	captūs ērō				

## 220. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō, audirē, audivī, auditūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	audiō	audiām	audi	audirē	audiens.
<i>Imp.</i>	audiebām	audirēm			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiām		auditō		
<i>Perf.</i>	audivī	audivērīm		auditūrūs essē audivissē	auditūrūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	audivērām	audivissēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	audivērō				

*Gerund*, audiendī, dō, etc. *Supine*, auditūm, ū.

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## 1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiōr, audirī, auditūs sūm.

## 2. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	audiōr	audiār	audirē	audirī	audiendūs. auditūs.
<i>Imp.</i>	audiebār	audirēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	audiār		auditōr		
<i>Perf.</i>	auditūs sūm	auditūs sīm		auditūs essē	
<i>Plup.</i>	auditūs ērām	auditūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	auditūs ērō				

## DEPONENT VERBS.

221. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The Future passive participle generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect passive; *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

## SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### 222. Hortor, I exhort.\*

##### I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortor, hortārī, hortātus sūm.

##### II. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	hortor <sup>1</sup>	hortēr	hortārē	hortārī	hortans.
<i>Imp.</i>	hortābār	hortārēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	hortābōr		hortātōr	hortātūrūs essē	{ hortātūrūs. hortandūs. hortātūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	hortātūs sūm	hortātūs sīm		hortātūs essē	
<i>Plup.</i>	hortātūs ērām	hortātūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	hortātūs ērō				

*Gerund*, hortandī, dō, etc. *Supine*, hortātūm, ū.

### SECOND CONJUGATION.

#### 223. Vereor, I fear.

##### I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

vereor, vērerī, vēritus sūm.

##### II. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	vereor	vēreār	vērerē	vērerī	vērens.
<i>Imp.</i>	vērebār	vērerēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	vērebōr		vērētōr	vēritūrūs essē	{ vēritūrūs. vērendūs. vēritūs.
<i>Perf.</i>	vēritūs sūm	vēritūs sīm		vēritūs esse	
<i>Plup.</i>	vēritūs ērām	vēritūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	vēritūs ērō				

*Gerund*, vērendī, dō. *Supine*, vēritūm, ū.

<sup>1</sup>The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers; *hortor*, *hortāris*, *hortātūr*, *hortāmvr*, *hortāmīni*, *hortantūr*.

All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Part. in dus*, which has the passive force, *about to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. From its passive force this Part. cannot be used in intransitive Dep. verbs, except in an impersonal sense. See 301, 2 and 3.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

224. Sequor, *I follow.*

## I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sequor, sequi, secutus sum.

## II. MOODS AND TENSES.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	sequor	sequar	sequere	sequi	sequens.
<i>Imp.</i>	sequerbar	sequerer			
<i>Fut.</i>	sequar		sequitor	secuturus esse	{ secuturus. sequendus.
<i>Perf.</i>	secutus sum	secutus sim		secutus esse	secutus.
<i>Plup.</i>	secutus eram	secutus essem			
<i>F. P.</i>	secutus ero				

*Gerund*, sequendi, dō, etc. *Supine*, secutum, ū.

225. Patior, *I suffer.*

## I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

patior, pati, passus sum.

## II. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	patior	patiār	patēre	pati	'patiens.
<i>Imp.</i>	patiēbar	patērēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	patiār		patitor	passurus esse	{ passurus. patiendus.
<i>Perf.</i>	passus sum	passus sim		passus esse	passus.
<i>Plup.</i>	passus eram	passus essem			
<i>F. P.</i>	passus ero				

*Gerund*, patiendi, dō, etc. *Supine*, passum, ū.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

226. Blandior, *I flatter.*

## I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

blandior, blandiri, blanditus sum.

## II. MOODS AND TENSES.

<i>Pres.</i>	blandior	blandiār	blandirē	blandiri	blandiens.
<i>Imp.</i>	blandiēbar	blandirēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	blandiār		blandi- tōr	blanditurus es- sē	{ blanditurus blandiendus
<i>Perf.</i>	blanditus sum	blanditus sim		blanditus esse	blanditus.
<i>Plup.</i>	blanditus eram	blanditus es- sem			
<i>F. P.</i>	blanditus erō				

*Gerund*, blandiendi, dō, etc. *Supine*, blanditum, ū.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

227. The Latin has also two Periphrastic conjugations, formed respectively from the two regular future participles combined with the various tenses of the auxiliary *sum*.

228. The First or Active Periphrastic conjugation, compounded of the Future Active participle and *sum*, expresses an intended or future action or state: *amatūrus sum*, I am about to love; *monitūrus sum*, I am about to advise.

229. The Second or Passive Periphrastic conjugation, compounded of the Future Passive participle and *sum*, expresses necessity or duty: *amandus sum*, I must be loved.

## I. ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

230. *Amatūrus sum*, *I am about to love*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	āmātūrūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	āmātūrūs sim	āmātūrūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmātūrūs ērām	āmātūrūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	āmātūrūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fui	āmātūrūs fuērīm	āmātūrūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērām	āmātūrūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērō <sup>2</sup>		

## II. PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

231. *Amandus sum*, *I must be loved*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	āmandūs sūm	āmandūs sim	āmandūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmandūs ērām	āmandūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	āmandūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	āmandūs fui	āmandūs fuērīm	āmandūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	āmandūs fuērām	āmandūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	āmandūs fuērō		

232. The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum*: *amans est*, he is loving; *amatūrus est*, he is about to love; *amatus est*, he has been loved; *amandus est*, he is to be loved, or must be loved. But as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amans est* = *amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

233. The First Periphrastic conjugation may be formed from either transitive or intransitive verbs; the Second from transitive verbs only, except in an impersonal sense. See 301. 2.

<sup>1</sup> The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *amatūrus sum, es, est; amatūri sumus, estis, sunt*.

<sup>2</sup> Exceedingly rare.

## CONTRACTIONS AND PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

**234.** Perfects in **āvi, ēvi, īvi**, and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop **v** and suffer contraction before **s** and **r**. Thus

**A-I** and **a-e** become **ā**: *amavisti* (amaisti), *amasti*; *amavēram* (amae-ram), *amāram*; *amavisse* (amaisse), *amasse*.

**E-I** and **e-e** become **ē**: *nēvi* (to spin), *nevisti* (neisti), *nesti*; *nevērunt*, (neerunt), *nērunt*.

**I-I** becomes **I**: *audivisti* (audiisti), *audisti*; *audivissem* (audiissem), *audissem*.

1. Perfects in **īvi** sometimes drop **v** in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before **s**: *audīvi*, *audīi*, *audīit*, *audīēram*; *audīvisti*, *audīisti* or *audisti*.

2. Perfects in **ēvi**.—The perfect of *nosco*, to know, and *mōveo*, to move, sometimes drops **v** and suffers contraction before **r** and **s**: *novisti*, *nosti*.

3. Perfects in **īi** and **īi** sometimes drop **is**, **ise**, or **is**: *scripsisti*, *scripsiti*; *dixisse*, *dixē*; *accessisti*, *accestis*.

**235.** **ērē** for **ērunt**, as the ending of the third Pers. Pl. of the Perf. Ind. Act., is common in the historians.

The form in **ērē** does not drop **v**. In poetry **ērunt** occurs.

**236.** **Re** for **ris** in the ending of the second Pers. of the Pass. is rare in the Pres. Indic.

**237.** **Dic, duc, fac, and fer**, for *dice, dūce, fūce, and fēre*, are the Imperatives of *dico, duco, facio, and fero*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

1. *Dice, dūce, and fūce* occur in poetry.

2. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *facio* which change **a** into **i**: *confice*. But *dic* does not occur in compounds.

**238.** **Undus** and **undi** for *endus* and *endi* occur as the endings of the Fut. Pass. Part. and of the Gerund of Conj. III. and IV.: *dicundus* from *dico*, to say; *pōtiundus*, from *pōtior*, to obtain.

**239.** ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in

1. *ībam* for *ībam*, in the Imp. Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scībam* for *scībam*. See Imp. of *eo*, to go, 295.

2. *īdo, īdor*, for *iam, iar*, in the Fut. of Conj. IV.: *servīdo* for *serviam*; *opperīdor* for *opperiar*. See Fut. of *eo*, 295.

3. *im* for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *edim, edis*, etc., for *edam, as*, etc.; *duim* (from *duo*, for *do*), for *dem*.—In *sim, velim, nolim, mām* (204 and 293), *im* is the common ending.

4. *asso*, *esso*, and *so*, in the Fut. Perf., and *assim*, *essim*, and *sīm*, in the Perf. Subj. of Conj. I. II. III. : *fazo* (facso) for *fecēro* (from *facio*) ; *faxim* for *fecērim* ; *ausim*, for *ausus sīm* (for *ausērim*, from *audeo*). Rare examples are : *levasso* for *levavēro* ; *prohibeaso* for *prohibuēro* ; *capso* for *cepēro* ; *axo* for *egēro* ; *jusso* for *jussēro* ; *occisit* for *occiderit* ; *taxis* for *tetigēris*.

5. *to* and *mino* for *tor*, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular of the Fut. Imp. Pass. and Dep. : *arbitrāto*, *arbitramino* for *arbitrātor* ; *utunto* for *utuntor*.

6. *ier* for *i* in the Pres. Pass. Infin. : *amarier* for *amāri* ; *viderier* for *vidēri*.

## FORMATION OF THE VARIOUS PARTS OF THE VERB.

240. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that the Principal Parts are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings :<sup>1</sup>

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum.
II.	1. In a few verbs :			
	eo,	ēre,	ēvi,	ētum.
	2. In most verbs :			
	eo,	ēre,	ui,	ītum.
III.	1. In consonant stems :			
	o,	ēre,	si,	tum.
	2. In vowel stems :			
	o,	ēre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	ire,	ivi,	ītum.

### EXAMPLES.

I.	Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	to love.
II.	1. Deleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	to destroy.
	2. Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum,	to advise.
III.	1. Carpo,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
	2. Acuo,	acuēre,	acui,	acūtum,	to sharpen.
IV.	Audio,	audire,	audivi,	auditum,	to hear.

241. ENTIRE CONJUGATION.—Again, from an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that all the forms of any regular verb, through all the moods and tenses of both voices, arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems of forms :

<sup>1</sup> The forms in *ēvi* and *ētum* of Conj. II. do not occur in the paradigms given above, but belong to the regular forms of those conjugations. For a fuller statement of the formation of the *Principal Parts with Exceptions*, see 246-260.

I. The PRESENT SYSTEM, with the Present Indicative as its basis, comprises

1. The *Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.
2. The *Present and Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.
3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.
4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.
5. The *Present Active and Future Passive Participle*.
6. The *Gerund*.

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*,<sup>1</sup> found in the Present Indicative of the several conjugations, by dropping the endings—*o, eo, o, io*, of the Active, or—*or, eor, or, ior*, of the Passive: *amo*, present stem, AM; *moneo*, MON; *rego*, REG; *audio*, AUD.

II. The PERFECT SYSTEM, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active voice

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative*.
2. The *Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive*.
3. The *Perfect Infinitive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping *i*; *amāvi*, perfect stem AMAV; *monui*, MONU.

III. The SUPINE SYSTEM, with the Supine as its basis, comprises

1. The *Supines* in *um* and *u*, the former of which with *iri* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive*.
2. The *Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles*, the former of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System*.

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping *um*: *amātum*, supine stem, AMAT; *monitum*, MONIT.

242. TABLE OF VERBAL INFLECTIONS.—The following table of the four conjugations exhibits the regular formation of the various parts of the Latin verb by the union of the proper stems and endings.

---

<sup>1</sup> The Present Stem is always the same as the Verb-Stem. See 203.

# TABLE OF PRESENT SYSTEM.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT.

ām	-ō	-ās,	-āt;	-āmūs,	-ātīs,	-ant.
mōn	-ēō,	-ēs,	-ēt;	-ēmūs,	-ētīs,	-ent.
rēg	-ō	-īs,	-īt;	-īmūs,	-ītīs,	-unt.
aud	-iō,	-īs,	-īt;	-imūs,	-iīs,	-iunt.

#### IMPERFECT.

ām	-ābām,	-ābās,	-ābāt;	-ābāmūs,	-ābātīs,	-ābant.
mōn	-ēbām,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātīs,	-ēbant.
rēg	-ēbām,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātīs,	-ēbant.
aud	-iebām,	-iebās,	-iebāt;	-iebāmūs,	-iebātīs,	-iebant.

#### FUTURE.

ām	-abō,	-abīs,	-abīt;	-abīmūs,	-abitīs,	-abunt.
mōn	-ebō,	-ebīs,	-ebīt;	-ebīmūs,	-ebitīs,	-ebunt.
rēg	-ām,	-īs,	-īt;	-ēmūs,	-ētīs,	-ent.
aud	-iām,	-iīs,	-iīt;	-iemūs,	-ietīs,	-ient.

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### PRESENT.

ām	-ēm,	-ēs,	-ēt;	-ēmūs,	-ētīs,	-ent.
mōn	-eām,	-eās,	-eāt;	-eāmūs,	-eātīs,	-eant.
rēg	-ām,	-ās,	-āt;	-āmūs,	-ātīs,	-ant.
aud	-iām,	-iās,	-iāt;	-iāmūs,	-iātīs,	-iant.

#### IMPERFECT.

ām	-ārēm,	-ārēs,	-ārēt;	-ārēmūs,	-ārētīs,	-ārent.
mōn	-ērēm,	-ērēs,	-ērēt;	-ērēmūs,	-ērētīs,	-ērent.
rēg	-ērēm,	-ērēs,	-ērēt;	-ērēmūs,	-ērētīs,	-ērent.
aud	-irēm,	-irēs,	-irēt;	-irēmūs,	-irētīs,	-īrent.

### IMPERATIVE.

#### PRESENT.

#### FUTURE.

	SING.	PLUR.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ām	-ā,	-ātō;	-ātō,	-ātōtē,
mōn	-ē,	-ētō;	-ētō,	-ētōtē,
rēg	-ō,	-ītō;	-ītō,	-ītōtē,
aud	-ī,	-iītō;	-iītō,	-iītōtē,

#### PRES. INFINITIVE.

#### PARTICIPLE.

#### GERUND.

ām	-ārē;	-ans;	-andi.
mōn	-ērē;	-ens;	-endi.
rēg	-ōrē;	-ens;	-endi.
aud	-iirē;	-iens;	-iendi.

Verbs in *io* of Conj. III. have certain endings of Conj. IV. See 213.



# VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

## PRESENT SYSTEM.

### PASSIVE VOICE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT.

ăm	-ör,	-ăris or ärē,	-ătür;	-ămür,	-ămîni,	-antür.
mön	-eör,	-êris or êrē,	-etür;	-ëmür,	-ëmîni,	-entür.
ræg	-ör,	-êris or êrē,	-itür;	-imür,	-imîni,	-untür.
aud	-iör,	-îris or îrē,	-itür;	-imür,	-imîni,	-iuntür.

##### IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ăbăr,	-ăbăris or abărē,	-ăbatür;	-ăbămür,	-ăbămîni,	-ăbantür.
mön	-ebăr,	-ebăris or ebărē,	-ebätür;	-ebämür,	-ebämîni,	-ebantür.
ræg	-ebăr,	-ebăris or ebărē,	-ebätür;	-ebämür,	-ebämîni,	-ebantür.
aud	-iëbăr,	-iëbăris or iëbărē,	-iëbatür;	-iëbämür,	-iëbämîni,	-iëbantür.

##### FUTURE.

ăm	-ăbör,	-ăbêris or abërē,	-ăbütür;	-ăbümür,	-ăbümîni,	-ăbuntür.
mön	-ebör,	-ebêris or ebërē,	-ebütür;	-ebümür,	-ebümîni,	-ebuntür.
ræg	-är,	-êris or êrē,	-etür;	-ëmür,	-ëmîni,	-entür.
aud	-iär,	-iêris or iërē,	-ietür;	-iëmür,	-iëmîni,	-ientür.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE.

##### PRESENT.

ăm	-ër,	-êris or êrē,	-etür;	-ëmür,	-ëmîni,	-entür.
mön	-eär,	-ebăris or eärē,	-eätür;	-eämür,	-eämîni,	-eantür.
ræg	-är,	-ăris or ärē,	-ätür;	-ämür,	-ämîni,	-antür.
aud	-iär,	-iăris or iärē,	-iätür;	-iämür,	-iämîni,	-iantür.

##### IMPERFECT.

ăm	-ărēr,	-ărêris or arërē,	-ărëtür;	-ărēmür,	-ărēmîni,	-ărentür.
mön	-êrēr,	-êrêris or êrërē,	-êrëtür;	-êrēmür,	-êrēmîni,	-êrentür.
ræg	-êrēr,	-êrêris or êrërē,	-êrëtür;	-êrēmür,	-êrēmîni,	-êrentür.
aud	-îrēr,	-îrêris or îrërē,	-îrëtür;	-îrēmür,	-îrēmîni,	-îrentür.

#### IMPERATIVE.

##### PRESENT.

SING.	PLUR.
ăm -ărē,	-ămîni;
mön -erē,	-ëmîni;
ræg -êrē,	-imîni;
aud -îrē,	-imîni;

##### FUTURE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ătör, -ătör;	— antör.
-etör, -etör;	— entör.
-itör, -itör;	— untör.
-itör, -itör;	— iuntör.

##### PRES. INFINITIVE.

ăm	-ări;
mön	-eri;
ræg	-i;
aud	-iri;

##### FUT. PARTICIPLE.

-andüs.
-endüs.
-endüs.
-iendüs.

# TABLE OF PERFECT SYSTEM.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PERFECT.

āmāv mōnu rex audīv	-ī,	-istī,	-it;	-īmūs,	-istīs,	-ērunt, -ēre.
------------------------------	-----	--------	------	--------	---------	---------------

#### PLUPERFECT.

āmāv mōnu rex audīv	-ērām,	-ērās,	-ērāt;	-ērāmūs,	-ērātīs,	-erant.
------------------------------	--------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

#### FUTURE PERFECT.

āmāv mōnu rex audīv	-ērō,	-erīs,	-erit;	-erīmūs,	-erītīs,	-erint.
------------------------------	-------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### PERFECT.

āmāv mōnu rex audīv	-ērīm,	-erīs,	-erit;	-erīmūs,	-erītīs,	-erint.
------------------------------	--------	--------	--------	----------	----------	---------

#### PLUPERFECT.

āmāv mōnu rex audīv	-issēm,	-issēs,	-issēt;	-issēmūs,	-issētīs,	-issent.
------------------------------	---------	---------	---------	-----------	-----------	----------

#### INFINITIVE PERFECT.

āmāv mōnu rex audīv	-issē.
------------------------------	--------

### SUPINE SYSTEM.

INFINITIVE FUT.	PART. FUT.	SUPINE.
āmāt mōnīt rect audīt	-ūrūs essē.	-ūrūs.
		-ūm, -ū.

## VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

## SUPINE SYSTEM.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs <sup>1</sup>					
mōnīt	-ūs	sūm,	ēs,	est;	sūmūs,	estūs,
rect	-ūs					sunt.
audit	-ūs					

## PLUPERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mōnīt	-ūs	ērām,	ērās,	ērāt;	ērāmūs,	ērātūs,
rect	-ūs					ērant.
audit	-ūs					

## FUTURE PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mōnīt	-ūs	ērō,	erīs,	erīt;	erīmūs,	erītūs,
rect	-ūs					erunt.
audit	-ūs					

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mōnīt	-ūs	sīm,	sīs,	sīt;	sīmūs,	sītūs,
rect	-ūs					sint.
audit	-ūs					

## PLUPERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs					
mōnīt	-ūs	essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	essēmūs,	essētūs,
rect	-ūs					essent.
audit	-ūs					

## INFINITIVE PERFECT.

ămăt	-ūs	
mōnīt	-ūs	essē.
rect	-ūs	
audit	-ūs	

## INFINITIVE FUT.

## PART. PERF.

ămăt		
mōnīt	-ām irī.	-ūs.
rect		
audit		

<sup>1</sup> In the plural, -ūs becomes -i: -i sumus, etc.

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

243. The Four Conjugations, it will be seen from this table, differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System*.

244. But by a close analysis it will be found

1. That even these differences in a great measure disappear, and that the four conjugations become only varieties of one general system of conjugation.

2. That these varieties have been produced by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of endings.

245. According to this analysis

1. The stems in the four conjugations end in the following letters:

I.	II.	III.	IV.
a,	e,	consonant or u, <sup>1</sup>	i.

2. The general endings are

1) *For Principal Parts*:

o,                      ěre,                      si (i), vi,                      tum.

2) *For Other Parts*:—the endings given above for the third conjugation, but in the Future, *bo* and *bor* are regular endings as well as *am* and *ar*, and in the Infinitive Passive, *ěri* as well as *i*.

3. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems may be seen in the following

## COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

I.	{ <i>Ama-o</i> Amo, <sup>2</sup>	<i>ama-ěre</i> amāre,	<i>ama-vi</i> amāvi,	<i>ama-tum</i> amātum.
II.	{ <i>Mone-o</i> Moneo,	<i>mone-ěre</i> moněre,	{ <i>mone-vi</i> <i>mon-vi</i> monui,	<i>mone-tum</i> <sup>3</sup> <i>mon-tum</i> monitum. <sup>4</sup>
III.	{ <i>Reg-o</i> Rego,	<i>reg-ěre</i> regěre,	<i>reg-si</i> rexī,	<i>reg-tum</i> rectum.
IV.	{ <i>Audi-o</i> Audio,	<i>audi-ěre</i> audire,	<i>audi-vi</i> audīvi,	<i>audi-tum</i> auditum.

<sup>1</sup> Rarely o.

<sup>2</sup> By contraction: *ama-o* = *amo*.

<sup>3</sup> Like *deleo*, *delěre*, *delěvi*, *delětum*. See 240. II.

<sup>4</sup> For changes see 247. 1.

PRESENT SYSTEM.—*Active Voice.*<sup>1</sup>

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
1.	<i>ama-o</i> amo	<i>mone-o</i> moneo	<i>reg-o</i> rego	<i>audi-o</i> audio
2.	<i>ama-is</i> amās	<i>mone-is</i> monēs	<i>reg-is</i> regis	<i>audi-is</i> audis
3.	<i>ama-it</i> amat	<i>mone-it</i> monet	<i>reg-it</i> regit	<i>audi-it</i> audit
1.	<i>ama-īmus</i> amāmus	<i>mone-īmus</i> monēmus	<i>reg-īmus</i> regīmus	<i>audi-īmus</i> audimur
2.	<i>ama-itis</i> amātis	<i>mone-itis</i> monētis	<i>reg-itis</i> regitis	<i>audi-itis</i> auditis
3.	<i>ama-unt</i> amant.	<i>mone-unt</i> monent.	<i>reg-unt</i> regunt.	<i>audi-unt</i> audiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

<i>ama-ēbam</i> amābam.	<i>mone-ēbam</i> monēbam.	<i>reg-ēbam</i> regēbam.	<i>audi-ēbam</i> audiēbam.
----------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------

## FUTURE.

<i>ama-ebo</i> amābo.	<i>mone-ebo</i> monēbo.	<i>reg-am</i> regam.	<i>audi-am</i> audiam.
--------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

<i>ama-am</i> amem. <sup>2</sup>	<i>mone-am</i> moneam.	<i>reg-am</i> regam.	<i>audi-am</i> audiam.
-------------------------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------

## IMPERFECT.

<i>ama-ērem</i> amārem	<i>mone-ērem</i> monērem.	<i>reg-ērem</i> regērem.	<i>audi-ērem</i> audiērem.
---------------------------	------------------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------------------

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

S.	<i>ama-e</i> ama	<i>mone-e</i> mone	<i>reg-e</i> rego	<i>audi-e</i> audi
P.	<i>ama-ite</i> amāte.	<i>mone-ite</i> monēte.	<i>reg-ite</i> regite.	<i>audi-ite</i> audite.

<sup>1</sup> The Passive has the same changes as the Active: *ama-or* = *amor*; *ama-ēris* = *amāris*; *mone-ēris* = *monēris*; *audi-ēris* = *audiēris*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> A changed to e, so throughout; *ama-as* = *ames*, etc.

## FUTURE.

2 S.	{ ama-ŭto amāto	{ mone-ŭto monēto	{ reg-ito regito	{ audi-ŭto audito
3 S.	{ ama-ŭto amāto	{ mone-ŭto monēto	{ reg-ŭto regito	{ audi-ŭto audito
2 P.	{ ama-ŭtote amatōte	{ mone-ŭtote monētōte	{ reg-ŭtote regitōte	{ audi-ŭtote auditōte
3 P.	{ ama-unto amanto.	{ mone-unto monento.	{ reg-unto regunto.	{ audi-unto audiunto.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

ama-ĕre amāre.	{ mone-ĕre monēre.	{ reg-ĕre regĕre.	{ audi-ĕre audire.
-------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	-----------------------

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

ama-ens amans.	{ mone-ens monens.	{ reg-ens regens.	{ audi-ens audiens.
-------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	------------------------

## GERUND.

ama-endi amandi.	{ mone-endi monendi.	{ reg-endi regendi.	{ audi-endi audiendi.
---------------------	-------------------------	------------------------	--------------------------

## FORMATION OF PRINCIPAL PARTS.

246. The general rule for obtaining these forms has already been given (240), but as they are the basis of all verbal inflections, a fuller treatment of the subject is desirable. We notice

*I. Regular Formations.**II. Irregular Formations.*

## I. REGULAR FORMATIONS.

247. The Principal Parts of verbs in the four conjugations are formed with the following endings: <sup>1</sup>

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	atum.
II.	1. In a few verbs :			
	eo,	ēre,	ēvi,	etum.
	2. In most verbs :			
	eo,	ēre,	ui,	itum.
III.	1. In consonant stems :			
	o,	ĕre,	si,	tum.
	2. In vowel stems :			
	o,	ĕre,	i,	tum.
IV.	io,	ire,	ivi,	itum.

<sup>1</sup> For examples, see 240.

1. The ENDINGS *ui* and *itum* are only shortened forms of *ivi* and *itum*: thus the full forms in *moneo* would be, *monēvi*, *monētum*; by dropping *e*, we have *monvi*, *montum*; but to facilitate pronunciation, the consonant *v* after *n* is changed into its corresponding vowel *u*; *monui* (for *monvi*), and the two successive consonants in *montum* are separated by a short *i*; *monitum* (for *montum*).

2. ANALYSIS OF ENDINGS.—If we analyze the endings of the Perfect, we shall find that the final *i* is the ending of the first person, the preceding *v* the tense-sign of the Perfect, and the preceding vowel the characteristic of the conjugation. In the ending *si*, *s* is the tense-sign, while in the ending *i* the tense-sign is wanting.

3. The SUPINE ENDING is properly *tum* (245. 2), as the preceding vowels, *a*, *e*, and *i*, are the characteristics of the conjugation, and *t* in Conj. III. is the connecting vowel. Practically, however, it is more convenient and simple to treat these vowels as a part of the endings.

### *Euphonic Changes in the Regular Formation.*

248. Before *si* and *tum* in the Principal Parts of the Third Conjugation, certain euphonic changes take place.

#### I. BEFORE **si** OF THE PERFECT.

1. A **k-sound** (*c*, *g*, *qu*) or **h**<sup>1</sup> generally<sup>2</sup> unites with the *s* and forms *x*:<sup>3</sup> *dūco*, *duxi* (ducsi); *rēgo*, *rexi* (regsi); *cōquo*, *coxi* (coqusi); *trāho*, *traxi* (trahsi).

2. A **t-sound** (*d*, *t*) is generally dropped: <sup>4</sup> *claudo*, *clausi* (claudsi); *mitto*, *mihi* (mittsi).

3. **B** is changed to *p*: *scribo*, *scripsi* (scribsi).

4. **M** is sometimes assimilated and sometimes strengthened with *p*: *prēmo*, *pressi* (premsi); *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi).

5. **R** is sometimes assimilated: *gēro*, *gessi* (gersi).

#### II. BEFORE **tum** OF THE SUPINE.

1. A **k-sound** (*c*, *g*, *qu*) or **h**<sup>5</sup> becomes *c*: *rēgo*, *rectum* (regtum); *cōquo*, *coctum* (coqutum); *trāho*, *tractum* (trahtum).

2. **B** becomes *p*, as in the perfect: *scribo*, *scriptum* (scribtum).

3. **M** is strengthened with *p*: <sup>6</sup> *sūmo*, *sumptum* (sumtum).

4. **N** is often dropped: *vinco*, *victum* (vinctum).

5. **R** sometimes becomes *s*: *gēro*, *gestum* (gertum).

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes also *gu* or *v*: *extinguo*, *extinxi*; *vivo*, *vixi*.

<sup>2</sup> But *is* is sometimes dropped: *mergo*, *merxi* (for *mergsi*, *merxi*): *parco*, *parxi*.

<sup>3</sup> *Fluo*, *fluxi*, and *struo*, *struxi*, form their perfects in *xi* as if from a stem in a *k-sound*.

<sup>4</sup> Sometimes assimilated: *cedo*, *cessi* (cedsi).

<sup>5</sup> Sometimes also *gu* or *v*: *extinguo*, *extinctum*; *vivo*, *victum*. But *v* is often changed into its corresponding vowel *u*: *solvo*, *solutum* (solvtum).

<sup>6</sup> But dropped in *rumpo*, *ruptum* (rumpum).

## II. IRREGULAR FORMATIONS.

### I. Present Indicative.

249. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **io, ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. These are

1. The following with their compounds:

*Cāpio*, to take; *cūpio*, to desire; *fācio*, to make; *fōdio*, to dig; *fūgio*, to flee; *jācio*, to throw; *pārio*, to bear; <sup>1</sup> *quātio*, to shake; *rāpio*, to seize; *sāpio*, to be wise.

2. The compounds of the obsolete *lācio*, to entice, and *spēcio*, to look; *allicio*, *elicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*, etc.; *aspicio*, *conspicio*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs: *grādior*, to go; *mōrior*, to die; *pātior*, to suffer.

### II. Present Infinitive.

250. *Do, dāre*, to give, is irregular in having *āre*, instead of *ēre*.

### III. Perfect Indicative Active.

251. The Perfect presents three distinct Irregularities.

252. **First Irregularity.**—*Formation after the Analogy of other conjugations.*—A few verbs in each conjugation form the Perfect according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations:

<i>Sōno</i> ,	<i>sonāre</i> ,	<i>sonui</i> (2d),	<i>to sound.</i>
<i>Angeo</i> ,	<i>augēre</i> ,	<i>auxi</i> ( <i>augsi</i> , 3d),	<i>to increase.</i>
<i>Pēto</i> ,	<i>petēre</i> ,	<i>petivi</i> (4th),	<i>to seek.</i>
<i>Vincio</i> ,	<i>vincire</i> ,	<i>vinxi</i> ( <i>vincsi</i> , 3d),	<i>to bind.</i>

1. **EXPLANATION.**—*Sōno*, it will be observed, though a verb of the first conjugation, forms its perfect in *ui*, after the analogy of the second; *augeo*, of the second, forms its perfect in *si* (*xi* = *gsi*) after the analogy of the third; *pēto*, of the third; follows the analogy of the fourth, and *vincio*, of the fourth, the analogy of the third. Strictly speaking, such verbs are partly of one conjugation and partly of another, but they are generally classed with the conjugation to which the infinitive belongs.

2. In the **FIRST CONJUGATION**, a few verbs <sup>2</sup> follow the analogy of the **SECOND**: *dōmo*, *domāre*, *domui*, to tame.

3. In the **SECOND**, a few <sup>2</sup> follow the analogy of the **THIRD**: *augeo*, *augēre*, *auxi* (*augsi*), to increase.

<sup>1</sup> Compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

<sup>2</sup> For lists, see under *Classification of Verbs*, 261, sqq.



4. In the THIRD, a few follow the analogy of the FIRST, SECOND, or FOURTH: *sterno, sternère, strāvi* (1), to strew; *frēno, frēmère, fremui* (2), to rage; *pēto, petère, petīvi* (4), to seek.

5. In the FOURTH, a few follow the analogy of the SECOND or THIRD: *āperio, aperire, aperui* (2), to open; *vincio, vincere, vinzi* (3), to bind.

**253. Second Irregularity.—Stem-vowel lengthened.**—A few verbs in each conjugation form the Perfect in **i**, but lengthen the stem-vowel:

Jūvo,	jūvāre,	jūvi,	to assist.
Vīdeo,	vidēre,	vidi,	to see.
Edo,	ēdere,	ēdi,	to eat.
Vēnio,	venire,	vēni,	to come.

1. VOWEL CHANGED.—The stem-vowels *ā* and (in compounds) *i* often become *ē*: *fācio, fēci*, to make; *efficio, effeci*, to effect.

2. *M* OR *N* DROPPED.—The liquid *m* or *n* is dropped before the final mute of the stem: *rumpo, rūpi* (for *rumpi*), to break; *vinco, vici* (for *vinci*), to conquer.

**254. Third Irregularity.—Reduplication.**—A few verbs of the First, Second, and Third conjugations form the Perfect in **i**, but reduplicate the stem:

Do,	dāre,	dēdi,	to give.
Mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	to bite.
Curro,	currere,	cūcurri,	to run.

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*,—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples above.

2. VOWEL CHANGED.—The stem-vowel is often changed: *cado, cēcidi* (for *cecidi*), to fall.

3. *M* OR *N* DROPPED.—The liquid *m* or *n* is often dropped before the final mute of the stem: *pungo, pūpūgi* (*pūpungi*), to prick; *tundo, tūtūdi*, to beat.

4. REDUPLICATION WITH *Sp* OR *St*.—In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeo, spēpondi* (for *spospondi*), to promise; *sto, stēti* (for *stesti*), to stand.

5. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, to give; *sto*, to stand; *disco*, to learn; *posco*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*, to run; *re-spondeo, respondi* (redup. dropped), to answer; *circum-do, circum-dēdi* (redup. retained); *circum-sto, circum-stēti*, to encircle. The compounds of *do* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *i*: *ad-do, ad-dīdi* (for *ad-dēdi*), to add.

#### IV. Supine.

**255.** The Supine presents two principal Irregularities.

**256. First Irregularity.—Formation after the Analogy of other conjugations.**—A few verbs in each conjugation

form the Supine according to the *analogy* of one or more of the other conjugations :

Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum (2d),	to sound.
Angeo,	angere,	auxi,	auctum (3d),	to increase.
Pēto,	petere,	petivi,	petitum (4th),	to seek.
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinctum (3d),	to bind.

1. In the FIRST CONJUGATION, a few verbs<sup>1</sup> follow the analogy of the SECOND or THIRD: *dōmo, domāre, domui, domitum* (2d), to tame; *secō, secāre, secui* (2d), *sectum* (3d), to cut.

2. In the SECOND, a few follow the analogy of the THIRD: *augeo, augere, auxi, auctum*, to increase.

3. In the THIRD, a few follow the analogy of the SECOND or FOURTH: *frēmo, frēmere, fremui, fremitum* (2d), to rage; *cūpio, cupere, cupivi, cupitum* (4th), to desire.

4. In the FOURTH, a few follow the analogy of the THIRD: *vēnio, venire, vēni, ventum*, to come.

**257. Second Irregularity.—Ending Sum.**—Some verbs of the Second conjugation, many in the Third, and a very few in the Fourth form the Supine in *sum* :

Mūneo,	manere,	mansi,	mansum,	to remain.
Claudo,	claudere,	clausi,	clausum,	to close.
Sentio,	sentire,	sensi,	sensum,	to perceive.

1. EUPHONIC CHANGES are the same in supines in *sum* as in perfects in *si* (248. I.): *claudio, clausi, clausum* (248. I. 2); *mergo, mersi, mersum* (248. I. 1), to merge; *flecto, flexi* (for *flectsi*, for *flectsi*, 248. I. 1 and 2), *flexum* (for *flectsum*, for *flectsum*, 248. I. 1 and 2), to turn.

2. In the FOURTH CONJUGATION, only *raucio*, to be hoarse, and *sentio*, to perceive, with its compounds, have *sum*.

**258.** The several modes above described for the formation of the Perfect and Supine may be presented for convenience of reference in the following table :

#### FORMATION OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE.

##### I. PERFECT.

###### 1. REGULAR PERFECT.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
āvl.	ēvl. ui.	si. i.	ivl.

###### 2. IRREGULAR PERFECT.

###### First Irregularity.

analogy of Conj. II.	analogy of Conj. III.	analogy of Conj. I., II. or IV.	analogy of Conj. II. or III.
-------------------------	--------------------------	------------------------------------	---------------------------------

<sup>1</sup> For lists, see under *Classification of Verbs*, 261, sqq.

*Second Irregularity.*

Conj. I. stem-vowel lengthened.	Conj. II. stem-vowel lengthened.	Conj. III. stem-vowel lengthened (and often changed).	Conj. IV. stem-vowel lengthened.
---------------------------------------	--	--	--

*Third Irregularity.*

reduplication.	reduplication.	reduplication.
----------------	----------------	----------------

II. SUPINE.

1. REGULAR SUPINE.

ātum.	ētum. ītum.	tum.	itum.
-------	----------------	------	-------

2. IRREGULAR SUPINE.

*First Irregularity.*

analogy of Conj. II. or III.	analogy of Conj. III.	analogy of Conj. II. or IV.	analogy of Conj. III.
---------------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------

*Second Irregularity.*

sum.	sum.	sum.
------	------	------

PRINCIPAL PARTS IN COMPOUND VERBS.

259. I. Compound verbs generally form their principal parts like simple verbs :

Mōneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum,	to advise.
Ad-mōneo,	admonēre,	admonui,	admonitum,	to admonish.

260. II. But compounds of verbs with dissyllabic supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts :

1. *When the Present of the compound has i for e of the simple verb :*

1) The Perfect and Supine generally resume the e :

Rēgo,	regēre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Di-rigo,	dirigēre,	direxī,	directum,	to direct.

2) But sometimes only the Supine resumes the e :

Tēneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	to hold.
De-tēneo,	detinēre,	detinui,	detentum,	to detain.

2. *When the Present of the compound has i for a of the simple verb :*

1) The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect and the supine takes e :

Cāpio,	capēre,	cēpi,	captum,	to take.
Ac-cīpio,	accipēre,	accēpi,	acceptum,	to accept.

2) But sometimes the Perfect retains **i** and the Supine takes **e** :

Răpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	to seize.
Di-ripio,	diripĕre,	diripui,	direptum,	to tear asunder.

For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 254. 5; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

## CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS

### *According to the Perfect-Formation.*<sup>1</sup>

#### FIRST CONJUGATION.

##### CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

#### 261. Principal Parts in : **o, āre, āvi, ātum.**

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation : the following are examples :

Amo,	āmāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	to love.
Cūro,	curāre,	curāvi,	curātum,	to care for.
Dōno,	donāre,	donāvi,	donātum,	to bestow.
Hābito,	habitāre,	habitāvi,	habitātum,	to dwell.
Hōnōro,	honorāre,	honorāvi,	honorātum,	to honor.
Libĕro,	liberāre,	liberāvi,	liberātum,	to free.
Nōmīno,	nomināre,	nomināvi,	nominātum,	to name.
Pugno,	pugnāre,	pugnāvi,	pugnātum,	to fight.
Sperō,	sperāre,	sperāvi,	sperātum,	to hope.
Vōco,	vocāre,	vocāvi,	vocātum,	to call.

##### CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.<sup>2</sup>—*Three Irregularities.*

262. **First Irregularity.**—*Perfect (and generally Supine) after the Analogy of the Second Conjugation.*

Principal Parts in : **o, āre, ui, ĭtum** (generally).

Crepo,	crepāre,	crepui,	crepĭtum,	to creak.
<i>Increpo, āre, ui (āvi), ĭtum, (ātum); discrepo, āre, ui (āvi) —.</i>				
Cūbo,	cubāre,	cubui,	cubĭtum,	to recline. <sup>3</sup>
Dōmo,	domāre,	domui,	domĭtum,	to tame.
Enĕco,	enecāre,	enēcui,	enectum,	to kill. <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Perfect-Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation.

<sup>2</sup> The lists contain all the simple verbs which belong to this class and such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

<sup>3</sup> Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbo*, etc., are of Conj. III. See 276. II. 1.

<sup>4</sup> The simple *neco* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *avi* and *atum* occur.

Fricō,	fricāre,	fricui,	{ frictum, fricatūm,	to rub.
Mico,	micāre,	micui,		to glitter.

*Dimico, āre, āvi (ui), ātum; emico, āre, ui, ātum.*

Plico,	plicāre,	{ plicui, plicāvi,	{ plicitum, plicatūm,	to fold.
--------	----------	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------

*Duplico, multiplico, replico, and supplico are regular: āre, āvi, ātum.*

Sēco,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	to cut.
-------	---------	--------	---------	---------

Participle, *secatūrus*.

Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum,	to sound.
-------	---------	--------	----------	-----------

Participle, *sonatūrus*. Most compounds want Sup. *Resōno* has Perf. *resonāvi*.

Tōno,	tonāre,	tonui,	(tonitum),	to thunder.
Vēto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetitum,	to forbid.

1. *Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum*, to drink, has also *pōtum* in the supine.

2. The Passive Participles *coenātus* and *jurātus* (*coeno*, to dine, and *jūro*, to swear) are active in signification, *having dined*, etc. *Pōtus*, from *pōto*, is also sometime active.

## 263. Second Irregularity.—Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.

Principal Parts in : **o, āre, i, -tum.**

Jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jutum,	to assist.
-------	---------	-------	--------	------------

Participle *juvatūrus*, but in compounds *jutūrus* is also used.

Lāvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	{ lautum, lotum, lavātum,	to wash.
-------	---------	-------	---------------------------------	----------

In poetry this is sometimes of Conj. III: *lāvo, lavere, lāvi*, etc.

## 264. Third Irregularity.—Perfect Reduplicated.

Principal Parts in : **o, āre, i, tum.**

Do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	to give.
Sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	to stand.

1. In *do* the characteristic is short by exception: *dābam, dābo, dārem*, etc. Four compounds of *do*, *circumdō, pessumdō, satidō* and *venumdō*, are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are dissyllabic and of the third Conj. (280).

2. Compounds of *sto* are conjugated like the simple verb, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise they take *stēti* for *stēti*: *adsto, adstāre, adstēti, adstātum*. *Disto* wants Perf. and Sup.

## 265. DEPONENT VERBS. •

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular.  
Thus,

Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus sum,	to endeavor.
Hortor,	hortāri,	hortātus sum,	to exhort.
Mīror,	mirāri,	mirātus sum,	to admire.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

266. Principal Parts in : { I. eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.<sup>1</sup>  
 II. eo, ēre, ui, itum.  
 III. eo, ēre, ui, tum or sum.

## I. eo, ēre, ēvi, ētum.

These endings belong to the following verbs :

Compleo, complēre, complēvi, completum, to fill.

So other compounds of *pleo* ; as *expleo*, *impleo*.

Dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	to destroy.
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	to weep.
Neo,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	to spin.

1. *Abōleo*, *abolēre*, *abolēvi*, *abolitum*, to destroy, is compounded of *ab* and *oleo* (not used). The other compounds of *oleo* generally end in *esco*, and are of the third conjugation. See *abōlesco*, 276. II. 1.

2. *Vico*, *viēre*, *viētum*, to weave, bend, is rare, except in the participle *viētus*.

## II. eo, ēre, ui, itum.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples :

Cāreo,	carēre,	carui,	caritum,	to be without.
Dēbo,	debēre,	debui,	debitum,	to owe.
Hābeo,	habēre,	habui,	habitum,	to have.
Mōneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum,	to advise.
Nōceo,	nocēre,	nocui,	nocitum,	to hurt.
Parco,	parēre,	parui,	paritum,	to obey.
Plāceo,	placēre,	placui,	placitum,	to please.
Tāceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacitum,	to be silent.

## III. eo, ēre, ui, tum or sum.

These endings, slightly irregular in the Supine, belong to the following verbs :

Censeo, censēre, censui, censum, to think.

Perf. Part. *census* and *censitus*.—*Per censeo* wants Sup. ; *recenseo* has *recensum* and *recensitum*.

Dōceo, docēre, docui, doctum, to teach.

Misceo, miscēre, miscui, { mistum, to mix.

Tēneo, tenēre, tenui, { mixtum, to hold.

*Detīneo*, *ēre*, *ui*, *detentum* ; so *obtīneo* and *retīneo* ; other compounds seldom have Sup.

Torreo, torrēre, torrui, tostum, to roast.

<sup>1</sup> We class *ēvi* and *itum*, though belonging to but few verbs, with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *itum* are derived. See 247. 1.

**267. SUPINE WANTING.**—Many verbs, regular in the Perfect, want the Supine: the following are the most important:

Aceo, <i>to be sour.</i>	Mādeo, <i>to be wet.</i>	Sordeo, <i>to be sordid.</i>
Calleo, <i>to be skilled.</i>	Niteo, <i>to shine.</i>	Splendeo, <i>to shine.</i>
Candeo, <i>to shine.</i>	Oleo, <i>to smell.</i>	Stūdeo, <i>to study.</i>
Egeo, <i>to want.</i>	Palleo, <i>to be pale.</i>	Stūpeo, <i>to be amazed</i>
Emīneo, <i>to stand forth.</i>	Pāteo, <i>to be open.</i>	Tīmeo, <i>to fear.</i>
Flōreo, <i>to bloom.</i>	Rīgeo, <i>to be stiff.</i>	Torpeo, <i>to be torpid.</i>
Frondeo, <i>to bear leaves.</i>	Rūbeo, <i>to be red.</i>	Tūmeo, <i>to swell.</i>
Horreo, <i>to shudder.</i>	Sīleo, <i>to be silent.</i>	Vīgeo, <i>to flourish.</i>
Lāteo, <i>to be hid.</i>	Sorbeo, <i>to swallow.</i>	Vīreo, <i>to be green.</i>

**268. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.**—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine: the following are the most important:

Albeo, <i>to be white.</i>	Hēbeo, <i>to be blunt.</i>	Polleo, <i>to be powerful.</i>
Aveo, <i>to covet.</i>	Hūmeo, <i>to be moist.</i>	Renīdeo, <i>to shine.</i>
Calveo, <i>to be bald.</i>	Immīneo, <i>to threaten.</i>	Scāteo, <i>to gush forth.</i>
Cāneo, <i>to be gray.</i>	Lacteo, <i>to suck.</i>	Squāleo, <i>to be filthy.</i>
Flāveo, <i>to be yellow.</i>	Līveo, <i>to be livid.</i>	Vēgeo, <i>to be lively.</i>
Foeteo, <i>to be fetid.</i>	Maereo, <i>to be sad.</i>	

**CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.**—*Three Irregularities.*

**269. First Irregularity.**—Perfect in *si* (rarely *i*) after the Analogy of the Third Conjugation:

Principal Parts in: *eo, ēre, si (i), tum or sum.*

Algeo,	algēre,	alsi,	—	<i>to be cold.</i>
Ardeo,	ardēre,	arsi,	arsum,	<i>to burn.</i>
Augeo,	augēre,	auxi ( <i>gsi</i> ),	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
Connīveo,	connivēre.	{ connīvi,	—	<i>to wink at.</i>
		{ connixi,		
Ferveo,	fervēre,	{ fervi,		<i>to boil.</i>
		{ ferbui,		
Frīgeo,	frigēre,	frixi ( <i>rare</i> ),	—	<i>to be cold.</i>
Fulgeo,	fulgēre,	fulsi,	—	<i>to shine.</i>

Poetic *fulgo, fulgēre*, etc.

Haereo,	haerēre,	haesi,	haesum,	<i>to stick.</i>
Indulgeo,	indulgēre,	indulsi,	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Jūbeo,	jubēre,	jussi,	jussum,	<i>to order.</i>
Languéo,	languēre,	langui,	—	<i>to be languid.</i>
Līqueo,	liqūere,	liqui ( <i>licui</i> ),	—	<i>to be liquid.</i>
Lūceo,	lucēre,	luxi,	—	<i>to shine.</i>
Lūgeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	—	<i>to mourn.</i>
Māneo,	manēre,	mansi,	mansum,	<i>to remain.</i>
Mulceo,	mulcēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to caress.</i>

Compounds have *mulsum* or *mulctum*.

Mulgeo,	mulgēre,	mulsi,	mulsum,	<i>to milk.</i>
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>to dine.</i>

Participle, *pransus*, in an active sense, *having dined*.

Rideo,	ridēre,	rīsi,	rīsum,	to laugh.
Strideo,	stridēre,	strīdi,	—	to creak.
Suādeo,	suadēre,	suāsi,	suasum,	to advise.
Tergeo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe.

*Tergo*, of Conj. III., also occurs: *tergo, ēre, si, sum*.

Torqueo,	torquēre,	torsi,	tortum,	to twist.
Turgeo,	turgēre,	tursi (rare),	—	to swell.
Urgeo (urgueo)	urgēre,	ursi,	—	to press.

1. *Cio*, *cīre*, *cīvi*, *cītum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *cio*, *cīre*, *cīvi*, *cītum*, from which it seems to have obtained its perfect. In compounds the forms of the fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call, call forth*.

2. For *Euphonic Changes* before *si* in the Perfect, see 248. I.

## 270. Second Irregularity.—Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.

Principal Parts in : **eo, ēre, i, tum (sum)**.

Cāveo,	cavēre,	cāvi,	cautum,	to beware.
Fāveo,	favēre,	fāvi,	fautum,	to favor.
Fōveo,	fovēre,	fōvi,	fōtum,	to cherish.
Mōveo,	movēre,	mōvi,	mōtum,	to move.
Pāveo,	pavēre,	pāvi,	—	to fear.
Sēdeo,	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	to sit.

So *circumsēdeo* and *supersēdeo*. Other compounds thus: *assēdeo, ēre, assēdi, assesum*; but *dissēdeo, praesēdeo*, and *resēdeo* want *Supine*.

Vīdeo,	vidēre,	vīdi,	vīsum,	to see.
Vōveo,	vovēre,	vōvi,	vōtum,	to vow.

## 271. Third Irregularity.—Perfect Reduplicated.

Principal Parts in : **eo, ēre, i, sum**.

Mordeo,	mordēre,	mōmordi,	morsum,	to bite.
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pēpendi,	pensum,	to hang.
Spondeo,	spondēre,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	to promise.
Tondeo,	tondēre,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	to shear.

For *reduplication in compounds*, see 254. 5.

## 272. DEPONENT VERBS.

### 1. Regular.

Līceor,	licēri,	licītus sum,	to bid.
Mēreor,	merēri,	merītus sum,	to deserve.
Polliceor,	pollicēri,	pollicītus sum,	to promise.
Tueor,	tuēri,	tuitus sum,	to protect.
Vēreor,	verēri,	verītus sum,	to fear.

### 2. Irregular.

Fāteor,	fatēri,	fassus sum,	to confess. <sup>1</sup>
Mēdeor,	medēri,	—	to cure.

<sup>1</sup> Confiteor, ēri, confessus; so profiteor



Misereor,	miserēri,	{ miserītus sum,	to pity.
Reor,	rēri,	{ misertus sum,	to think.
		{ rātus sum,	

3. *Semi-Deponent*.—Deponent in the Perfect.

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	to dare.
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavisus sum,	to rejoice.
Sōleo,	solēre,	solitus sum,	to be accustomed.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION IN THE PERFECT.

273. Principal Parts in:	I. o (io),	ēre, si,	tum.
	II. o,	ēre, i,	tum.
	III. o,	ēre, si or i,	sum.

I. o (io), ēre, si, tum.

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant; the following are examples:<sup>1</sup>

Carmo,	carpēre,	carpsi,	carptum,	to pluck.
Cingo,	cingēre,	cinxī (gxi),	cinctum,	to gird.
Cōmo,	comēre,	compsi,	comptum,	to adorn.
Dēmo,	demēre,	dempsi,	demptum,	to take away.
Dico,	dicēre,	dixi,	dictum,	to say.
Dūco,	ducēre,	duxi,	ductum,	to lead.
Fingo,	figēre,	finxi,	fictum,	to feign.
Gēro,	gerēre,	gessi,	gestum,	to carry.
Nūbo,	nubēre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	to marry.
Pingo,	pingēre,	pinxi,	pictum,	to paint.
Prōmo,	promēre,	prompsi,	promptum,	to bring out.
Rēgo,	regēre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Scalpo,	scalpēre,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	to engrave.
Sūmo,	sumēre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	to take.
Trāho,	trahēre,	traxi,	tractum,	to draw.
Uro,	urēre,	ussi,	ustum,	to burn.
Vēho,	vehēre,	vexi,	vectum,	to carry.
Vivo,	vivēre,	vixi,	victum,	to live.

1. *Change of Stem-Vowel in Compounds*; see 260.

*Carpo*: de-cerpo, decerpēre, decerpsi, decerptum, to pluck off.

*Rēgo*: di-rigo, dirigēre, direxi, directum (260. I.), to direct.

Here *decerpo*, though it has not the same stem-vowel as the simple *carpo*, forms its principal parts precisely like the simple verb; but *dirigo* changes the stem-vowel in forming those parts, having *i* in the Pres. and *e* in the Perf. and Sup.

2. *Compounds of Obsolete Simple Verbs* present the same vowel changes:

*Lācio* (obs.): al-līcio, allicēre, allexi, allectum (260. II.), to allure.

So *illicio*, *pellicio*. For *elicio*, see 276. II.

*Spēcio* (obs.): a-apīcio, aspīcēre, aspexi, aspectum, to look at.

<sup>1</sup> For *Euphonic Changes*, see 248.

## II. o, ěre, i, tum

These are the regular endings of verbs whose stems end in *u*; the following are examples:

Acuo,	ăcuěre,	acui,	acŭtum,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	arguěre,	argui,	argŭtum,	to convict.

*Coarguo* and *redarguo* want the Supine.

Imbuo,	imbuěre,	imbui,	imbŭtum,	to imbue.
Minuo,	minuěre,	minui,	minŭtum,	to diminish.
Ruo,	ruěre,	ruĭ,	rŭtum,	to fall.

Part. *ruĭtŭrus*.—*Corruo* and *irruo* want Sup.

Stătuo,	statuěre,	stătui,	statŭtum,	to place.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	-----------

Compounds change *a* into *i*: *constituo*.

Tribuo,	tribuěre,	tribui,	tribŭtum,	to impart.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	------------

1. *Perfect xi*.—The following in *uo* form the Perf. in *xi*.

Cōquo,	coquěre,	coxi,	coctum,	to cook.
Exstinguo,	exstinguěre,	exstinxi,	exstinctum,	to extinguish.

So other compounds of *stinguo* (rare): *distinguo*, etc.

Fluo,	fluěre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Struo,	struěre,	struxi,	structum,	to build.

2. *Like verbs in uo* are the following:

Ico,	icěre,	ici,	ictum,	to strike.
Solvo,	solvěre,	solvi,	solŭtum, <sup>1</sup>	to loose.
Volvo,	volvěre,	volvi,	volŭtum, <sup>1</sup>	to roll.

III. o, ěre, si or i, sum.<sup>2</sup>

These endings, slightly irregular in the Supine, belong to the following verbs:

Accendo,	accenděre,	accendi,	accensum,	to kindle.
----------	------------	----------	-----------	------------

So other compounds of *cando* (obsolete): *incendo*, *succendo*.

Cĕdo,	ceděre,	cessi,	cessum,	to yield.
Claudo,	clauděre,	clausi,	clausum,	to close.

Compounds have *u* for *au*: *conclŭdo*, *exclŭdo*.

Cŭdo,	cuděre,	cŭdi,	cŭsum,	to forge.
Defendo,	defenděre,	defendi,	defensum,	to defend.

So other compounds of *fendo* (obsolete): *offendo*, etc.

Divĭdo,	dividěre,	divisi,	divisum,	to divide.
Evādo,	evaděre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	to evade.

So other compounds of *vado*, 275.

Figo,	figěre,	fixi,	fixum,	to fasten.
Findo,	finděre,	fīdi (findi),	fissum,	to part.
Flecto,	flectěre,	flexi,	flexum,	to bend.

<sup>1</sup> *V* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u*: *volŭtum* for *volvetum*.

<sup>2</sup> For euphonic changes before *sum*, see 257. 1.

Fluo,	fluëre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Frende,	frendëre,	—	{ frësum,	to gnash.
Laedo,	laedëre,	laesi,	{ fressum,	
			laesum,	to hurt.

Compounds have *i* for *ae*: *illüdo*, etc.

Lüdo,	lüdëre,	lûsi,	lûsum,	to play.
Mando,	mandëre,	mandi,	mansum,	to chew.
Mergo,	mergëre,	mersi,	mersum,	to dip.
Mitto,	mittëre,	mîsi,	missum,	to send.
Necto,	nectëre,	{ nexi,	nexum,	to bind.
		nexui, <sup>1</sup>		
Pando,	pandëre,	pandi,	{ passum,	to open.
Pecto,	pectëre,	pexi,	{ pansum,	
			pexum,	to comb.
Pinso (pîso),	pinsëre,	{ pinsi,	{ pinsitum,	
		pinsui,	{ pistum,	to pound.
			pinsum,	
Plecto,	plectëre,	plexi,	plexum,	to plait.
Plaudo,	plaudëre,	plausi,	plausum,	to applaud.

So *applaudo*; other compounds have *o* for *au*: *explôdo*, etc.

Prëhendo,	prehendëre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	to grasp.
-----------	-------------	-----------	------------	-----------

Often written, *prendo*, *prendëre*, etc.

Prëmo,	premëre,	pressi,	pressum (248. I. 4),	to press.
Quätio,	quatëre,	quassi,	quassum (248. I. 2),	to shake.

Compounds have *cu* for *qua*: *concüto*, etc.

Rädo,	radëre,	räsi,	räsum,	to shave.
Rôdo,	rodëre,	rôsi,	rôsum,	to gnaw.
Scando,	scandëre,	scandi,	scansum,	to climb.

Compounds have *e* for *a*: *ascendo*, *descendo*.

Scindo,	scindëre,	scïdi,	scissum,	to rend.
Spargo,	spargëre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	to scatter.

Compounds generally have *e* for *a*: *aspergo*, *respergo*.

Tergo,	tergëre,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe off.
--------	----------	--------	---------	--------------

Also *tergeo*, *tergëre* (Conj. II.); compounds take this form.

Trüdo,	trudëre,	trûsi,	trûsum,	to thrust.
Vello,	vellëre,	velli (vulsi),	vulsum,	to pluck.

Compounds in good use generally have *vellü*.

Verro,	verrëre,	verri,	versum,	to brush.
Verto,	vertëre,	verti,	versum,	to turn.

Compounds of *de*, *prae*, *re*, are generally deponent in the *Pres.*, *Imperf.*, and *Future*.

Viso,	visëre,	vîsi,	vîsum,	to visit.
-------	---------	-------	--------	-----------

<sup>1</sup> Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

**274. SUPINE WANTING.**—The following verbs, regular in the Perfect, want the Supine:

Ango, ēre, *anxi*, to strangle.

Annuo, ēre, *i*, to assent.

So other compounds of *nuo*, but *abnuo*, has Part. *abnūtūrus*.

Bātuo, ēre, *i*, to beat.

Bībo, ēre, *i*, to drink.

Congruo, ēre, *i*, to agree.

Ingruo, ēre, *i*, to assail.

Lambo, ēre, *i*, to lick.

Luo, ēre, *i*, to wash.

Part. *lūtūrus*. Compounds—*abluo*, *al-luo*, etc. have Sup. *lūtum*.

Mētuo, ēre, *i*, to fear.

Ningo, ēre, *ninxi*, to snow.

Nuo, *obs.*; see *annuo*.

Pluo, ēre, *i* or *vi*, to rain.

Psallo, ēre, *i*, to play on a stringed instrument.

Sido, ēre, *i*, to sit down.

Perf. and Sup. generally supplied from *sēdeo*; hence *sēdī*, *sessum*. So in compounds.

Strīdo, ēre, *i*, to creak.

Also *strīdeo*, *ēre* (Conj. II.).

Sternuo, ēre, *i*, to sneeze.

**275. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.**—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine.

1. The following:

Clango, to clang.

but *distinguo*, *ēre*,

*tempsi*, *contemptum*.

Claudo, to be lame.

*distinxi*, *distinctum*;

*Vādo*, to go. See *evā-*

Glisco, to grow.

so *exstinguo*.

*do*, 273. III.

Hisco, to gape.

*Temno*, to despise; but

*Vergo*, to incline.

Stinguo, to quench;

*contemno*, *ēre*, *con-*

2. Many Inceptives. See 281. II. 1.

**CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.**—*Three Irregularities.*<sup>1</sup>

**276. First Irregularity.**—*Perfect after the Analogy of other Conjugations.*

*I. Perfect in āvi, as in Conjugation I.*

Inveterasco, inveterascēre, inveterāvi, inveterātum, to grow old.

Pasco, pascēre, pāvi, pastum, to feed.

Sterno, sternēre, strāvi, strātum, to strew.

Vētērasco, veterascēre, veterāvi, —, to grow old.

*II. Perfect in ēvi, ui, as in Conjugation II.*

1. The following:

Abōlesco, abolescēre, abolēvi, abolitum, to disappear.

So *inōlesco*; but *adōlesco* has Supine *adūltum*; *exōlesco*, *exolētum*; *obōlesco*, *obolētum*.

Accumbo, accumbēre, accūbui, accubitum, to recline.

So other compounds of *cumbo*, *cubo*. See *cubo*, 262.

<sup>1</sup> For convenience of reference a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 328.

Alo,	ālĕre,	alui,	{ alĭtum, altum,	to nourish.
Cello, <i>obsolete.</i>	See excello below.			
Cerno,	cernĕre	crĕvi,	crĕtum,	to decide.
Cōlo,	colĕre,	colui,	cultum,	to cultivate.
Compesco,	compescĕre,	compescui,	—	to restrain.
Consūlo,	consulĕre,	consului,	consultum,	to consult.
Cresco,	crescere,	crĕvi,	crĕtum,	to grow.

*Increasco* and *succresco* want Supine.

Cumbo *for* cubo, in compounds : see accumbo.

Depsō,	depsĕre,	depsui,	{ dep̄sĭtum, dep̄stum,	to knead.
Elicio,	elicĕre,	elicui,	elicĭtum,	to elicit.

Other compounds of *lacio*, thus: *allacio*, *ĕre*, *alleui*, *allectum*.

Excello,	excellĕre,	excellui ( <i>rare</i> ),	—	to excel.
----------	------------	---------------------------	---	-----------

Other compounds of *cello* want Perf. and Sup., except *percello*, *percellĕre*, *perculi*, *perculsum*.

Frĕmo,	fremĕre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	to rage.
Fūro,	furĕre,	furui,	—	to rage.
Gĕmo,	gemĕre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	to groan.
Gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnui ( <i>f. gĕno</i> ),	genĭtum,	to beget.

Lacio, *obsolete.* See *elicio*.

Līno,	linĕre,	lĕvi, livi,	lĭtum,	to smear.
Mĕto,	metĕre,	messui,	messum,	to reap.
Mōlo,	molĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	to grind.
Necto,	nectĕre,	{ nexui, nexi,	nexum,	to bind.
Occūlo,	occulĕre,	occului,	occultum,	to hide.
Olesco, <i>obsolete.</i>	See <i>abolesco</i> .			

Pinso,	pinsĕre,	{ pinsui, pinsi,	{ pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum,	to crush.
Pōno,	ponĕre,	posui,	posĭtum,	to place.
Quiesco,	quiescĕre,	quiĕvi,	quiĕtum,	to rest.
Rāpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	to snatch.

Compounds thus: *corripio*, *corripĕre*, *corripui*, *correptum*.

Sĕro,	serĕre,	serui,	sertum,	to connect.
Sĕro,	scrĕre,	sĕvi,	sĕtum,	to sow.

Compounds thus: *consĕro*, *ĕre*, *consĕvi*, *consĭtum*.

Sperno,	spĕrnĕre,	sprĕvi,	sprĕtum,	to spurn.
Sterto,	stertĕre,	stertui,	—	to snore.
Strĕpo,	strepĕre,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	to make a noise.
Suesco,	suescĕre,	suĕvi,	suĕtum,	to become accustomed.
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	to weave.
Trĕmo,	tremĕre,	trĕmui,	—	to tremble.
Vōmo,	vomĕre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	to vomit.

2. Many Inceptives in *esco* form the Perfect in *ui* from their primitives. See 281. I. 2.

### III. Perfect in *ivi*, as in Conjugation IV.

#### 1. The following:

Arcesso,	arcessere,	arcessivi,	arcessitum,	to call for.
Capesso,	capessere,	capessivi,	capessitum,	to lay hold of.
Cupio,	cupere,	cupivi,	cupitum,	to desire.
Facesso,	facessere,	{ facessivi,	facessitum,	to make.
		{ facessi,		
Incesso,	incessere,	incessivi or -cessi,	—	to attack.
Lacesso,	lacessere,	lacessivi,	lacessitum,	to provoke.
Lino,	linere,	livi or lēvi,	litum,	to smear.
Peto,	petere,	petivi,	petitum,	to ask.
Quaero,	quaerere,	quaesivi,	quaesitum,	to seek.

Compounds thus: *acquiro, ēre, acquisivi, acquisitum.*

Rūdo,	rudere,	rudivi,	ruditum,	to bray.
Sāpio,	sapere,	sapivi, sapui,	—	to taste.

Compounds have *i* for *a*, as *resipio*. *Desipio* wants Perf. and Sup.

Sino,	sinere,	sivi,	situm,	to permit.
Tēro,	terere,	trivi,	tritum,	to rub.

2. A few Inchoatives in *isco* form the Perfect in *ivi* from their primitives. See 281. I. 2.

277. PERFECT IN *ōvi*.—*Nosco* and its compounds form the perfect in *ōvi* after the analogy of *āvi*, *ēvi*, and *ivi*:

Nosco,	noscere,	nōvi,	nōtum,	to know.
--------	----------	-------	--------	----------

So *ignosco*.—*Agnosco* and *cognosco* have *itum* in Sup., *agnitum*; *dignosco* and *internosco* want Supina.

278. VOWEL CONJUGATION.—*Nosco*, verbs in *uo*, and regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations form a complete vowel-conjugation, whose Perfects and Supines in the full form are entirely analogous, as follows:

ao,	āvi,	ātum;	amo (ao),	amāvi,	amātum.
eo,	ēvi,	ētum;	deleo,	delēvi,	deletum.
io,	īvi,	itum;	audio,	audīvi,	audītum.
oo,	ōvi,	ōtum;	nosco (noo),	nōvi,	nōtum.
uo,	u(v)i,	ūtum;	acuo,	acu(v)i,	acūtum.

279. Second Irregularity.—*Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel*. See 253. 1 and 2.

Ago,	āgere,	ēgi,	actum,	to drive.
------	--------	------	--------	-----------

So *circumdāgo* and *perdāgo*; *satiāgo* wants Perf. and Sup. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Pres.: *adāgo, ēre, adēgi, adactum*; but *colgo* becomes *cōgo, ēre, cōgi, coactum*, and *delgo, dēgo, ēre, dēgi*, without Sup. *Prodāgo* wants Sup., and *ambāgo*, Perf. and Sup.

Cāpio,	capere,	cēpi,	captum,	to take.
--------	---------	-------	---------	----------

So *antiscāpio*; other compounds thus: *accipio, ēre, accēpi, acceptum*.

Edo,	ēdere,	ēdi,	ēsum,	<i>to eat.</i>
Emo,	ēmēre,	ēmi,	emptum,	<i>to buy.</i>

So *coēmo*; other compounds thus: *adēmo, ēre, adēmī, ademptum*.

Fācio,	facēre,	fēci,	factum,	<i>to make.</i>
--------	---------	-------	---------	-----------------

Passive Irregular: *sto, stēri, factus sum*. See 294.

So *satisfacio* and compounds of *facio* with verbs, but compounds with prepositions thus: *conficio, conficere, confici, confectum*, with regular Pass. *conficior, conficti, confectus sum*.—Compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives are of Conj. I.: *significo, āre, dōi, ātum*.

Fōdio,	fodere,	fōdi,	fossum,	<i>to dig.</i>
Frango,	frangere,	frēgi,	fractum,	<i>to break.</i>

Compounds thus: *confringo, ēre, confrēgi, confractum*.

Fūgio,	fugere,	fūgi,	fugitum,	<i>to flee.</i>
Fundo,	fundere,	fūdi,	fusum,	<i>to pour.</i>
Jācio,	jacere,	jēci,	jactum,	<i>to throw.</i>

*Superfacio* has *jactum* or *jectum* in Sup.; other compounds thus: *abjecto, ēre, abjecti, abjectum*.

Lēgo,	legere,	lēgi,	lectum,	<i>to read.</i>
-------	---------	-------	---------	-----------------

So compounds, except (1) *colligo, ēre, collēgi, collectum*; so *deligo, eligo, seligo*,—(2) *diligō, ēre, dilexi, dilectum*; so *intellego, negligo*.

Linquo,	linquere,	liqui,	—	<i>to leave.</i>
---------	-----------	--------	---	------------------

Compounds with Sup.: *relinquo, ēre, reliqui, relictum*.

Rumpo,	rumpere,	rūpi,	ruptum,	<i>to burst.</i>
Scābo,	scabere,	scābi,	—	<i>to scratch.</i>
Vinco,	vincere,	vici,	victum,	<i>to conquer.</i>

## 280. Third Irregularity.—Perfect Reduplicated. See 254. 1–5.

Abdo,	abdere,	abdīdi,	abditum,	<i>to hide.</i>
-------	---------	---------	----------	-----------------

So all compounds of *do*, except those of Conj. I. (264): *addo, condo, crēdo, dēdo, ēdo, indo, obdo, perdo, prōdo, reddo, trādo, vendo*; but *abs-condo* generally drops reduplication: *abs-condi*.

Cādo,	cadere,	cēcīdi,	cāsum,	<i>to fall.</i>
-------	---------	---------	--------	-----------------

*Incido, ēre, incīdi, incāsum*; so *occido* and *revido*; other compounds want *supīne*.

Caedo,	caedere,	cēcīdi,	cacsum,	<i>to cut.</i>
--------	----------	---------	---------	----------------

Compounds thus: *concido, ēre, concīdi, concisum*.

Cāno,	canere,	cēcīni,	cantum,	<i>to sing.</i>
-------	---------	---------	---------	-----------------

*Concīno, ēre, concīnui*, —; so *occīno* and *prascīno*; other compounds want Perf. and Sup.

Crēdo,	credere,	credīdi,	creditum, <sup>1</sup>	<i>to believe.</i>
--------	----------	----------	------------------------	--------------------

<sup>1</sup> Explained as compound of *do*; see *abdo*.





## 281. INCEPTIVES.

Inceptives end in *sco*, and denote the beginning of an action. When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

## I. Verbal Inceptives.

1. Most verbal inceptives want the *Supine*, but take the *Perfect* of their primitives.

The following are examples:

Acesco	(aceo),	acescere,	acui,	—	to become sour.
Aresco	(areo),	arescere,	arui,	—	to become dry.
Calesco	(caleo),	calescere,	calui,	—	to become warm.
Flōresco	(flōreo),	florescere,	florui,	—	to begin to bloom.
Mādesco	(mādeo),	madescere,	madui,	—	to become moist.
Tēpesco	(tēpeo),	tepescere,	tēpui,	—	to become warm.
Viresco	(vireo),	virescere,	virui,	—	to become green.

2. The following take the *Perfect* and *Supine* of their primitives:

Abōlesco	(ab, oleo),	ēre,	ābolēvi,	abolitum, <sup>1</sup>	to disappear.
Coālesco	(con, alo),	ēre,	coālui,	coalitum,	to coalesce.
Concupisco	(con, cupio),	ēre,	concupiui,	concupitum,	to desire.
Convālesco	(con, valeo),	ēre,	convālui,	convālitum,	to grow strong.
Exardesco	(ex, ardeo),	ēre,	exarsi,	exarsum,	to burn.
Invētērasco	(invētēro),	ēre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	to grow old.
Obdormisco	(ob, dormio),	ēre,	obdormiui,	obdormitum,	to fall asleep.
Rēvivisco	(re, vivo),	ēre,	revixi,	revictum,	to revive.
Scisco,	(scio),	ēre,	scīvi,	scitum,	to enact.

3. The following are Inceptives only in form:

Cresco,	crescere,	crēvi,	crētum,	to grow.
Fātisco,	faticere,	—	—	to gape.
Glisco,	gliscere,	—	—	to swell.
Nosco,	noscere,	nōvi,	nōtum,	to know.
Pasco,	pascere,	pāvi,	pastum,	to feed.
Quiesco,	quiescere,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	to be quiet.
Suesco,	suescere,	suēvi,	suētum,	to be accustomed.

## II. Denominative Inceptives.

1. Most denominative inceptives want both *Perfect* and *Supine*. Thus

Aegresco (aeger),	to grow sick.	Jūvānescō (juvēnis),	to become a youth.
Dītesco (dīves),	to grow rich.	Mītesco (mītis),	to grow mild.
Dulcesco (dulcis),	to become sweet.	Mollesco (mollis),	to grow soft.
Grandesco (grandis),	to grow large.	Puērasco (puer),	to become a boy.
Grāvesco (grāvis),	to grow heavy.	Pinguesco (pinguis),	to grow fat.

2. The following have the *Perfect* in *ui*:

Crēbresco (creber),	ēre,	crēbrui,	to become frequent.
Dūresco (durus),	ēre,	dūrui,	to become hard.

<sup>1</sup> So *indolēscō*; but *adōlesco* has Sup. *adulitum*; *exōlesco*, *exolitum*; *obōlesco*, *obolitum*.

Evānesco	( <i>e, vanus</i> ),	ēre,	svānui,	to vanish.
Innōtesco	( <i>in, notus</i> ),	ēre,	innōtui,	to become known.
Macresco	( <i>macer</i> ),	ēre,	macrui,	to become lean.
Mātūresco	( <i>matūrus</i> ),	ēre,	mātūruī,	to ripen.
Nigresco	( <i>niger</i> ),	ēre,	nigrui,	to become black.
Obmūtesco	( <i>ob, mūtus</i> ),	ēre,	obmūtui,	to grow dumb.
Obsurdesco	( <i>ob, surdus</i> ),	ēre,	obsurduī,	to become deaf.
Recrūdesco	( <i>re, crūdus</i> ),	ēre,	recrūdui,	to bleed afresh.
Vilescō	( <i>vilis</i> ),	ēre,	vilui,	to become worthless.

## 282. DEPONENT VERBS.

Amplector, i, amplexus sum, to embrace.

So complector, circumplector.

Apiscor, i, aptus sum, to obtain.

Adīpiscor, i, adeptus sum, so indīpiscor.

Commīniscor, i, commentus sum, to devise.

Remīniscor wants Perf.

Expērgiscor, i, experrectus sum, to awake.

Fātiscor, i, \_\_\_\_\_, to gape.

Defātiscor, i, defessus sum.

Fruor, frui, { fructus sum,  
fruitus sum, to enjoy.

Part. fruitūrus.

Fungor, i, functus sum, to perform.

Grādior, i, gressus sum, to walk.

Compounds thus: aggrēdior, i, aggressus sum.

Irascor, i, \_\_\_\_\_, to be angry.

Labor, i, lapsus sum, to fall.

Liquor, i, \_\_\_\_\_, to melt.

Lōquor, i, locūtus sum, to speak.

Miniscor, obsolete; see commīniscor.

Mōrior, i (iri, rare), mortuus sum, to die.

Part. moritūrus.

Nanciscor, i, nactus (nactus) sum, to obtain.

Nascor, i, nātus sum, to be born.

Part. nascitūrus.

Nitor, i, { nīsus sum,  
nīxus sum, to strive.

Obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, to forget.

Pāciscor, i, pactus sum, to bargain

Pātior, i, passus sum, to suffer.

Perpētior, i, perpassus sum.

Plector, not used as Dep.; see amplector.

Prōficiſcor, i, profectus sum, to set out.

Quērōr, i, questus sum, to complain.

Rēmīniscor, i, \_\_\_\_\_, to remember.

Ringor, i, \_\_\_\_\_, to growl.

Sēquor, i, secūtus sum, to follow.

Tuor, *antiquated form for tueor*, 272. 1.

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, to avenge.

Utor, i, ūsus sum, to use.

Vertor; *see* devertor, praevertor, revertor, 273. III.

Vescor, i, ——— to eat.

*Semi-Deponent.*

Fido, fidēre, fīsus sum, to trust.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

CLASS I. REGULAR FORMATION.

283. Principal Parts in: **io, ire, ivi, itum.**

The following are examples:

Audio,	audīre,	audīvī,	auditum,	to hear.
Condio,	condīre,	condīvī,	conditum,	to season.
Finio,	finīre,	finīvī,	finitum,	to finish.
Lēnio,	lenīre,	lenīvī,	lenitum,	to alleviate.
Mūnio,	munīre,	munīvī,	munitum,	to fortify.
Pūnio,	punīre,	punīvī,	punitum,	to punish.
Scio,	scīre,	scīvī,	scitum,	to know.
Sēpēlio,	sepelīre,	sepelīvī,	sepultum, <sup>1</sup>	to bury.
Sitio,	sitīre,	sitīvī,	———	to thirst.
Vāgio,	vagīre,	vagīvī,	———	to cry.

1. *Perfect in ii for ivi.*—V is often dropped in the ending of the Perfect; *audii* for *audivi*. See 234. 1.

2. *Perfect and Supine Wanting.*—Desideratives (332. III.), except *esturio*, *ire*, —, *itum*; *nupturio*, *ire*, *ivi*, and *parturio*, *ire*, *ivi*, want both Perf. and Sup. Also a few others:

Balbūtio,	to stammer.	Gannio,	to bark.	Singultio,	to sob.
Caecūtio,	to be blind.	Ineptio,	to trifle.	Sūperbio,	to be proud.
Fērio,	to strike.	Sāgio,	to be wise.	Tussio,	to cough.
Fērōcio,	to be fierce.				

CLASS II. IRREGULAR FORMATION.—*Two Irregularities.*

284. First Irregularity.—*Perfect after the Analogy of the Second and Third Conjugations.*

*I. Perfect in ui, as in Conjugation II.*

Principal Parts in: **io, ire, ui, tum.**

Amīcio,	āmīcīre,	(amicui <sup>2</sup> ),	amictum,	to clothe.
Apērio,	āpērīre,	aperui,	apertum,	to open. <sup>3</sup>
Opērio,	ōpērīre,	operui, <sup>2</sup>	opertum,	to cover. <sup>3</sup>
Sālio,	salīre,	salui (ii),	(saltum),	to leap.

Compounds thus: *desilio*, *ire*, *ui* (ii), (*desultum*).

<sup>1</sup> Supine irregular.

<sup>2</sup> Probably not in actual use.

<sup>3</sup> From *partio* of Conj. III.

## II. Perfect in **si** (i), as in Conjugation III.

Principal Parts in : **io, ire, si (i), tum (sum).**

Compērio,	comperire,	compēri,	compertum,	to learn. <sup>1</sup>
Farcio,	farcire,	farsi,	{ fartum, - farctum,	to stuff.
Compounds thus: <i>confercio, ire, conferet, confertum.</i>				
Fulcio,	fulcire,	fulsi,	fultum,	to prop.
Haurio,	haurire,	hausi,	haustum, hausum,	to draw.
Raucio,	raucire,	rausi,	rausum,	to be hoarse.
Rēpērio,	reperire,	repēri,	repertum,	to find. <sup>1</sup>
Sancio,	sancire,	sanxi,	{ sancitum, sanctum,	to ratify.
Sarcio,	sarcire,	sarsi,	sartum,	to patch.
Sentio,	sentire,	sensi,	sensum, <sup>2</sup>	to feel.
Sēpio,	sepire,	sepsi,	septum,	to hedge in.
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinctum,	to bind.

### 285. Second Irregularity.—Perfect lengthens Stem-Vowel.

Vēnio,	venire,	vēni,	ventum,	to come.
So compounds: <i>advenio, convenio, devenio, invenio, obvenio, pervenio, etc.</i>				

## 286. DEPONENT VERBS.

### 1. Regular.

Blandior,	iri,	blanditus sum,	to flatter.
Largior,	iri,	largitus sum,	to bestow.
Mentior,	iri,	mentitus sum,	to lie.
Molior,	iri,	molitus sum,	to strive.
Partior,	iri,	partitus sum,	to divide.

*Impertior, iri, impertitus sum; so dispertior.*

Pötior,	iri,	potitus sum, <sup>3</sup>	to obtain.
Sortior,	iri,	sortitus sum,	to draw lots.

### 2. Irregular.

Assentior,	iri,	assensus sum, <sup>4</sup>	to assent.
Expērior,	iri,	expertus sum, <sup>4</sup>	to try.
Mētor,	iri,	ensus sum,	to measure.
Oppērior,	iri,	{ oppertus sum, <sup>4</sup> opperitus sum,	to await.
Ordior,	iri,	orsus sum,	to begin.
Orior,	iri,	ortus sum,	to rise.

Part. *ortūrus*.—Pres. Ind. of Conj. III., *orēris, oritur*. Imp. Subj., *orirer* or *orērer*.—So compounds, but *adorior* follows Conj. IV.

<sup>1</sup> From *pārio* of Conj. III.

<sup>2</sup> Comp. *assentio* has a deponent form, *assentior*. See 286. 2.

<sup>3</sup> In the Pres. Ind. and Imp. Subj., forms of Conj. III. occur.

<sup>4</sup> Compounded of *ad* and *sentio*. See *sentio*, 284. II.

<sup>5</sup> Compounded of *ex* and *pario*; *ob* and *pario*. See *comperio*, 284. II.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

287. A few verbs which have unusual personal endings, are called by way of preëminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*. They are

*Sum, edo, fero, volo, flo, eo, queo,*  
and their compounds.

288. *Sum, I am.*

The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204.); its numerous compounds—*absum*,<sup>1</sup> *adsum*, *dēsum*, *praesum*,<sup>1</sup> etc.—except *possum* and *prōsum*, are conjugated in the same way.

289. *Possum, I am able.*

possum,                      possē,                      pōtūl.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

possum,    pōtēs,    pōtest;    possumūs,    pōtestis,    possunt.

## IMPERFECT.

pōtērām,    -ērās,    -ērāt;    pōtērāmūs,    -ērātis,    -erant.

## FUTURE.

pōtērō,    -eris,    -erit;    pōtērīmūs,    -eritis,    -erunt.

## PERFECT.

pōtūl,    -istī,    -it;    pōtūimus,    -istis,    -erunt or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

pōtuērām,    -erās,    -erāt;    pōtuērāmūs,    -erātis,    -erant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

pōtuērō,    -eris,    -erit;    pōtuērīmūs,    -eritis,    -erint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

possum,    possis,    possit;    possumūs,    possitis,    possint.

## IMPERFECT.

possēm,    possēs,    possēt;    possēmūs,    possētis,    possent.

## PERFECT.

pōtuērīm,    -eris,    -erit;    pōtuērīmūs,    -eritis,    -erint.

<sup>1</sup> *Absum* and *praesum*, like *possum*, have Pres. Participles, *absens* and *praesens*.

## PLUPERFECT.

pōtuissēm, -issēs, -issēt; pōtuissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.—*Wanting.*

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. possē.

PRES. pōtens (*as an adjective*).

PERF. pōtūissē.

1. COMPOSITION.—*Possūm* is compounded of *pōtīa*, able, and *sum*, to be. The parts are sometimes separated, and then *potis* is indeclinable: *pōtis sum*, *pōtis sūmus*, etc.

2. IRREGULARITIES.—In *possum* observe

1) That *potis* drops *is* and that *t* final of the stem is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potisum*.

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potui* for *potfui*.

3) That the Infin. *posse* and Subj. *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

3. OLD AND RARE FORMS. See 204. 1 and 2.

290. *Prōsum*, I profit, is compounded of *pro*, for, and *sum*, to be. It inserts *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*; *prōsum*, *prōdēs*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sum*.

291. *Edo*, I eat.

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms like those of *sum* which begin in *es*. Thus:

Edō, ēdērē, ēdī, ēsūm.

INDICATIVE.—*Present.*

ēdō,	ēdis,	ēdit;	ēdimūs,	ēditīs,	ēdunt.
—	ēs,	est;	—	estis,	—

SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Imperfect.*

ēdērēm,	ēdērēs,	ēdērēt;	ēdērēmūs,	ēdērētīs,	ēdērēt.
essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	essēmūs,	essētīs,	essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	{ ēdē;	ēditē.	
	{ ēs;	estē.	
FUT.	{ ēditō;	ēditōtē,	ēduntō.
	{ estō;	estōtē,	—

INFINITIVE.—*Present.*

ēdērē, essē.

1. PASSIVE FORMS.—*Estūr* for *ēdītūr* (Indic. Pres.) and *essētūr* for *ēdērētūr* (Subj. Imp.) also occur.

2. FORMS IN *IM* for *am* occur in Pres. Subj.: *ēdim*, *ēdis*, *ēdit*, etc., for *ēddm*, *ēdds*, *ēddt*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *comedo* has in Sup. *comēsum* or *comestum*.

292. *Fero, I bear.*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Fērō,*                *ferrē,*                *tūli,*                *lātūm.*

## INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	<i>fērō, fers, fert;</i>	<i>fērīmūs, fertis,<sup>1</sup> fērunt.</i>
IMP.	<i>fērēbām;</i>	<i>fērēbāmūs.</i>
FUT.	<i>fērām;</i>	<i>fērēmūs.</i>
PERF.	<i>tūli;</i>	<i>tūlīmūs.</i>
PLUP.	<i>tūlērām;</i>	<i>tūlērāmūs.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>tūlērō;</i>	<i>tūlērīmūs.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>fērām;</i>	<i>fērāmūs.</i>
IMP.	<i>ferrēm;</i>	<i>ferrēmūs.<sup>2</sup></i>
PERF.	<i>tūlērīm;</i>	<i>tūlērīmūs.</i>
PLUP.	<i>tūlissēm;</i>	<i>tūlissēmūs.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>fēr;<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>fertē.</i>
FUT.	<i>fertō, fertō;</i>	<i>fertōtē feruntō.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>ferrē.<sup>2</sup></i>
PERF.	<i>tūlissē.</i>
FUT.	<i>lātūrus essē.</i>

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. <i>fērens.</i>
FUT. <i>lātūrus.</i>

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fērendi.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fērendō.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fērendūm.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fērendō.</i>

## SUPINE.

<i>Acc.</i>	<i>lātūm.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>lātū.</i>

## PASSIVE VOICE.

*fērōr,*                *ferrī,*                *latus sum.*

## INDICATIVE.

PRES.	<i>fērōr, ferris, fertur;<sup>4</sup></i>	<i>fērīmūr, fērīmīnī, fēruntūr.</i>
IMP.	<i>fērēbār;</i>	<i>fērēbāmūr.</i>
FUT.	<i>fērār;</i>	<i>fērēmūr.</i>
PERF.	<i>lātūs sūm;</i>	<i>lātī sūmūs.</i>
PLUP.	<i>lātūs ērām;</i>	<i>lātī ērāmūs.</i>
FUT. PERF.	<i>lātūs ērō;</i>	<i>lātī ērīmūs.</i>

<sup>1</sup> *Fers* for *fēris*; *fert* for *fērit*; *fertis* for *fēritis* (*i* dropped).

<sup>2</sup> *Ferrem*, etc. for *fērērēm*, etc.; *ferrē* for *fērērē* (*e* dropped).

<sup>3</sup> *Fēr* for *fērē*; *fertō, fertē, fertōtē* for *fērītō, fērītē, fērītōtē* (*i* dropped).

<sup>4</sup> *Ferris* for *fērēris*; *fertūr* for *fērītūr*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērār;	fērāmūr.
IMP.	ferrēr;	ferrēmūr. <sup>1</sup>
PERF.	lātūs sīm;	lāti sīmūs.
PLUP.	lātūs eesēm;	lāti eesēmūs.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ferrē; <sup>1</sup>	fērīmīnī.
FUT.	fertōr; <sup>2</sup>	—
	fertūr; <sup>3</sup>	fēruntōr.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	ferī. <sup>3</sup>	
PERF.	lātūs essē.	PERF. lātūs.
FUT.	lātūm irī.	FUT. fērendūs.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Fero*, it will be seen, has two principal irregularities:  
 1) It forms its Perf. and Sup. *tūli* (rarely *tetūli*) and *lātum* from obsolete stems.  
 2) It drops the connecting vowel *e* or *i* in certain forms of the Pres. Indic. and Infin., the Imperf. Subj. and the Imperat. It doubles *r* in the Pres. Infin. Pass.  
 2. COMPOUNDS of *fero* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

ab-	aufēro,	auferre,	abstūli,	ablātum.
ad-	aufēro,	afferre,	attūli,	allātum.
con-	confēro,	conferre,	contūli,	collātum.
dis-	diffēro,	differre,	distūli,	dilātum.
ex-	effēro,	efferre,	extūli,	elātum.
in-	infēro,	inferre,	intūli,	illātum.
ob-	offēro,	offerre,	obtūli,	oblātum.
sub-	suffēro,	sufferre,	sustūli,	sublātum.

*Sustūli* and *sublātum* are not used in the sense of *suffēro*, to bear, but they supply the Perf. and Sup. of *tollō*, to raise. See 280.

293. *Volo, I am willing.*—*Nolo, I am unwilling.*—*Malo, I prefer.*

vōlō,	vellō,	vōlui.
nōlō,	nollō,	nōlui.
mālō,	mallō,	mālui.

## INDICATIVE.

## PRESENT.

vōlō,	nōlō,	mālō,
vīs,	non vīs,	māvis,
vult;	non vult;	māvult;
vōlūmūs,	nōlūmūs,	mālūmūs,
vultīs,	non vultīs,	māvultīs,
vōlunt.	nōlunt.	mālunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Ferrēr*, etc., for *fērērēr*, etc.; *ferrē* for *fērērē*.

<sup>2</sup> *Fertūr* for *fērītūr*.

<sup>3</sup> *Ferri* for *fērī* (Conj. III.).



## IMPERFECT.

völebám, bás, etc.		nölebám, bás, etc.		malébám, bás, etc.
--------------------	--	--------------------	--	--------------------

## FUTURE.

völám.		nölám.		mälám.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

## PERFECT.

völuí.		nöluí.		maluí.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

## PLUPERFECT.

völuěřám.		nöluěřám.		maluěřám.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

völuěřö.		nöluěřö.		maluěřö.
----------	--	----------	--	----------

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

vělim		nölim		mālim
vělis		nölis		mālis
vělit		nölit		mālit
vělimūs		nölimūs		mālimūs
vělitis		nölitis		mālitis
vělint.		nölint.		mālint.

## IMPERFECT.

vellēm <sup>1</sup>		nollēm		mallēm
vellēs		nollēs		mallēs
vellēt		nollēt		mallēt
vellēmūs		nollēmūs		mallēmūs
vellētīs		nollētīs		mallētīs
vellent.		nollent.		mallent.

## PERFECT.

völuěřim.		nöluěřim.		maluěřim.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

## PLUPERFECT.

völuissēm.		nöluissēm.		maluissēm.
------------	--	------------	--	------------

## IMPERATIVE.

## PRESENT.

	nöli, nölitě.	
--	---------------	--

## FUTURE.

	nölitö, nölitötě;	
	nölitö, nöluntö.	

<sup>1</sup> *Vellem* and *vells* are syncopated forms for *velérem*, *velére*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velérem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velére*, *velre*, *vella*. So *nöllem* and *nölle*, for *nölérem* and *nölére*; *mallēm* and *mallo*, for *malérem* and *malére*.

## INFINITIVE.

## PRESENT.

vellä.		nollä.		mallä.
--------	--	--------	--	--------

## PERFECT.

võluisse.		nõluisse.		mäluisse.
-----------	--	-----------	--	-----------

## PARTICIPLE.

võlens.		nõlens.	
---------	--	---------	--

1. COMPOSITION.—*Nõlo* is compounded of *ne* or *non* and *võlo*; *mälo*, of *mägis* and *võlo*.

2. RARE FORMS.—(1) Of *võlo*: *võlk*, *võltis*, for *vull*, *vullis*; *sis*, *sultis*, for *si vis*, *si vultis*; *vin'* for *visme*.—(2) Of *nõlo*: *nevis*, *nevult* (*nevõlt*), *nevelle*, for *non vis*, *non vult*, *nolle*.—(3) Of *malo*: *mavõlo*, *mavõlim*, *mavellem*, for *malo*, *malim*, *mallem*.

294. *Fio*, *I become*.

<i>fiõ</i> ,	<i>fiäri</i> ,	<i>factüs sum</i> .
--------------	----------------	---------------------

## INDICATIVE.

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

PRES.	<i>fiõ</i> , <i>fis</i> , <i>fõt</i> ;	<i>fimüs</i> , <i>fitis</i> , <i>fiunt</i> .
IMP.	<i>fiëbäm</i> ;	<i>fiëbämüs</i> .
FUT.	<i>fiäm</i> ;	<i>fiëmüs</i> .
PERF.	<i>factüs süm</i> ;	<i>facti sümüs</i> .
PLUP.	<i>factüs ëräim</i> ;	<i>facti ëräimüs</i> .
FUT. PERF.	<i>factüs ërõ</i> ;	<i>facti ërimüs</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	<i>fiäm</i> ;	<i>fiämüs</i> .
IMP.	<i>fiërëm</i> ;	<i>fiërëmüs</i> .
PERF.	<i>factüs sim</i> ;	<i>facti simüs</i> .
PLUP.	<i>factüs essëm</i> ;	<i>facti essëmüs</i> .

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	<i>fi</i> ;	<i>fitë</i> .
-------	-------------	---------------

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	<i>fiëri</i> .	
PERF.	<i>factüs essë</i> .	PERF. <i>factüs</i> .
FUT.	<i>factüm iri</i> .	FUT. <i>fäciendüs</i> .

1. IRREGULARITY.—*Fio* is only slightly irregular, as will be seen from the paradigm.

2. MEANING.—*Fio* means (1) *to become*, (2) *to be made*, *appointed*. In the second sense it is used as the passive of *facto*. See 279.

3. COMPOUNDS of *fio* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *confi*, *desfi*, and *infi* are defective. See 297. III. 2.

295. *Eo, I go.*

*Eō,*                      *irē,*                      *ivī,*                      *itūm.*

## INDICATIVE.

## SINGULAR.

**PRES.**            *eō, is, it;*  
**IMP.**            *ibām;*  
**FUT.**            *ibō;*  
**PERF.**            *ivī;*  
**PLUP.**            *ivērām;*  
**FUT. PERF.**    *ivērō;*

## PLURAL.

*imūs, itīs, eunt.*  
*ibāmūs.*  
*ibimūs.*  
*ivimūs.*  
*ivērāmūs.*  
*ivērīmūs.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

**PRES.**            *eām;*                      *eāmūs.*  
**IMP.**            *irēm;*                      *irēmūs.*  
**PERF.**            *ivērīm;*                      *ivērīmūs.*  
**PLUP.**            *ivissēm;*                      *ivissēmūs.*

## IMPERATIVE.

**PRES.**            *i;*                              *itā.*  
**FUT.**            *itō,*  
                     *itō;*                              *euntō.*

## INFINITIVE.

**PRES.**            *irē.*  
**PERF.**            *ivissē.*  
**FUT.**            *itūrūs essē.*

## PARTICIPLE.

**PRES. iens.**    *Gen. euntīs.*  
**FUT.**            *itūrūs.*

## GERUND.

*Gen.*            *eundī.*  
*Dat.*            *eundō.*  
*Acc.*            *eundūm.*  
*Abl.*            *eundō.*

## SUPINE.

*Acc.*            *itūm.*  
*Abl.*            *itū.*

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation, but it forms the Sup. with a short vowel (*itum*) and is irregular in several parts of the present system. It admits contraction according to 284: *ietis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—*Eo* as an intransitive verb wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular *itur, ibātur*, etc. (801. 3), but *iri*, the Pass. Infm., occurs as an auxiliary in the Fut. Infm. Pass. of the regular conjugations: *amātum iri*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eo* are generally conjugated like *eo*, but shorten *ivī* into *īi*.—*Veneo* (*venum eo*) has sometimes *veniēbam* for *venibam*. Many compounds want the supine, and a few admit in the Fut. a rare form in *eam, ies, iēt*.

Transitive compounds have also the Passive: *adeo*, to approach, *adeor, adīris, adītur*, etc.

*Ambio* is regular, like *audio*, though *ambibam* for *ambibam* occurs.

296. *Queo, I am able. Nequeo, I am unable.*

*Queo, quire, quivi, quītum*, and *Nequeo, nequire, nequivi (ii), nequītum*, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare, except in the Present tense.<sup>1</sup>

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts: we specify the following.<sup>2</sup>

## I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

*Coepi, I have begun. Memini, I remember. Odi, I hate.*

## INDICATIVE.

PERF.	coepi.	mēmīni.	ōdi.
PLUP.	coepērām.	mēmīnērām.	ōdērām.
FUT. PERF.	coepērō.	mēmīnērō.	ōdērō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERF.	coepērīm.	mēmīnērīm.	ōdērīm.
PLUP.	coepissēm.	mēmīnissēm.	ōdissem.

## IMPERATIVE.

S. mēmētō.
P. mēmētōte.

## INFINITIVE.

PERF.	coepissē.	memīnisse.	ōdisse.
FUT.	coeptūrūs essē.		ōsūrūs essē.

## PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	coeptūs.	ōsūs. <sup>3</sup>
FUT.	coeptūrūs.	ōsūrūs.

1. PASSIVE FORM.—With passive infinitives *coepi* generally takes the passive form: *coeptus sum, eram*, etc. The Part. *coeptus* is passive in sense.

2. PRESENT IN SENSE.—*Memini* and *ōdi* are present in sense; hence in the Pluperf. and Fut. Perf. they have the sense of the Imperf. and Fut.—*Nōvī*, I know, Perf. of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuevī*, I am wont, Perf. of *consuesco*, to accustom one's self, are also present in sense.

<sup>1</sup> A passive form, *quītur, nequītur*, etc., sometimes occurs before a Pass. Infin.

<sup>2</sup> Many, which want the Perf. or Sup. or both, have been mentioned under the Classification of Verbs.

<sup>3</sup> *Osus* is active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exōsus, perōsus*.

## II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. Aio, *I say, say yes*.<sup>1</sup>

INDIC.	Pres.	āio,	ais, <sup>2</sup>	ait;	—	—	aiunt.
	Imp.	aiēbām,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmūs,	-ēbātīs,	-ēbant. <sup>3</sup>
	Perf.	—	—	ait;	—	—	—
SUBJ.	Pres.	—	aias,	aiāt;	—	—	aiant.
IMPER.	Pres.	ai (rare).					
PART.	Pres.	aiens (as adjective).					

2. Inquam, *I say*.

INDIC.	Pres.	inquām,	inquīs,	inquīt;	inquīmūs,	inquītīs,	inquunt.
	Imp.	—	—	inquiēbāt; <sup>4</sup>	—	—	—
	Fut.	—	inquīēs,	inquīēt;	—	—	—
	Perf.	—	inquistī,	inquīt;	—	—	—
IMPER.	Pres.	inque.	Fut.	inquītō. <sup>5</sup>			

3. Fari, *to speak*.<sup>6</sup>

INDIC.	Pres.	—	—	fātur;	—	—	—
	Fut.	fābōr,	—	fābitūr;	—	—	—
	Perf.	fātūs sūm,	es,	est;	fātī sūmūs,	estīs,	sunt.
	Plup.	fātūs erām,	erās,	erāt;	fātī erāmūs,	erātīs,	erant.
SUBJ.	Perf.	fātūs sim,	sis,	sit;	fātī simūs,	sītīs,	sint.
	Plup.	fātūs essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	fātī essēmūs,	essētīs,	essent.
IMPER.	Pres.	fārē.					
INFIN.	Pres.	fārī.					
PART.	Pres.	(fans) fantis,	Perf.	fātūs,	Fut.	fandūs.	
GERUND,	Gen. and Abl.	fandī, dō.	SUPINE,	Abl.	fātū.		

## III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.—	āvē,	avēte;	avētō;	INF.	avēre,	hail.
	salvē,	salvētē,	salvētō;		salvēre,	hail.
	cēdō,	cettē,				tell me, give me.
	āgē, <sup>7</sup>	āgītē,				come.
	āpāgē,					begone.

<sup>1</sup> In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *a-yo*, *a'-is*. See § 2.

<sup>2</sup> The interrogative form *aiens* is often shortened to *ain'*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aibam*, *aibas*, etc., occur in comedy.

<sup>4</sup> Also written *inquibat*.

<sup>5</sup> A few forms of the Subj. are sometimes given, but they are not found in the classics.

<sup>6</sup> *Fārī* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple; thus: *affāmur*, *affamīni*, *affādar*, *effabēris*. Subj. Imp. *fārer* also occurs in compounds.

<sup>7</sup> The Fut. *salvōbis* is also used for the Imperat.

<sup>8</sup> *Age* is also used in the sense of the Plural.

## 2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDIC. Pres.	Fut.	SUB. Pres. Imp.	INFIN.
confī, —	—	confiāt, confiērēt,	confiēri, <i>to be done.</i>
defī, defiunt, defiet,	—	defiāt, —	defiēri, <i>to be wanting.</i>
infī, infiunt, —	—	—, —	—, <i>to begin.</i>

SUB. Imp. fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt, — — — fōrent. INF. fōrē.<sup>1</sup>  
 IND. Pres. ōvāt. PART. ōvans, *he rejoices.*  
 IND. Pres. quaesō, quaesūmus,<sup>2</sup> *I pray.*

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs never admit a personal subject. They correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful, *oportet*, it behooves.<sup>3</sup> They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. Strictly Impersonal are only:

Dēcēt, dēcuit,	<i>it becomes.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Pīgēt, { pīguīt,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Lībēt, { libuīt,	<i>it pleases.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Poenītēt, poenituīt,	<i>it causes regret; poenitet me, I repent.</i>
Līcēt, { licuīt,	<i>it is lawful.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Pūdēt, { pūduīt,	<i>it shames.</i>
Līquēt, licuīt,	<i>it is evident.</i> <sup>4</sup>	Taedēt, { pūdītūm est,	<i>it wearies; pertaedēt, pertaesūm est.</i>
Misērēt, misērītūm est,	<i>it excites pity; I pity.</i>		
me misēret,	<i>it behooves.</i>		
Oportēt, oportuīt,			

1. PARTICIPLES are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from LIBET: *libens*, willing; (2) from LICET: *licens*, free; *licitus*, allowed; (3) from POENITET: *poenitens*, penitent; *poenitendus*, to be repented of; (4) from PUDET: *pudens*, modest; *pudendus*, shameful.

2. GERUNDS are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances; *poenitendum*, *pudendū*.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulmināt,	<i>it lightens.</i>	Pluīt (P. pluīt),	<i>it rains.</i>
Grandināt,	<i>it hails.</i>	Rōrāt,	<i>dew falls.</i>
Lāpidāt,	<i>it rains stones.</i>	Tōnāt (tōnuīt),	<i>it thunders.</i>
Lūcescīt,	<i>it grows light.</i>	Vespērascīt,	<i>evening approaches.</i>
Ningīt (ninxīt),	<i>it snows.</i>		

<sup>1</sup> *Forem* = *essem*: *fore* = *futurum esse*. See 204. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Old forms for *quaero* and *quaerimus*.

<sup>3</sup> The real subject is generally an infinitive or clause: *hoc fieri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

<sup>4</sup> These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject. So the Comp. *dēdeet*.

## 301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally.

Thus

## 1. The following :

Accidit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Fit,	<i>it happens.</i>
Apparet,	<i>it appears.</i>	Intérest,	<i>it concerns.</i>
Attinet,	<i>it concerns.</i>	Juvat,	<i>it delights.</i>
Conducit,	<i>it is useful.</i>	Pätet,	<i>it is plain.</i>
Constat,	<i>it is evident.</i>	Pertinet,	<i>it pertains.</i>
Contingit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Pläcet,	<i>it pleases.</i>
Convénit,	<i>it is fitting.</i>	Praestat,	<i>it is better.</i>
Delectat,	<i>it delights.</i>	Praetërit (me),	<i>it escapes (me).</i>
Displicet,	<i>it displeases.</i>	Réfert,	<i>it concerns.</i>
Dölet,	<i>it grieves.</i>	Restat,	<i>it remains.</i>
Evénit,	<i>it happens.</i>	Sübit,	<i>it occurs.</i>
Expëdit,	<i>it is expedient.</i>	Sufficit,	<i>it suffices.</i>
Fallit } (me),	<i>it escapes (me).</i>	Supërest,	<i>it remains.</i>
Fügit }		Väcat,	<i>there is leisure.</i>

2. The Second Periphrastic Conjugation (233) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter :

Mihi scribendum est, *I must write*; tibi scribendum est, *you must write*; illi scribendum est, *he must write*.

3. Verbs which are intransitive in the active, i. e., do not govern the accusative, can only be used impersonally in the passive, and many others may be so used. The participle is then neuter :

Mihi creditur, *it is credited to me, I am believed*; tibi creditur, *you are believed*; illi creditur, *he is believed*; certatur, *it is contended*; curritur, *there is running, people run*; pugnatur, *it is fought, they, we, etc., fight*; scribitur, *it is written*; venitur, *they come, we come, etc.*; vivitur, *we, you, they live*.

## CHAPTER V.

## PARTICLES.

302. THE Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles*: the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

## ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *celeriter currere*, to run swiftly; *tam celer*, so swift; *tam celeriter*, so swiftly.

304. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into four principal classes :

### I. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Hic,	here ;	hūc,	hither ;	hinc,	hence.
illūc,	there ;	illūc,	thither ;	illinc,	thence.
istūc,	there ;	istūc,	thither ;	istinc,	thence.
ūbi,	where ?	quō,	whither ?	undē,	whence ?

### II. ADVERBS OF TIME.

Hōdiē,	to-day.	nondum,	not yet.	saepē,	often.
ibi,	then.	nunc,	now.	sēmēl,	once.
jam,	now.	nunquam,	never.	tum,	then.
jamdiū,	long since.	olim,	formerly.	unquam,	ever.

### III. ADVERBS OF MANNER, MEANS, DEGREE.

Adeo,	so.	paenē,	almost.	sic,	so.
aliter,	otherwise.	pālam,	openly.	ūt,	as.
ita,	so.	prorsus,	wholly.	valdē,	much.
māgis,	more.	rīte,	rightly.	vix,	scarcely.

### IV. ADVERBS OF CAUSE, INFERENCE.

Cūr,	why ?	eo,	for this reason.
quārē,	wherefore.	ideo,	on this account.
quamobrem,	wherefore.	idcirco,	therefore.
quapropter,	wherefore.	proptēreā,	therefore.

305. COMPARISON.—Most Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending *us* of the adjective into *ē* :

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	lofty.
alte,	altius,	altissime,	loftily.
prūdēns,	prudēntior,	prudētissimus,	prudent.
prūdēnter,	prudētius,	prudētissime,	prudently.

1. **MAGIS AND MAXIME.**—When the adjective is compared with *māgis* and *maxime*, the adverb is compared in the same way :

egregius,	māgis egregius,	maxime egregius,	excellent.
egregie,	māgis egregie,	maxime egregie,	excellently.

2. **IRREGULAR COMPARISON.**—When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity :

bōnus,	melior,	optimū,	good.
bōne,	melius,	optime,	well.
māle,	pejus,	pessime,	badly.

3. **DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.**—When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective :



—	deterior,	detrerrimus,	worse.
—	deterius,	detrerrime,	worse.
nōvus,	—	novissimus,	new.
nōve,	—	novissime,	newly.

4. COMPARED.—A few not derived from adjectives are compared :

diu,	diutius,	diutissime,	for a long time.
sæpē,	sæpius,	sæpissime,	often.
sātis,	satius,	—	sufficiently.
nūper,	—	nuperrime,	recently.

5. NOT COMPARED.—Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared: *hic*, here; *nunc*, now; *vulgariter*, commonly.

6. SUPERLATIVES IN *o* OR *um* are used in a few adverbs: *primo*, *primum*, *potissimum*.

## PREPOSITIONS.

306. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me.

For list of prepositions, see 433–435.

307. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Ambi*, *amb*, around, about; *dis*, *di*, asunder; *re*, *red*, back; *se*, aside, apart; *ne* and *ve*, not, are called inseparable prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

308. Conjunctions are mere connectives: *pater et filius*, the father and son; *pater aut filius*, the father or son.

309. Conjunctions are divided, according to their use, into two classes:

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect similar constructions: *labor voluptasque*, labor and pleasure; *Carthaginem cepit ac diruit*, he took and destroyed Carthage.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect subordinate with principal constructions: *haec dum colligunt, effugit*, while they collect these things, he escapes.

### I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

310. Coördinate Conjunctions comprise five subdivisions:

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting union:

*Et*, *quē*, *atquē*, *ac*, *and*. *Etiam*, *quōquē*, *also*. *Nēquē*, *nēc*, *and not*. *Nēquē—nēquē*, *nēc—nēc*, *nēquē—nēc*, *neither—nor*.

2. **DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting separation :

Aut, vël, vë, sîvë (seu), *or*. Aut—aut, vël—vël, *either—or*. Sîvë—sîvë, *either—or*.

3. **ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting opposition :

Séd, autem, vërum, vëro, *but*. At, *but, on the contrary*. Atquî, *but rather*. Cëtërum, *but still*. Tămen, *yet*.

4. **ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting inference :

Ergo, îgîtăr, inde, proinde, îtăque, *hence, therefore*. See also 587, IV. 2.

5. **CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting cause :

Nam, namque, ěnim, etěnim, *for*.

**II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.**

311. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise eight subdivisions :

1. **TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting time :

Quando, quum, *when*. Ut, ŭbi, *as, when*. Quum primum, ut primum, ŭbi primum, sîmul, sîmulac, sîmulatque, *as soon as*. Dum, dōněc, quoad, quamdiu, *while, until, as long as*. Antĕquam, priusquam, *before*. Postĕquam, *after*.

2. **COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting comparison :

Ut, ŭti, sicŭt, sicŭti, *as, so as*. Vĕlŭt, *just as*. Præŭt, proŭt, *according as, in comparison with*. Quam, *as*. Tanquam, quăsi, ŭt sî, ěc sî, vĕlŭt sî, *as if*.

3. **CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting condition :

Sî, *if*. Sî nōn, nîsî, nî, *if not*. Sin, *but if*. Sî quĭdem, *if indeed*. Sî mōdō, dum, mōdō, dummōdō, *if only*.

4. **CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting concession :

Quamquam, licet, quum, *although*. Etsî, tămetŭ, etiamsî, *even if*. Quamvis, quantumvis, quantumlibet, *however much, although*. Ut, *grant that*. Nĕ, *grant that not*.

5. **FINAL CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting purpose or end :

Ut, ŭti, *that, in order that*. Nĕ, nĕvĕ (neu), *that not*. Quō, *that*. Quōmĭnŭs, *that not*.

6. **CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting consequence or result :

Ut, *so that*. Ut nōn, quĭn, *so that not*.

7. **CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS**, denoting cause :

Quiā, quōd, *because*. Quum, *since*. Quōniam, quandō, quandōquīdem, siquīdem, *since indeed*.

### 8. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inquiry :

Nē, nonnē, num, utrum, an, *whether*. An nōn, necne, *or not*.

## INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address. They may express

1. Astonishment : ō, hem, ehem, hui, aha, ātat, pāpae, vah, ēn, eccē.
2. Joy : io, ha, he, eu, ēvoe.
3. Sorrow : vae, hei, heu, zheu, ohē, ah, au, prō or proh.
4. Disgust : ahū, phui, āpāgē.
5. Calling : heus, o, eho, ehodum.
6. Praise : eugē, ejā, hejā.

## CHAPTER VI.

### FORMATION OF WORDS.

313. WORDS may be formed in two ways :

I. By DERIVATION ; i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the stems of other words : *amor*, love, from *amo*, to love.

II. By COMPOSITION ; i. e., by the union of two or more words or their stems : *benevōlens*, well-wishing, from *bene*, well, and *volens*, wishing.

1. SIMPLE and COMPOUND.—Words formed by composition are called *Compounds* ; those not thus formed are called *Simple Words*.

2. PRIMITIVE and DERIVATIVE.—Simple words formed by derivation are called *Derivatives* ; those not thus formed are called *Primitives*.

## DERIVATION OF WORDS.

### N O U N S.

314. Nouns are derived from other *Nouns*, from *Adjectives*, and from *Verbs*.

## I. NOUNS FROM NOUNS.

## 315. DIMINUTIVES generally end in

*ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, cŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum.*

hort-ŭlus,	a small garden,	from	hortus,	garden.
virg-ŭla,	a small branch,	"	virga,	branch.
oppid-ŭlum,	a small town,	"	oppidum,	town.
flos-cŭlus,	a small flower,	"	flos,	flower.
part-i-cŭla,	a small part,	"	pars,	part.
munus-cŭlum,	a small present,	"	munus,	present.

1. **Ulus, ŭla, ŭlum** are generally added to the stems of nouns of Dec. I. and II., and to some of Dec. III.

2. **Olus, ōla, ōlum** are used for *ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum*, when a vowel precedes: *filioŭlus*, little son, from *filius*; *filioŭla*, little daughter, from *filia*; *atriŭlum*, small hall, from *atrium*.

3. **Ellus, ella, ellum; illus, illa, illum**, are sometimes used, especially with primitives of Dec. I. and II., whose stems end in **l, n, or r**; but *el* and *il* in these endings generally displace the last syllable of the stem: *ocellus*, small eye, from *ocŭlus*; *fabella*, short fable, from *fabŭla*; *bacillum*, small staff, from *bacŭlum*.

4. **Oŭlus, cŭla, cŭlum** are used with primitives of Dec. IV. and V., and with some of Dec. III. These are appended.

1) To the *Nominative*: *flos, flos-cŭlus*; *muller, muliercŭla*; *munus, munus-cŭlum*.

2) To the *Stem* with a connecting vowel **i**, sometimes **e**: *pons* (bridge), *ponti-cŭlus*; *pars, particŭla*; *vulpes* (fox), *vulpecŭla*.

3) To the *Stem* of nouns in **o** (G. **onis, inis**), with stem-vowel changed to **u**: *homo* (man), *homun-cŭlus*; *virgo* (maiden), *virguncŭla*. Like nouns in **o**, a few other words form diminutives in *uncŭlus, uncŭla*: *avus* (uncle), *avuncŭlus*; *domus* (house), *domuncŭla*.

5. **Uleus** and **cio** are rare: *equuleus*, a small horse, from *equus*; *homuncio*, a small man, from *homo*.

## 316. PATRONYMICS, or names of descent, generally end in

<b>ides,</b>	<b>ides,</b>	<b>iădes,</b>	<b>ădes,</b>	<b>masculine.</b>
<b>is,</b>	<b>ĕis,</b>	<b>ias,</b>	<b>as,</b>	<b>feminine.</b>
Tantal-ides,	<i>son of Tantalus ;</i>	Tantăl-is,		<i>daughter of Tantalus.</i>
Thes-ides,	<i>son of Theseus ;</i>	Thes-ĕis,		<i>daughter of Theseus.</i>
Laert-iădes,	<i>son of Laertes ;</i>	Laert-ias,		<i>daughter of Laertes.</i>
Thesti-ădes,	<i>son of Thestius ;</i>	Thesti-as,		<i>daughter of Thestius.</i>

1. **Ides** (**I**) and **is** are the common endings.

2. **Ides** (**I**) and **ĕis** are used especially with primitives in *eus*.

3. **Iădes, âdes, and ias, as,** are used principally with primitives in *ius*, and in those in *as* and *es* of Dec. I.—*Aeneas* has *Aeneădes*, masc. and *Aeneăis*, fem.

4. **Ine** and **ōne** are rare feminine endings: *Neptun-ine*, daughter of Neptune; *Acrisi-ōne*, daughter of Acrisius.

317. DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE are often formed with the endings

<b>ārium,</b>	<b>ētum,</b>	<b>ile.</b>	
columb-ārium,	a dovecot,	from	columba.
querc-ētum,	a forest of oaks,	"	quercus.
ov-ile,	a sheepfold,	"	ovis.

1. **Ārium** designates the place where anything is kept, a receptacle: *aerārium*, treasury, from *aes*.

2. **Ētum**, used with names of trees and plants, designates the place where they flourish: *olivētum*, an olive grove, from *olīva*.

3. **Ile**, used with names of animals, designates their stall or fold: *bovile*, stall for cattle, from *bos*.

318. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with

<b>ārius,</b>	<b>io,</b>	<b>ium,</b>	<b>itium,</b>	<b>tus (itus),</b>	<b>ātus.</b>
statu-ārius,		a statuary,	from	statua.	
lud-io,		a player,	"	ludus.	
sacerdot-ium,		priesthood,	"	sacerdos.	
serv-itium,		servitude,	"	servus.	
vir-tus,		virtue,	"	vir.	
consul-ātus,		consulship,	"	consul.	

1. **Ārius** and **io** generally designate one's occupation.

2. **Ium** and **itium** denote office, condition, or collection: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

3. **Tus** and **itus** designate some characteristic or condition: *virtus*, manliness, virtue, from *vir*; *juventus*, youth, from *juvēnis*.

4. **Ātus** denotes rank, office, collection: *consulātus*, consulship, from *consul*; *senātus*, senate, collection of old men, from *senex*.

5. PATRIAL OR GENTILE NOUNS.—See 326. 3.

## II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

319. From Adjectives are formed various *Abstract Nouns* with the endings

<b>ia,</b>	<b>itia,</b>	<b>itas,</b>	<b>itūdo,</b>	<b>imōnia.</b>
diligent-ia,	<i>diligence,</i>		from	diligens.
amic-itia,	<i>friendship,</i>		"	amicus.
bon-itas,	<i>goodness,</i>		"	bonus.
sol-itūdo,	<i>solitude,</i>		"	solus.
acr-imonia,	<i>sharpness.</i>		"	acer.

1. **Itas**, **tas**, **ētas**.—*Itas* sometimes drops *i*: *libertas*, liberty, from *liber*; *ētas* is used with primitives in *ius*: *pietas*, piety, from *pius*. Sometimes

the stem of the adjective is slightly changed: *facilis, facultas*, faculty; *difficilis, difficultas*, difficulty; *potens, potestas*, power; *honestus, honestas*, honesty.

2. **Itūdo** and **itas**.—A few adjectives form abstracts with both these endings: *firmus, firmitas, firmitudo*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* generally change *tus* into *tūdo*: *solicitus, sollicitudo*, solicitude.

3. **Imonia** is rare: *Parsimonia*, parsimony, from *parcus*, changes *c* into *s*.

### III. NOUNS FROM VERBS.

#### 1. From the Present Stem.

320. From the Present stem are formed *Verbal Nouns* with various endings, especially with

or; ium; men, mentum; būlum, cūlum, brum, crum, trum.

am-or,	love,	from	amo.
tīm-or,	fear,	"	timeo.
gaud-ium,	joy,	"	gaudeo.
cert-ā-men,	contest,	"	certo.
orn-ā-mentum,	ornament,	"	orno.
voc-a-būlum,	appellation,	"	voco.
veh-i-cūlum,	vehicle,	"	veho.
fl-a-brum,	blast,	"	flo.
simul-ā-crum,	image,	"	simūlo.
ar-ā-trum,	plough,	"	aro.

1. **Or** designates the *action* or *state* denoted by the verb.

2. **Ium** has nearly the same force, but sometimes designates the *thing done*: *aedificium*, edifice, from *aedifīco*.

3. **Men** and **mentum** generally designate the *means* of an action, or its involuntary *subject*: *flumen*, a stream, something which flows, from *fluo*; *agmen*, an army in motion, from *ago*.

These endings are generally preceded by a connecting vowel: *orn-a-mentum*, ornament; *vest-i-mentum*, clothing. Sometimes the stem itself is shortened or changed: *fragmentum*, fragment, from *frango*; *momentum*, moving force, from *moveo*.

4. **Būlum, cūlum, brum, crum, trum** designate the *instrument* or the *place* of the action: *vehiculūm*, vehicle, instrument of the action, from *veho*; *stabulūm*, stall, place of the action, from *sto*.

These endings generally take a connecting vowel. Sometimes the stem itself is changed: *sepulcrum*, sepulchre, from *sepelio*.

5. **Ulum, ūla**.—*Ulum* for *cūlum* occurs after *c* and *g*: *vincūlum*, a bond, from *vincio*; *cingūlum*, girdle, from *cingo*. *Ūla* also occurs: *regūla*, rule, from *rego*.

6. **Us, a, o** sometimes designate the *agent* of the action: *coquus*, cook, from *coquo*; *scriba*, writer, from *scribo*; *erro*, wanderer, from *erro*.

7. **Ela, ido, igo** and a few other endings also occur: *querēla*, complaint, from *queror*; *cupīdo*, desire, from *cupio*; *origo*, origin, from *orior*.

## 2. From the Supine Stem.

321. From the Supine stem are formed *Verbal Nouns* with the endings

or,	io,	us,	ūra.
amāt-or,	lover,	from	amo.
audit-or,	hearer,	"	audio.
monit-io,	advising,	"	moneo.
audit-io,	hearing,	"	audio.
audit-us,	hearing,	"	audio.
cant-us,	singing,	"	cano.
pict-ūra,	painting,	"	pingo.

1. **Or** denotes the *agent* or *doer*. When *t* precedes, corresponding feminine nouns are generally formed by changing *tor* into *trix*: *victor*, *victrix*.

2. **Io, us,** and **ūra** form *abstract* nouns, and denote the *act* itself.

## ADJECTIVES.

322. Derivative adjectives are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, *Verbs*, and *Adverbs*.

## I. ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS.

## 1. From Common Nouns.

323. **FULNESS.**—Adjectives denoting *fulness*, *abundance*, *supply*, generally end in

Ōsus,	lentus,	ātus,	itus,	ūtus.
anim-ōsus,	<i>full of courage,</i>	from		animus.
op-u-lentus,	<i>opulent,</i>	"		opes.
al-ātus,	<i>winged,</i>	"		ala.
turr-itus,	<i>turreted,</i>	"		turris.
corn-ūtus,	<i>horned,</i>	"		cornu.

1. **Ūsus** is used for *ōsus* in adjectives from nouns of Dec. IV. and in some others: *fructuōsus*, fruitful.

2. **Lentus** takes a connecting vowel, generally *u*, sometimes *o*: *op-u-lentus*, *vin-o-lentus*.

3. **Estus** and **ustus** also occur, but generally with a change in the stem: *modestus*, modest, from *modus*; *justus*, just, from *jus*.

324. **MATERIAL.**—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in

eus, inus, nus, neus; rarely āceus, and iolus.			
aur-eus,	golden,	from	aurum.
cedr-inus,	cedar,	"	cedrus.
popul-nus,	of poplar,	"	popūlus.
popul-neus,	of poplar.	"	popūlus.

papyr-aceus,	of papyrus,	from	papyrus.
later-icius,	of brick,	"	later.

**325. CHARACTERISTIC.**—Adjectives signifying *belonging to, derived from*, generally end in

**ious, ilis, inus, ius; alis, anus, aris, arius, ensis.**

civ-icus,	relating to a citizen,	from	civis.
civ-ilis,	relating to a citizen,	"	civis.
equ-inus,	of, pertaining to a horse,	"	equus.
reg-ius,	royal,	"	rex.
mort-alis,	mortal,	"	mors.
urb-anus,	of, pertaining to a city,	"	urbs.
salut-aris,	salutary,	"	salus.
auxili-arius,	auxiliary,	"	auxilium.
for-ensis,	forensic,	"	forum.

1. **Ticus** is sometimes added to the Nom. : *rus, rus-ticus, rustic.*

2. **Ernus, ester, itimus** and a few other endings also occur : *pater, paternus, paternal; campus, campester, level; mare, maritimus, maritime.*

## 2. From Proper Nouns.

**326. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in**

**anus, ianus, inus; iacus, ious, ius, ensis, iensis; as, aeus, eus.**

Sull-anus,	of Sylla,	from	Sulla.
Rom-anus,	Roman,	"	Roma.
Ciceron-ianus,	Ciceronian,	"	Cicero.
Lat-inus,	Latin,	"	Latium.
Corinth-iacus,	Corinthian,	"	Corinthus.
Corinth-ius,	Corinthian,	"	Corinthus.
Britann-icus,	British,	"	Britannus.
Cann-ensis,	of Cannae,	"	Cannae.
Athen-iensis,	Athenian,	"	Athènes.
Fidén-as,	of Fidenæ,	"	Fidénæ.
Smyrn-aeus,	Smyranean,	"	Smyrna.
Pythagor-eus,	Pythagorean,	"	Pythagoras.

1. **Ianus** is the ending generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons*; but *anus, inus, ius*, and the Greek endings *us* and *ious* also occur.

2. **Ensis** and **cānus** (*anus*) in derivatives from names of countries signify merely *being in the country*, in distinction from *belonging to it*: thus *exercitus Hispaniensis* is an army stationed in Spain, but *exercitus Hispanicus* is a Spanish army.

3. **Patrials.**—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place : *Corinthii*, the Corinthians; *Athenienses*, the Athenians.

## II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

**327. DIMINUTIVES** from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (315) in



*ŭlus, ŭla, ŭlum, oŭlus, oŭla, oŭlum.*

long-ŭlus, a, um,      *rather long,*      from      longus.  
pauper-cŭlus, a, um,      *rather poor,*      "      pauper.

1. *Olus, ellus, and illus* also occur as in nouns.
2. *Oŭlus* is sometimes added to comparatives: *durius-oŭlus*, somewhat hard, from *durius*.

### III. ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS.

#### 328. Verbal adjectives generally end in

*bundus, cundus; idus, ilis, bilis, ax.*

mir-a-bundus,	<i>wondering,</i>	from	miror.
ver-e-cundus,	<i>diffident,</i>	"	vereor.
cal-idus,	<i>warm,</i>	"	caleo.
pav-idus,	<i>fearful,</i>	"	paveo.
doc-ilis,	<i>docile,</i>	"	doceo.
am-a-bilis,	<i>worthy of love,</i>	"	amo.
pugn-ax,	<i>pugnacious,</i>	"	pugno.
aud-ax,	<i>daring,</i>	"	audeo.

1. *Bundus* and *cundus* have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the Part.: *laetabundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *verecundus*, diffident.

These endings take a connecting vowel. See examples.

2. *Idus* retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. *Ilis* and *bilis* denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense: *amabilis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terribilis*, terrible, capable of producing terror.

These endings are generally added to the Present Stem (*bilis* with a connecting vowel), but sometimes to the Supine Stem: *flexibilis*, flexible.

4. *Ax* denotes *inclination*, generally a faulty one: *loquax*, loquacious.

5. *Uus, ŭlus, iŭlus*, and *ivus* also occur:—(1) *uus* in the sense of *ŭlus*: *vacuus*, vacant.—(2) *ulus* in the sense of *ax*: *credŭlus*, credulous.—(3) *iŭlus* and *ivus* (added to Sup. Stem) in the sense of the Perf. Part.: *ficticius*, feigned, from *ſingo* (*ſictum*); *captivus*, captive, from *capio* (*captum*).

### IV. ADJECTIVES FROM ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

#### 329. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:

hodiernus,	<i>of this day,</i>	from	hodie.
contrarius,	<i>contrary,</i>	"	contra.

### VERBS.

#### 330. Derivative Verbs are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs*.

## I. VERBS FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

## 331. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives end in

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. IV.
o,	eo,	io.

## Conjugation I.—Transitive.

armo,	to arm,	from	arma.
cūro,	to cure,	"	cura.
nomīno,	to name,	"	nomen.
caeco,	to make blind,	"	caecus.
libero,	to liberate,	"	liber.

## Conjugation II.—Intransitive.

flōreo,	to bloom,	from	flos.
lūceo,	to shine,	"	lux.
albeo,	to be white,	"	albus.
flāveo,	to be yellow,	"	flavus.

## Conjugation IV.—Generally Transitive.

finio,	to finish,	from	finis.
vestio,	to clothe,	"	vestis.
mollio,	to soften,	"	mollis.
saevio ( <i>intrans.</i> ),	to rage,	"	saevus.

1. **Asco** and **esco** occur in Inceptives. See 332. II.

2. **Deponent**.—Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *dominor*, to domineer, from *dominus*.

## II. VERBS FROM VERBS.

332. Verbs derived from other verbs are—*Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, *Desideratives*, and *Diminutives*.

I. **FREQUENTATIVES** denote *repeated* or *continued* action. They are of the first conjugation and are formed

1. From Supines in **ātum** by changing **ātum** into **īto**:

clam-īto,	to exclaim,	from	clamo,	clamātum.
vol-īto,	to flit,	"	volo,	volātum.

2. From other Supines by changing **um** into **o**; sometimes **īto**:

adjūt-o,	to assist often,	from	adjūvo,	adjūtum.
habīt-o,	to have often,	"	habeo,	habītum.
lect-īto,	to read often,	"	lego,	lectum.

1) **Ito** is sometimes added to the Present Stem of verbs of Conj. III.: *ago, agito*; *quaero, quaerito*.

2) **Esso** and **isso** form derivatives which are generally classed with

*frequentatives*, though they are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of Conj. III.: *facio, facesso*, to do earnestly; *incipio, incipisso*, to begin eagerly. The regular frequentatives sometimes have the same force: *rapio, rapio*, to seize eagerly.

II. INCEPTIVES, or INCHOATIVES, denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in

asco,	esco,	isco.		
gël-asco,	to begin to freeze,	from	gëlo,	äre.
rûb-esco,	to grow red,	"	rûbeo,	ëre.
trëm-isco,	to begin to tremble,	"	trëmo,	ëre.
obdorm-isco,	to fall asleep,	"	obdormio,	ire.

1. **Asco** is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. I., and in a few from nouns and adjectives: *puer, puerasco*, to become a boy.

2. **Esco** is by far the most common ending, and is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. II., and in many from nouns and adjectives: *durus, duresco*, to grow hard.

III. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation and are formed from the Supine by changing **um** into **ûrio**:

ës-ûrio,	to desire to eat,	from	ëdo,	ësum.
empt-ûrio,	to desire to buy,	"	ëmo,	emptum.

IV. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action. They are of the first conjugation and are formed from the Present by changing the ending into **illo**:

cant-illo,	to sing feebly,	from	canto.
conscrib-illo,	to scribble,	"	conscribo.

## ADVERBS.

333. Adverbs are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, Participles, Pronouns, and Prepositions*.

### I. ADVERBS FROM NOUNS.

334. Adverbs are formed from nouns

1. By simply taking a case-ending, especially that of the ablative:

*tempore, tempori*, in time; *forte*, by chance; *jare*, with right, rightly.

2. By taking special endings:

1) *âtim, tim*, denoting MANNER: *grex, gregâtim*, by herds; *fur, furtim*, by stealth.

2) *itus* denoting ORIGIN, SOURCE: *coelum, coelitus*, from heaven; *fundus, funditus*, from the foundation.

## II. ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

335. Adverbs from adjectives and participles generally end in

e,                      er,                      iter.

*doctus, docte*, learnedly; *liber, libere*, freely; *elégans, eleganter*, elegantly; *prudens, prudenter*, prudently; *celer, celeriter*, quickly.

1. **E** is added to the stems of most adjectives and participles of Dec. I. and II. See examples.

2. **Er** and **iter** are added to the stems of adjectives of Dec. III.—**er** to stems in *nt*, **iter** to other stems.—**Er** and **iter** also occur in adverbs from adjectives and participles of Dec. I. and II.

3. **Atim, im, and itus** also occur in adverbs from primitives of Dec. I. and II.: *singuli, singulátim*, one by one; *passus, passim*, everywhere; *divinus, divinitus*, divinely.

4. OTHER FORMS.—Certain forms of adjectives sometimes become adverbs:

1) Neuters in **e, um**, rarely **a**: *facile, easily*; *multum, multa*, much.

2) Ablatives in **a, o, is**: *dextra, on the right*; *consulto, designedly*; *paucis*, briefly, in few words.

3) Accusatives in **am**: *bisariam, in two parts*; *multisariam, in many parts or places (partem, understood)*.

5. NUMERAL ADVERBS.—See 181.

## III. ADVERBS FROM PRONOUNS.

336. Various adverbs are formed from Pronouns: thus from *hic, ille, and iste* are formed

<i>hic,</i>	<i>here;</i>	<i>huc,</i>	<i>hither;</i>	<i>hinc,</i>	<i>hence.</i>
<i>illic,</i>	<i>there;</i>	<i>illuc,</i>	<i>thither;</i>	<i>illinc,</i>	<i>thence.</i>
<i>istic,</i>	<i>there;</i>	<i>istuc,</i>	<i>thither;</i>	<i>istinc,</i>	<i>thence.</i>

## IV. ADVERBS FROM PREPOSITIONS.

337. A few adverbs are formed from Prepositions, or are at least related to them:

*intra, intro*, within; *ultra, ultro*, beyond; *in, intus*, within; *sub, subtus*, beneath.

## COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

338. The elements of a compound may unite in three distinct ways:

I. The two elements unite without change of form: *decem-viri*, the decemviri, ten men; *ab-eo*, to go away; *ante-pōno*, to place before.

II. One element, generally the first, is put in an oblique case, generally the genitive, dependent upon the other: *legis-lātor*, legislator, from *lex*, *legis*, and *lātor*.

III. The stem of the first element unites with the second element, either with or without a connecting vowel—generally *i*, sometimes *e* or *u*: *bell-i-gēro*, to wage war, from *bellum* and *gēro*, with connecting vowel; *magn-animus*, magnanimous, from *magnus* and *animus*, without connecting vowel.

1. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION admit the following *euphonic changes*.

**A**, **ab**, **abs**:—**a** before *m* and *v*; **abs** before *c*, *p*, *t*; **ab** before the vowels and the other consonants: *a-mitto*; *abs-condo*; *ab-eo*, *ab-jicio*. But **abs** before *p* drops *b*: *as-porto* for *abs-porto*. **Ab** becomes *au* in *au-fēro* and *au-fugio*.

**Ad**,—unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*; *d* generally assimilated before the other consonants, but changed to *c* before *q* and dropped before *gn* and often before *sc*, *sp*, and *st*; *ad-eo*, *ad-do*, *ad-jungo*; *af-fēro*, *al-ligo*; *ac-quirō*, *a-gnosco* (ad and *gnosco*), *a-scendo*.

**Ante**,—unchanged, except in *anti-ctpo* and *anti-sto*.

**Circum**,—unchanged, except in *circu-eo*.

**Com** for *cum*,—(1) unchanged before *b*, *m*, *p*: *com-bibo*, *com-mitto*,—(2) **m** generally dropped before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: *co-eo*, *co-haereo*, *co-gnosco*,—(3) **m** assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: *col-ligo*, *cor-rumpo*,—(4) **m** changed to *n* before the other consonants: *con-fēro*, *con-gēro*.

**Ex**, **ex**:—**ex** before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, and with assimilation before *f*; **e** generally before the other consonants and sometimes before *p* and *s*: *ex-eo*, *ex-pōno*, *ef-fēro*; *e-ducō*, *e-ligo*, *e-pōto*, *e-scendo*. *S* after **ex** is often dropped: *exspecto* or *expecto*.

**In**,—**n** assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*, changed to *m* before *b*, *p*; dropped before *gn*; in other situations unchanged: *il-lūdo*, *im-mitto*; *im-buo*, *im-pōno*; *i-gnosco*; *in-eo*, *in-ducō*.

**Inter**,—unchanged, except in *intel-ligo*.

**Ob**,—**b** assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; in other situations generally unchanged: *oc-curro*, *of-ficio*, *og-gēro*, *op-pōno*; *ob-jicio*, *ob-sto*. But *b* is dropped in *o-mitto*, and an old form *obs* occurs in a few words: *obs-olesco*, *os-tendo* for *obs-tendo* (*b* dropped).

**Per**,—unchanged, except in *pel-licio*, *pel-lāceo*, and *pe-jēro*.

**Post**,—unchanged, except in *po-moerium* and *po-meridiānus*.

<sup>1</sup> Except of course euphonic changes.

**Pro**,—sometimes *prod* before a vowel: *prod-eo*, *prod-igo*.

**Sub**,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, g, p*, generally before *m* and *r*; dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged; *suc-cumbo*, *su-spicio* for *sub-spicio*; *sub-eo*, *sub-dūco*. An old form *subs* shortened to *sus* occurs in a few words: *sus-cipio*, *sus-pendo*.

**Trans**,—drops *s* before *s*, and often *ns* before *d, j, n*: *trans-eo*, *trans-fēro*; *tran-silio* for *trans-silio*; *tra-do* for *trans-do*; *tra-jicio* for *trans-jicio*; *tra-no* for *trans-no*.

- 2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS (307) also admit *euphonic changes*:

**Ambi, amb**:—*amb* before vowels; *ambi, am, or an* before consonants: *amb-igo*; *ambi-dens*, *am-pūto*, *an-quīro*.

**Dis, di**:—*dis* before *c, p, q, t, s* before a vowel, and, with assimilation, before *f*; *di* in most other situations; *dis-curro*, *dis-pōno*, *dif-fluo*; *di-dūco*, *di-mōveo*. But *dir* occurs in *dir-īmo* and *dir-īdeo* (*dis* and *habeo*), and both *dis* and *di* occur before *j*: *dis-jungo*, *di-judico*.

**Re, red**:—*red* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-do*; *re* in other situations: *red-eo*, *red-igo*, *red-hīdeo*; *re-clūdo*, *re-vello*.

## COMPOUND NOUNS.

339. In compound nouns the first part is generally a noun, but sometimes an adjective, adverb, or preposition; the second part is a verb or noun:

art-ī-fex,	artist,	from	ars and facio.
capr-ī-cornus,	capricorn,	"	caper and cornu.
aequ-ī-noctium,	equinox,	"	aequus and nox.
ne-mo,	nobody,	"	ne and homo.
pro-nōmen,	pronoun,	"	pro and nomen.

1. GENITIVE IN COMPOUNDS.—In compounds of two nouns, or of a noun and an adjective, the first part is often a genitive: *legis-lātor*, legislator; *juris-consultus*, lawyer.

2. COMPOUNDS IN **fex**, **cen**, and **cōla** are among the most important compounds of nouns and verbs; *fex* from *fūcio*; *cen* from *cano*; *cōla* from *colo*; *art-ī-fex*, artist; *tub-ī-cen*, trumpeter; *agr-ī-cōla*, husbandman.

## COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

340. In compound adjectives the first part is generally a noun, adjective, or preposition, and the second a noun, adjective, or verb:

lēt-ī-fer,	death-bearing,	from	lētum and fēro.
magn-ānimus,	magnanimous,	"	magnus and animus.
per-fācilis,	very easy,	"	per and fācilis.

## COMPOUND VERBS.

341. In compound verbs the first part is a noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or preposition, and the second is a verb:

aed-ĭ-fico,	to build,	from	aedes and facio.
ampl-ĭ-fico,	to enlarge,	"	amplus and facio.
pat-ĕ-fācio,	to open,	"	pateo and facio.
bene-fācio,	to benefit,	"	bene and facio.
ab-eo,	to go away,	"	ab and eo.

1. Two VERBS.—When the first part is a verb, the second is always *facio* as above; *pat-e-facio*.

2. NOUN or ADJECTIVE and VERB.—When the first part is a noun or adjective, the second part is generally, but not always, *fācio* or *āgo*. These verbs then become *fīco* and *īgo* of Conj. I.: *aed-ĭ-fīco*, *āre*, to build; *nav-īgo*, *āre*, to sail, from *navis* and *ago*.

3. VOWEL CHANGES.—Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes.

1) *A* short and *ĕ* generally become *ī*: *hābeo*, *ad-hābeo*; *tēneo*, *con-tīneo*. But *ā* sometimes becomes *ē* or *u*: *carpo*, *de-cep̄po*; *calco*, *con-culco*.

2) *Ac* becomes *ī*: *caedo*, *in-cīdo*.

3) *Au* generally becomes *o* or *u*: *plaudo*, *ex-plōdo*; *claudo*, *in-clūdo*.

4. CHANGES IN PREPOSITIONS.—See 333. 1 and 2.

## COMPOUND ADVERBS.

342. Compound Adverbs are variously formed, but most of them may be divided into three classes:

1. Such as consist of an oblique case with its preposition: *ad-mōdum*, very, to the full measure; *ob-vīam*, in the way.

2. Such as consist of a noun with its adjective: *ho-dis* (*hos* and *die*), to-day, on this day; *qua-re*, wherefore, by which thing.

3. Such as consist of two particles: *ad-huc*, hitherto; *inter-dum*, sometimes; *in-sūper*, moreover.

PART THIRD.  
S Y N T A X.

---

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

---

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound* :

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought :

*Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic.*

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts so related that one is dependent upon the other :

*Dñec ẽris fẽlix, multos nũmẽrãbis ãmĩcos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.*

1. CLAUSES.—In this example two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous*," and (2) "*You will number many friends*," are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), so long as you are prosperous. The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

2. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multos numerabis amicos*—is called the *Principal Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it—*donec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate Clause*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts :

*Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, The sun descends and the mountains are shaded. Virg.*

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

*Miltiades accusatus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.*



## II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

*Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty? Cic.*

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

4) Questions with *an*. See 2. 4) below.

2. DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Double or disjunctive questions offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms :

1) The first clause has *utrum, num, or ne*, and the second *an* :

*Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, Is that your fault or ours? Cic.*

2) The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an or ne* :

*Elloquar an sileam, Shall I utter it, or keep silence? Virg.*

3) When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annon or necne* :

*Sunt haec tua verba necne, Are these your words or not? Cic.*

4) By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or* :

*An hoc timemus, Or do we fear this? Liv.*

## III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

*Iustitiam cole, Cultivate justice. Cic.*

## IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

*Reliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left! Cic.*

Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

## SECTION II.

### SIMPLE SENTENCES.

### ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

*Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.*

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

**348.** The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōritur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

**349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.**—The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

**350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.**—The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex :

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.

#### SIMPLE SUBJECT.

**351.** The subject of a sentence must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun :

*Rex decrevit, The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego ad te scribo, I write to you.* Cic. *Video idem valet, The word video has the same meaning.* Quint.

For the omission of the subject, see 367. 2.

#### COMPLEX SUBJECT.

**352.** The subject admits the following modifiers :

##### I. An ADJECTIVE :

*Pōpulus Rōmānus decrevit, The Roman people decreed.* Cic.

**II. A NOUN.**—This may be in apposition with the subject, in the genitive, or in an oblique case with a preposition :

*Cluilius rex mōritur, Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. *Rex Rūtulōrum, the king of the Rutuli.* Liv. *Liber de officiis, The book on duties.* Cic.

1. **MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.**—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

2. **APPOSITIVE AND ITS SUBJECT.**—The noun in apposition with another is called an *Appositive*, and the other noun is called the *Subject* of the appositive.

3. **COMPLEX MODIFIERS.**—Modifiers may become complex :

*Cluilius Albānus rex, Cluilius the Alban king.* Liv. Here *Albānus rex* is a complex modifier.

4. **ADVERBS WITH NOUNS.**—Sometimes adverbs and adverbial expressions occur as modifiers of nouns:

Non ignāri sūmus ante mālōrum, *We are not ignorant of past misfortunes.* Virg. Victōria apud Cnidum, *The victory at Cnidus.* Nep.

### SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. Tu es testis, *You are a witness.* Cic. Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum* several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. See 362. 2. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.

2. *Sum* with an *Adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia recte sunt, *All things are right.* Cic.

### COMPLEX PREDICATE.

354. I. The **VERB** admits the following modifiers:

#### I. OBJECTIVE MODIFIERS:

1. A *Direct Object* in the **Accusative**—that upon which the action is directly exerted:

Miltiādes Athēnas liberāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

2. An *Indirect Object* in the **Dative**—that *to* or *for* which something is or is done:

Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes.

3. *Combined Objects* consisting of two or more cases:

Me rogāvit sententiam, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Pons ūter hostibus dedit, *The bridge furnished a passage to the enemy.* Liv.

#### II. ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS:

##### 1. *Adverbs*:

Bella feliciter gessit, *He waged wars successfully.* Cic.

Adverbs may also be modified by other adverbs and rarely by an oblique case of a noun:

Valde vehēmenter dixit, *He spoke very vehemently.* Cic. Congruenter naturae vivit, *He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

2. *Adverbial Expressions*—consisting of oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions:

In his castris moritur, *He dies (where?) in this camp.* Liv. Vere convēnere, *They assembled (when?) in the spring.* Liv.

355. II. The **PREDICATE NOUN** is modified in the various ways specified for the subject (352):

Brūtus hōmo magnus evāsērat, *Brutus had become a great man.* Cic.  
Somnus est imāgo mortis, *Sleep is the image of death.* Cic.

356. III. The PREDICATE ADJECTIVE admits the following modifiers :

I. An ADVERB :

Sātis hūmīlis est, *He is sufficiently humble.* Liv.

II. A NOUN in an oblique case :

1. *Genitive* : Avīdi laudis fūerunt, *They were desirous of praise.* Cic.
2. *Dative* : Omni aetāti mors est commūnia, *Death is common to every age.* Cic.
3. *Ablative* : Digni sunt āmicitiā, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

### SECTION III.

#### COMPLEX SENTENCES.

357. A Complex sentence differs from a Simple one only in taking a sentence or clause as one (or more) of its elements :

I. A Sentence as an Element :

"Civis Rōmānus sum" audiēbātur, *"I am a Roman citizen" was heard.* Cic. Aliquis dicat mihi : "Nulla hābes vitia ;" *Some one may say to me, "Have you no faults ?"* Hor.

1. In the first example, an entire sentence—*Civis Rōmānus sum*—is used as the *Subject* of a new sentence ; and in the second example, the sentence—*Nulla habes vitia*—is the *Object* of *dicat*.

2. Any sentence may be thus quoted and introduced without change of form as an element in a new sentence.

II. A Clause as an Element :

Traditum est Hōmērum caecum fuisse, *That Homer was blind has been handed down by tradition.* Cic. Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. In these examples the clauses used as elements have undergone certain changes to adapt them to their subordinate rank. The clause *Hōmērum caecum fuisse*, the subject of *traditum est*, if used as an independent sentence, would be *Hōmērus caecus fuit* ; and the clause *Quālis sit ānīmus*, the object of *nescit*, would be *Quālis est ānīmus*, What is the soul ?

2. Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

1) Infinitive with Subject Accusative :

Hoc majōres dicere audīvi, *I have heard that our ancestors said this.* Cic.

2) Dependent Questions :

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

3) Relative Clauses :

Sententia, quae tūtissima vidēbātur, vicit, *The opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

4) Clauses with Conjunctions or Adverbs :

Mos est ut dicat, *It is his custom to speak.* Cic. Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic. Ut optasti, ita est, *As you have desired, so is it.* Cic.

COMPLEX SENTENCES—ABRIDGED.

358. Infinitive Clauses sometimes drop their subjects :

Diligi jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic. Vivēre est cogitare, *To live is to think.* Cic. See 545. 2.

359. Participles often supply the place of subordinate clauses :

Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing, or while he was writing.* Cic. Servio regnante, viguerunt, *They flourished in the reign of Servius, or while Servius reigned.* Cic.

SECTION IV.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

360. Compound sentences express two or more independent thoughts, and are of five varieties :

I. COPULATIVE SENTENCES—in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

II. DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES—in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered :

Audendum est aliquid aut omnia patiēda sunt, *Something must be risked or all things must be endured.* Liv.

III. ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES—in which the thoughts are opposed to each other :

Gyges a nullo vidēbatur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

IV. ILLATIVE SENTENCES—which contain an inference :

Nihil lāboras, ideo nihil hābes; *You do nothing, therefore you have nothing.* Phaed.

V. CAUSAL SENTENCES—which contain a cause or reason :

Difficile est consilium, sum enim sōlus; *Consultation is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic.

1. The **CONNECTIVES** generally used in these several classes of compounds are the corresponding classes of conjunctions, i. e., *copulative, disjunctive, adversative, illative, and causal* conjunctions. See 310. But the connective is often omitted.

2. **DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS** have special connectives. See 346. II. 2.

### COMPOUND SENTENCES—ABRIDGED.

**361.** Compound sentences are generally abridged when their members have parts in common. Such sentences have compound elements :

#### 1. Compound Subjects :

*Aborigines Trojānique dūcem amīsēre, The Aborigines and the Trojans lost their leader.* Liv.

The two members here united are: *Aborigines dūcem amīsēre* and *Trojāni dūcem amīsēre*; but as they have the same predicate, *dūcem amīsēre*, that predicate is expressed but once, and the two subjects are united into the compound subject: *Aborigines Trojānique*.

#### 2. Compound Predicates :

*Rōmāni pārant consultantque, The Romans prepare and consult.* Liv.

#### 3. Compound Modifiers :

*Athēnas tōtamque Graeciam libērāvit, He liberated Athens and all Greece.* Nep.

---

## CHAPTER II.

### SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

---

#### SECTION I.

#### AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

#### RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

**362.** A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE :<sup>1</sup>

*Ego sum nuntius, I am a messenger.* Liv. *Servius rex est dēclārātus, Servius was declared king.* Liv. *Orestem se esse dixit, He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. See 353.

1. **GENDER AND NUMBER.**—Predicate Nouns also agree with their Subjects

---

<sup>1</sup> For Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its subject, see 401.

For convenience of reference the *Rules of Syntax* will be presented in a body on page 274.

1) In *Gender*, if capable of distinguishing gender:

Usus māgister est, *Experience is an instructor*. Cic. Histōria est māgistra (not magister), *History is an instructress*. Cic.

2) Generally in *Number* as in the examples under the rule. But with many exceptions:

Captivi praeda fuērunt, *The captives had been (made) booty*. Liv. Iis omnia est, *He is everything (all things) to them*. Liv.

Two or more Singular predicate nouns may of course be used with a Plural subject, or a Plural predicate with two or more Singular subjects:

Cornēlius et Semprōnius consules fuērunt, *Cornelius and Sempronius were consuls*. Liv.

2. WITH FINITE VERBS.—Predicate Nouns are most frequent

1) With *Sum* and a few intransitive verbs: *evādo, exsisto, appāreo* and the like:

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger*. Liv. Hōmo magnus ēvāsērat, *He had become (turned out) a great man*. Cic. Exstītit vindex libertātis, *He became (stood forth) the defender of liberty*. Cic.

2) With Passive verbs of *appointing, making, naming, regarding, esteeming*, and the like:

Servius rex est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared king*. Liv. Mundus cīvitas existimātur, *The world is regarded as a state*. Cic.

(1) In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations.

(2) For *Predicate Accusatives*, see 373. 1.

3. WITH INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, ETC.—Predicate Nouns are used not only with finite verbs, but also

1) With *Infinitives*: Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes*. Cic.

For *Predicate Nominative* after *esse*, see 547.

2) With *Participles*: Dēclārātus rex Numa, *Numa having been declared king*. Liv.

3) Without *Verb* or *Participle*: Cāninio consule, *Caninius being consul, or when Caninius was consul*. See 431.

## RULE II.—Appositives.

### 363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic. See 352. 2.

1. In *GENDER* and *NUMBER* the appositive conforms to the same rule as the predicate noun. See 362. 1.

2. *SUBJECT OMITTED*.—The subject of the appositive is often omitted:

Hostis hostem occidēre vōlui, *I (ego understood) an enemy wished to slay an enemy*. Liv. Tua dōmus cīvīs, *the house of you a citizen (lit. your house of a citizen)*. Cic.

8. FORCE OF APPOSITIVES.—Appositives are generally kindred in force to Relative clauses, but sometimes to Temporal clauses :

*Cluilius rex, Cluilius (who was) the king.* Liv. *Furius puer didicit, Furius learned, when a boy, or as a boy.* Cic.

## SECTION II.

### NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. <sup>1</sup>

365. KINDRED CASES.—The cases naturally arrange themselves in pairs: the Nominative and Vocative require no governing word; the Accusative and Dative are the regular cases of the Object of an action; the Genitive has usually the force of an Adjective, and the Ablative that of an Adverb.

366. NOMINATIVE.—The Nominative is either the Subject of a sentence or in agreement with another Nominative.

### RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :<sup>2</sup>

*Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned.* Liv. *Pātent portae, The gates are open.* Cic. *Rex vicit, The king conquered.* Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, or some word or clause used substantively, especially pronouns :

*Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, unless expressed for contrast or emphasis :

*Significāmus quid sentiāmus, We indicate what we think.* Cic. *Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrānos intrōdūcitis; I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

<sup>1</sup> This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

<sup>2</sup> For the Subject of the Infinitive, see 545. For the agreement of the verb with its subject, see 460.



2) When it means men, people: *Fërunt*, They say.

3) When it can be readily supplied from the context:

*Căto, quoad vixit, laude crēvit, Cato rose in esteem, as long as he lived.* Nep.

4) When the verb is impersonal: *Pluit*, It rains.

3. VERB OMITTED.—The Verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially in exclamations with—*en*, *ecce*, *O*:

*Ecce tuae littērae, Lo your letter (comes).* Cic.

368. AGREEMENT.—A Nominative in agreement with another nominative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive. See 362 and 363.

For the Predicate Nominative after a verb with *esse*, see 547.

### SECTION III.

#### VOCATIVE.

#### RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative:

*Perge, Laeli; Proceed, Laelius.* Cic. *Quid est, Cătilina; Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. *Tuum est, Servi, regnum; The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv. *O dii immortăles, O immortal gods.* Cic.

1. WITH INTERJECTIONS.—The vocative is used both with and without interjections.

2. NOMINATIVE FOR VOCATIVE.—In poetry and sometimes in prose, the nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the vocative:

*Audi tu, pōpulus Albănus; Hear ye, Alban people.* Liv. Here *populus* may be treated as a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, though it may also be treated as an irregular Voc. See 45. 5. 8).

3. VOCATIVE FOR NOMINATIVE.—Conversely the vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the nominative:

*Quibus, Hector, ab ōris expectāte vėnis; From what shores, Hector, do you anxiously awaited come?* Virg.

### SECTION IV.

#### ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used

- I. As the Direct Object of an Action.
- II. As the Subject of an Infinitive.
- III. In Agreement with another Accusative.
- IV. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions.
- V. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

## I. ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT.

## RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificavit, *God made the world.* Cic. Libera rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pöpäli Römäni sälütē defendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

1. DIRECT OBJECT.—This may be

1) The *Object*, person or thing, on which the action of the verb is directly exerted :

Athēnas libērāvit, *He liberated Athens.* Nep.

2) The *Effect* of the action, i. e., the object produced by it :

Sol diē conficit, *The sun makes the day.* Cic.

3) The *Cognate Accusative*. Many verbs, generally intransitive, sometimes become so far transitive as to admit an accusative of *cognate* or *kindred* meaning :

Eam vitam vivēre, *to live that life.* Cic. Mirum somniāre somnium, *to dream a wonderful dream.* Plaut. Servitūtem servire, *to serve a servitude.* Ter.

(1) This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective as in the first two examples.

(2) Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives often supply the place of the Cognate accusative :

Eādem peccat, *He makes the same mistakes.* Cic. Hoc stūdet ūnum, *He studies this one thing* (this one study). Hor. Id assentior, *I make this assent.* Cic. Idem glōriāri, *to make the same boast.* Cic.

2. WITH OR WITHOUT OTHER CASES.—The direct object is used with all transitive verbs. Accordingly those transitive verbs which admit any other oblique cases, admit also an accusative in connection with such cases. See 384. 410. 419.

3. TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.—Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. See 385. Conversely some verbs intransitive in English are often transitive in Latin ; especially verbs denoting

1) *Feeling or Mental State* : despero, to despair of ; dōleo, to grieve for ; gēmo, to sigh over ; horreo, to shudder at ; lācrīmo, to weep over ; moereo, to mourn over ; miror, to wonder at ; rīdeo, to laugh at ; sitio, to thirst for, etc.

Hōnōres desperat, *He despairs of honors.* Cic. Haec gēmēbant, *They were sighing over these things.* Cic. Dētrīmenta ridet, *He laughs at losses.* Hor.

2) *Taste or Smell* : oleo, sūpio, and their compounds, both literally and figuratively :

Olet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes.* Ter. Oratio rēddet antiquitatem, *The oration smacks of antiquity.* Cic.

#### 4. COMPOUNDS OF PREPOSITIONS.—We notice two classes :

1) Many compounds become transitive by the force of the prepositions with which they are compounded, especially compounds of *circum*, *per*, *præter*, *trans*, *super*, and *subter* :

Murmur concionem pervāsīt, *A murmur went through the assembly.* Liv. Rhenum transiērunt, *They crossed (went across) the Rhine.* Caes.

2) Many compounds, without becoming strictly transitive, admit an Accus. dependent upon the preposition :

Circumstant sēnātum, *They stand around the senate.* Cic.

#### 5. CLAUSE AS OBJECT.—An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object :

Impēre cupiunt, *They desire to rule.* Just. Sentimus calēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

#### 6. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—When a verb takes the passive construction

1) The direct object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, and

2) The subject of the active becomes the Ablative of Cause (414) or the Ablative of Agent with *a* or *ab* (414. 5).

Thēbāni Lysandrum occiderunt, *The Thebans slew Lysander.* Passive : Lysander occisus est a Thēbānis, *Lysander was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

#### 7. ACCUSATIVE WITH VERBAL ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS.—Verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative :

Vitābundus castra, *avoiding the camp.* Liv. Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem, *What care have you of this?* Plaut.

#### 372. TWO ACCUSATIVES.—Two accusatives without any connective, expressed or understood, may depend upon the same verb. They may denote

1. The same person or thing.

2. Different persons or things.

Any number of accusatives connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, may of course depend upon the same verb.

### RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

#### 373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hāmilcārem impēratōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep. Ancum rēgem pōpulus creāvit, *The people elected Ancus king.* Liv. Summum consiliū appellārunt Senātum, *They called their highest council Senate.* Cic. Se praestitit prōpugnātōrem libertātis, *He showed*

*himself the champion of liberty.* Cic. Flaccum habuit collëgam, *He had Flaccus as colleague.* Nep.

1. **PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—One of the two accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative*.

2. **VERBS WITH PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—The verbs which most frequently admit a Direct Object with a Predicate Accusative are verbs of

1) *Making, electing*: facio, efficio, reddo,—creo, eligo, designo, declaro.

2) *Calling, regarding*: appello, nômino, vöco, dico,—arbitror, existimo, dico, jülico, habeo, puto.

3) *Showing*: praesto, praeseo, exhibeo.

3. **ADJECTIVE AS PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—The Predicate Accusative may be either Substantive or Adjective:

Hömines caecos reddit ävartia, *Avarice renders men blind.* Cic.

4. **PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.**—In the Passive these verbs take two Nominatives, a *Subject* and *Predicate*, corresponding to the Two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius rex est declärätus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv. See 862. 2. 2.)

## RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of **ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING,** and **CONCEALING,** admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Me sententiam rogävit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic. Ego sententiam rogätus sum, *I was asked my opinion.* Cic. Philösofia nos res omnes döcuit, *Philosophy has taught us all things.* Cic. Artes edoctus fuerat, *He had been taught the arts.* Liv. Non te celävi sermönem, *I did not conceal from you the conversation.* Cic.

1. **PERSON AND THING.**—One accusative generally designates the *person*, the other the *thing*: with the Passive the accusative of the Person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained: see examples.

2. **VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES.**—Those most frequently so used are

1) *Regularly*: cëlo—döceo, edöceo, dedöceo.

2) *Sometimes*: öro, exöro, rögo, interrögo, percontor, flägito, posco, rëposco.

3. **OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS** also occur:

1) *Cëlo*: Ablative with a preposition:

Me de hoc libro celävit, *He kept me ignorant of this book.* Cic. Passive: Accus. of Neuter pronoun or Abl. with *de*: Hoc celäri, *to be kept ignorant of this.* Ter. Celäri de consilio, *to be kept ignorant of the plan.* Cic. The Dative is rare: Id Alcibiädi celäri non pötuit, *This could not be concealed from Alcibiades.* Nep.

2) *Verbs of Teaching*: Ablative with or without a preposition:

De sua re me döcet; *He informs me in regard to his case.* Cic. Socrätëm fidibus döcuit, *He taught Socrates (with) the lyre.* Cic.

3) *Verbs of Asking, Demanding*: Ablative with a preposition:

Hæc a me poscère, *to demand this from me.* Cic. Te hisdem de rebus interrôgo, *I ask you in regard to the same things.* Cic.

4) *Peto, postulo, and quaero* take the Ablative of the person with a preposition:

Pacem a Rômânis petierunt, *They asked peace from the Romans.* Cæsar.

## 4. INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE AS ACCUSATIVE OF THING:

Te sapiere docet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic.

## 5. A NEUTER PRONOUN OR ADJECTIVE as a second accusative occurs with many verbs which do not otherwise take two accusatives:

Hoc te hortor, *I exhort you to this, I give you this exhortation.* Cic. Ea monemur, *We are admonished of these things.* Cic.

6. COMPOUND VERBS.—A few compounds of *trans, circum, ad,* and *in* admit two accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Iberum copias trajecit, *He led his forces across the Ebro.* Liv.

In the Passive, not only these, but even other compounds sometimes admit an Accus. depending upon the preposition:

Praetervêhor ostia Pantagiae, *I am carried by the mouth of the Pantagia.* Virg.

7. POETIC ACCUSATIVE.—In poetry, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo, exuo, cingo, accingo, induco,* etc.—sometimes take in the Passive an accusative in imitation of the Greek:

Galeam induitur, *He puts on his helmet.* Virg. Intûlle ferrum cingitur, *He girds on his useless sword.* Virg. Virgines longam indutae vestem, *maidens attired in long robes.* Liv.

## II. ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

## 375. The Accusative is used as the Subject of an Infinitive; see 545:

Plâtônem fêrunt in Itáliam vênisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic.

*Plâtônem* is the subject of *vênisse*.

## III. ACCUSATIVE IN AGREEMENT WITH AN ACCUSATIVE.

## 376. The Accusative in agreement with another Accusative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive:

Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. Apud Hêrôdotum, patrem histôriæ, *in Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. See 362 and 363.

## IV. ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE.

377. In an Adverbial sense the Accusative is used either with or without Prepositions.

1. WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 433.
2. WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS.—The Adverbial use of the Accusative without Prepositions is presented in the following rules.

## RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative :

Römulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambulare, *to walk five miles.* Cic. Pædes octoginta distare, *to be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quatuor pædes alta, *snow four feet deep.* Liv. But

1. DURATION OF TIME is sometimes expressed by the Ablative or the Accusative with a Preposition :

1) By the Ablative : Pugnatum est hōris quinque, *The battle was fought five hours.* Caes.

2) By the Accusative with Preposition : Per annos viginti certatum est, *The war was waged for twenty years.* Liv.

2. DISTANCE is sometimes expressed by the Ablative :

Millibus passuum sex consedit, *He encamped at the distance of six miles.* Caes. Sometimes with a preposition : Ab millibus passuum duobus, *at the distance of two miles.* Caes.

## RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Rōmam redit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquīnios, *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic. But

1. The Accusative with *Ad* occurs :

1) In the sense of—to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of : Tres sunt viae ad Mūtīnam, *There are three roads to Mutina.* Cic. Ad Zāmam pervēnit, *He came to the vicinity of Zama.* Sall.

2) In contrast with a or ab :

A Diānio ad Sinōpen, *from Dianium to Sinope.* Cic.

2. Urbs or Oppidum with a Preposition :

Pervēnit in oppidum Cirtam, *He came into the town of Cirta.* Sall.

3. Like Names of Towns are used

1) The Accusatives *dōmum, dōmos, rus*:

*Scīpio dōmum rēductus est, Scipio was conducted home.* Cic. *Dōmos abducti, led to their homes.* Liv. *Rus ēvōlāre, to hasten into the country.* Cic.

## 2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of Islands and Peninsulas:

*Lātōna confūgit Dēlum, Latona fled to Delos.* Cic. *Pervēnit Chersōnēsūm, He went to the Chersonesus.* Nep.

## 4. Names of Other Places used as the limit of motion are generally in the Accusative with a Preposition:

*In Asiā rēdit, He returns into Asia.* Nep.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

*Aegyptum prōfūgit, He fled to Egypt.* Cic. *Itāliam vēnit, He came to Italy.* Virg. *Ibimus Afros, We shall go to the Africans.* Virg. *Lāvīnia vēnit litōra, He came to the Lavinian shores.* Virg.

## 5. A Poetic Dative for the accusative with or without a preposition occurs:

*It clāmor coelo (for ad coelum), The shout ascends to heaven.* Virg.

**RULE X.—Accusative of Specification.****380. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application:**

*Cāpita velāmur, We have our heads veiled (are veiled as to our heads).* Virg. *Sub humeros amictus, with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud.* Hor. *Miles fractus membra labōre, the soldier with limbs shattered with labor (broken as to his limbs).* Hor. *Aenēas os deo similis, Aeneas like a god in appearance.* Virg.

1. In a strict sense, the Accusative of Specification generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See 429.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem, vicem, nihil*, of *id* and *genus* in *id tempus, id aetatis* (at this time, age), *id genus, omne genus, quod genus* (for *eius generis*, etc.), etc.; also of *secus, libra*, and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives; *hoc, illud, id, quid* (454, 2), *multum, summum, cetera, reliqua*, etc. In this sense, it is common in prose.

*Maximam partem lacte vivunt, They live mostly (as to the largest part) upon milk.* Caes. *Nihil moti sunt, They were not at all moved.* Liv. *Locus id temporis vacuus erat, The place was at this time vacant.* Cic. *Aliquid id genus scribere, to write something of this kind.* Cic. *Quaerit, quid possint, He inquires how powerful they are.* Caes. *Quid venis, Why do you come?*

**V. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.****RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.**

**381. The Accusative either with or without an Interjection may be used in Exclamations:**

Heu me misērum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic. Me misērum, *Me miserable!*<sup>1</sup> Cic. O fallācem spem, *O deceptive hope!* Cic. Me caecum, *Blind that I am!* Cic. Pro deōrum fidem, *In the name of the gods!* Cic. But

1. An Adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this accusative, as in the examples.

2. *O, thou, heu* are the Interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

3. Other Cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Jūpiter, *O holy Jupiter.* Cic. Infelix Dido, *Unhappy Dido.* Virg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement: En dextra, *Lo the right hand* (there is, or that is the right hand)! Virg. Ecce tuae littērae, *Lo your letter* (comes)! Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *hei, vas*, and sometimes after *ecce, en, hem*.

Hei mihi, *Woe to me.* Virg. Vas tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. Ecce tibi, *Lo to you* (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. En tibi, *This for you* (lo I do this for you). Liv. See 389. 2.

## SECTION V.

### DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives—Adverbs and Substantives.

### I. DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the action, that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

### RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempōri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deo pāret, *The world obeys God.*<sup>2</sup> Cic. Caesāri supplicābo, *I will supplicate Caesar.*<sup>3</sup> Cic. Nōbis vīta dāta est, *Life has*

<sup>1</sup> Milton, *Par. Lost*, iv. 73

<sup>2</sup> Is subject to God.

<sup>3</sup> Will make supplication to Caesar.



*been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītori dēdītūr, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pōns iter hostībūs dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civitatībūs suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit (1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alicui rem dōnāre*, to present a thing to any one, or *aliquem re dōnāre*, to present any one with a thing. For the Dat. of the person, the Dat. of a thing sometimes occurs, especially if it involves persons or is in a measure personified :

Mūrum urbi circumdēdit, *He surrounded the city with a wall.* Nep.

This double construction occurs chiefly with: *aspergo, circumdo, circumfundo, dōno, exuo, impertio, induo, inspergo, interclūdo.*

2. To and For are not always signs of the Dative : thus

1) To, denoting mere *motion* or *direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (379. and 379. 4) :

Vēni ad urbem, *I came to the city.* Cic. Delum vēnīmus, *We came to Delos.* Cic. But the Dative occurs in the poets: It clamor coelo, *The shout goes to heaven.* Virg.

2) For, in defence of, in behalf of, is expressed by the Ablative with pro :

Pro patria mōri, *to die for one's country.* Hor. Dīmīcāre pro libertāte, *to fight for liberty.* Cic.

3. OTHER ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.—Conversely the dative is often used where the English either omits TO or FOR, or employs some other preposition. We proceed to specify the cases in which this difference of idiom requires notice.

**385. Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage.**—This is used with verbs signifying *to benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist* ; also, *indulge*, *spare*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, *believe*, *persuade*, and the like :

Sibi prōsunt, *They benefit themselves.* Cic. Nōcēre altēri, *to injure another.* Cic. Zēnōni placuit, *It pleased Zeno.* Cic. Displicet Tullo, *It displeases Tullus.* Liv. Cūpīditātībūs impērāre, *to command desires.* Cic. Deo pārēre, *to obey God.* Cic. Rēgi servīre, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostībūs rēsistēre, *to resist the enemy.* Caes. Sibi indulgēre, *to indulge one's self.* Cic. Vitae parcēre, *to spare life.* Nep. Mihi ignoscēre, *to pardon me.* Cic. Minitans patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Irasci āmicis, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihi crēde, *Believe me.* Cic. Iis persuadēre, *to persuade them.* Caes.

1. **OTHER CASES.**—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative: *dālecto, jūro, laedo, offendo*, etc.

*Mārium jūvit, He helped Marius.* Nep.

*Fūdo* and *confūdo* generally take the Ablative. See 419.

2. **SPECIAL VERBS.**—With a few verbs the force of the dative is found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb: *nūdo*, to marry, strictly to veil one's self, as the bride for the bridegroom; *mēdeor*, to cure, to administer a remedy to; *supplicō*, to supplicate, to pray to; *sātisfaciō*, to satisfy, to do enough for, etc.

3. **ACCUSATIVE OR DATIVE** with a difference of signification: *cāvēre āliquem*, to ward off some one; *cāvēre ālicui*, to care for some one; *consūtere āliquem*, to consult, etc.; *ālicui*, to consult for; *mētūere, timēre āliquem*, to fear, etc.; *ālicui*, to fear for; *prospicere, prōvidere āliquid*, to foresee; *ālicui*, to provide for; *tempērāre, mōdērārī āliquid*, to govern, direct; *ālicui*, to restrain, put a check upon.

A few verbs admit either the Acc. or Dat. without any special difference of meaning: *ādūlor*, to flatter; *cōmitor*, to accompany, etc.

4. **DATIVE** rendered FROM, occurs with a few verbs of *differing, dissenting, repelling, taking away*: *diffēro, discrēpo, disto, dissentio, arceo*, etc.: *Differre cuius*, to differ from any one. Nep. *Discrēpare istis*, to differ from those. Hor. *Sibi dissentīre*, to dissent from himself. Cic. See 412.

5. **DATIVE** rendered WITH, occurs with *miscēo, admisceo, permisceo, jungo, certo, decerto, lucto, allerco*, and sometimes *fūcio* (434. 2):

*Sēvritātem miscēre cōmitāti*, to unite severity with affability. Liv. *Tibi certāre*, to contend with you. Virg. See 412.

**386. Dative with Compounds.**—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions:

ad,	ante,	con,	in,	inter,
ob,	post,	prae,	sub,	super:

*Adsum āmicis, I am present with my friends.* Cic. *Omnibus antestāre*, to surpass all. Cic. *Terris cohaeret, It cleaves to the earth.* Sen. *Vōluptāti inhaerere*, to be connected with pleasure. Cic. *Interfuit pugnae, He participated in the battle.* Nep. *Consiliis obstāre*, to oppose plans. Nep. *Libertāti ōpes postferre*, to sacrifice wealth to liberty. Liv. *Pōpūlo praesunt, They rule the people.* Cic. *Succumbere dōloribus*, to yield to sorrows. Cic. *Sūperfuit patri, He survived his father.* Liv.

1. **TRANSITIVE** Verbs thus compounded admit both the Accusative and Dative: *Se oppōsuit hostibus, He opposed himself to the enemy.* Cic.

2. **COMPOUNDS OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS**, especially *ab, de, ex, pro*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative:

*Hoc Caesāri defuit, This failed (was wanting to) Caesar.* Caes.

3. **MOTION OR DIRECTION.**—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative or repeat the preposition:

*Adire aras, to approach the altars.* Cic. *Ad consules adire, to go to the consuls.* Cic.

In some instances where no motion is expressed, several of these compounds admit some other construction for the Dative:

*In oratore inest scientia, In the orator is knowledge.* Cic.

**387. Dative of Possessor.**—This is used with the verb *Sum*:

*Mihi est nōverca, I have (there is to me) a stepmother.* Virg. *Fonti nōmen Arēthūsa est, The fountain has (there is to the fountain) the name Arethusa.* Cic. But

1. The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming: *nōmen est, nomen datur*, etc.:

*Scipiōni Africāno cognōmen fuit, Scipio had the surname Africanus.* Sall. Here *Africāno*, instead of being in apposition with *cognōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scipiōni*.

2. The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nomen* occurs:

*Nōmen Mercūrii est mihi, I have the name of Mercury.* Plaut.

3. By a GREEK IDIOM, *vōlens, cūpiens*, or *incitus* sometimes accompanies the dative of possessor:

*Quibus bellum vōlentibus erat, They liked the war (it was to them wishing).*

Tac.

**388. Dative of Apparent Agent.**—This is used with Passive Verbs:

I. With the PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION and the PARTICIPLE IN DUS, to designate the person who has the work to do:

*Suum cuique incommōdum fērendum est, Every one has his own trouble to bear, or must bear his own trouble.* Cic.

The Ablative with *a* or *ab* occurs:

*Est a vōbis consūlendum, Measures must be taken by you.* Cic.

II. With the TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION, to designate the person who has the work already done:

*Mihi consīlium captum jam diu est, I have a plan long since formed.* Cic. But

1. HABEO with the PERF. PARTICIPLE has the same force:

*Bellum habuit indictum, He had a war (already) declared.* Cic.

2. The REAL AGENT with Passive verbs is denoted by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. The Dative, though the regular construction with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation, does not regard the person strictly as agent, but rather as possessor or indirect object. Thus, *Suum cuique incommōdum est*, means, Every one has his trouble (*cuique* Dative of Possessor), and *Suum cuique incommōdum fērendum est*, Every one has his trouble to bear. So too, *Mihi consīlium est*, I have a plan; *Mihi consīlium captum est*, I have a plan (already) formed.

3. DATIVE WITH SIMPLE TENSES.—The Dative is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once Agent and Indirect Object, the person BY whom and FOR (to) whom the action is performed:

*Hōnesta bōnis vīris quærantur, Honorable things are sought by good men, i. e., for themselves. Cic.*

3. DATIVE OF AGENT IN POETS.—In the poets the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action :

*Non intelligor ulli, I am not understood by any one. Ovid.*

**389. Ethical Dative.**—A Dative of the person to whom the thought is of special interest is often introduced into the Latin sentence when it cannot be imitated in English.

*At tibi vēnit ad me, But lo, he comes to me. Cic. Ad illa mihi intendat ānimum, Let him, I pray, direct his attention to those things. Liv. Quid mihi Celsus āgit? What is my Celsus doing? Hor. But*

1. The ETHICAL DATIVE is always a personal pronoun.

2. ETHICAL DATIVE with *VOLO* and INTERJECTIONS :

1) With *VOLO*: *Quid vōbis vultis? What do you wish, intend, mean? Liv. Avāritia quid sibi vult, What does avarice mean, or what object can it have? Cic.*

2) With INTERJECTIONS: *Āei, vas* and some others: *Āei mihi, āh mē. Virg. Vae tibi, Woe to you. Ter. See 381. 3. 3).*

### RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

**390. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs:**

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

*Mālo est hōmīnibus āvāritia, Avarice is an evil to men (lit. is to men for an evil). Cic. Est mihi cūrae, It is a care to me. Cic. Dōmus dēdēcōri dōmīno fit, The house becomes a disgrace to its owner. Cic. Vēnit Attīcis auxilio, He came to the assistance of the Athenians. Nep. Hoc illi tribuēbātur ignāviae, This was imputed to him as cowardice (for cowardice). Cic. Iis subśīdio missus est, He was sent to them as aid. Nep.*

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

*Quinque cohortes castris praesīdio rēliquit, He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp (lit. to the camp for a defence). Caes. Pēricles agros suos dōno rei pūblicae dēdit, Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present (lit. for a present). Just.*

1. Verbs with TWO DATIVES are

1) Intransitives signifying to *be, become, go*, and the like; *sum, fio*, etc.

2) Transitives signifying to *give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose*, and the like: *do, dōno, dūco, hābeo, mitto, rēlinquo, tribuo, verto*, etc. These take in the Active two datives with an accusative, but in the Passive two datives only, as the Accusative of the active becomes the subject of the passive. See 371. 6.

2. ONE DATIVE OMITTED.—One dative is often omitted or its place supplied by a Predicate Noun :

Ea sunt ūsui, *These things are of use* (for use). Caes. Tu illi pater es, *You are a father to him*. Tac.

8. With *Audiens* two Datives sometimes occur, the Dat. *dicto* dependent upon *audiens* and a personal Dat. dependent upon *dicto*-*audiens* treated as a verb of obeying (885) :

Dicto sum audiens, *I am listening to the word, I obey*. Plant. Nōbis dicto audiens es, *He is obedient to us*. Cic. Sometimes *dicto obediens* is used in the same way: Magistro dicto obediens, *obedient to his master*. Plant.

## II. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

### RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae solum omnibus carum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all*. Cic. Id aptum est tempōri, *This is adapted to the time*. Cic. Omni aetati mors est communis, *Death is common to every age*. Cic. Canis similis lupo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf*. Cic. Naturae accommodatum, *adapted to nature*. Cic. Graeciae utile, *useful to Greece*. Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying :

*Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in bilis.*

Such are: accommodatus, aequalis, alienus, amicus and inimicus, aptus, carus, facilis and difficilis, fidelis and infidelis, finitimus, gratus and ingratus, idoneus, iucundus and iucundus, molestus, necessarius, notus and ignotus, noxius, par and dispar, periculosus, propinquus, proprius, salutarius, similis and dissimilis, vicinus, etc.

2. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative :

1) *Accusative with a Preposition* : (1) *in, erga, adversus* with adjectives signifying *friendly, hostile, etc.*, and (2) *ad*, to denote the object or end for which, with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable, inclined, etc.* :

Perrindulgens in patrem, *very kind to his father*. Cic. Multas ad res perutilis, *very useful for many things*. Cic. Ad cōmītatem prōclivis, *inclined to affability*. Cic. Prōnus ad luctum, *inclined to mourning*. Cic.

2) *Accusative without a Preposition* with *prōpior, prōximus* :

Prōpior nontem, *nearer the mountain*. Sall. Prōximus mēre, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See 433 and 437.

3) *Ablative with or without a Preposition* :

Alienum s vīta mea, *foreign to my life*. Ter. Hōmīne alienissimum, *most foreign to man*. Cic. Ei cum Roscio communis, *common to him and Roscius* (with Ioscius). Cic.

4) *Genitive* : (1) with *proprius, communis, contrarius* ; (2) with *similis*,

*dissimilis, assimilis, consimilis, par* and *dispar*, especially to express likeness in character; (3) with adjectives used substantively, sometimes even in the superlative; (4) sometimes with *affinis, alienus, insuetus*:

*Pöpuli Römāni est propria libertas, Liberty is characteristic of the Roman people.* Cic. *Alexandri similis, like Alexander*, i. e., in character. Cic. *Dispar sui, unlike itself.* Cic. *Cujus pares, like whom.* Cic. *Amicissimus hominum, the best friend of the men*, i. e., the most friendly to them. Cic.

3. **Idem** WITH THE DATIVE occurs, especially in the poets:

*Idem facit occidenti, He does the same as kill, or as he who kills.* Hor.

4. **Audiens** and **obediens**. See 390. 3.

5. DATIVE WITH ANOTHER CASE sometimes occurs with adjectives as with verbs:

*Sibi conscii culpæ, conscious to themselves of fault.* Cic.

### III. DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADVERBS.

#### RULE XV.—Dative.

392. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives:

I. **VERBAL NOUNS**.—*Justitia est obtemperatio legibus, Justice is obedience to laws.* Cic. *Sibi responsio, replying to himself.* Cic. *Opulento homini servitus dura est, Serving a rich man (servitude to) is hard.* Plaut.

II. **ADVERBS**.—*Congruenter naturæ vivere, to live in accordance with nature.* Cic. *Sibi constanter dicere, to speak consistently with himself.* Cic. *Proxime hostium castris, next to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

1. **DATIVE WITH NOUNS**.—Nouns construed with the Dative are derived from verbs which govern the Dative. With other nouns the Dative is probably best explained as dependent upon some verb, expressed or understood:

*Tegimenta galeis milites facere jubet, He orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets.* Caes. Here *galeis* is probably the indirect object of *facere* and not dependent upon *tegimenta*. In *conspectum venerat hostibus, He had come in sight of the enemy.* Caes. Here *hostibus* is dependent not upon *conspectum*, but upon *venerat*; the action, *coming in sight*, is conceived of as done to the enemy. See 398. 5.

2. **DATIVE WITH ADVERBS**.—The Adverbs construed with the Dative are derived from adjectives and participles which govern the Dative.

### SECTION VI.

#### GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*, but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

## 394. The Genitive is used

- I. With Nouns.<sup>1</sup>
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With Verbs.
- IV. With Adverbs.

## I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

## RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

Cātōnis orātiones, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmīlcāris, *the death of Hamilcar*. Liv. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv. Vir consilii magni, *a man of great prudence*. Caes. See 363.

396. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns.—The principal are

I. SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE—designating the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc., including the *author* and *possessor*:

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent*.<sup>2</sup> Cic. Pavor Nūmīdārū, *the fear of the Numidians*. Liv. Xenōphontis libri, *the books of Xenophon*. Cic. Fānum Neptūni, *the temple of Neptune*. Nep.

II. OBJECTIVE GENITIVE—designating the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed:

Amor glōriæ, *the love of glory*.<sup>3</sup> Cic. Mēmōria mālōrū, *the recollection of sufferings*. Cic. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv.

III. PARTITIVE GENITIVE—designating the *whole* of which a *part* is taken:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Vitæ pars, *a part of life*. Cic. Omnium sāpientissimū, *the wisest of all men*. Cic.

1. NOSTRUM and VESTRUM.—As partitive genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrum* are generally used instead of *nostri* and *vestri*.

2. USE.—The Partitive Genitive is used

1) With *pars*, *nemo*, *nihil*; nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc.: *mōdius*, *lēgio*, *tālentum*, and any nouns used partitively:

<sup>1</sup> As it generally expresses adjective relations, it is of course generally construed with nouns, but sometimes with other parts of speech.

<sup>2</sup> Here *serpentis* is *subjective*, because the serpent is the *subject* or *agent* of the action: the serpent bites; but *glōriæ* is *objective*, because glory is the object of the love.

Equorum pars, *a part of the horses*. Liv. Mèdimnum tritici, *a bushel of wheat*. Cic. Pécuniae talentum, *a talent of money*. Nep. Quorum Caius, *of whom Caius*. Cic.

2) With *Numerals* used Substantively:

Quorum quattuor, *four of whom*. Liv. Săpientum octăvus, *the eighth of the wise men*. Hor.

3) With *Pronouns* and *Adjectives* used substantively, especially with the following:

(1) With *hic, ille, quis, qui, alter, ūter, neuter*, etc.:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Consŭlum alter, *one of the consuls*. Liv.

(2) With *comparatives* and *superlatives*:

Prior hŏrum, *the former of these*. Nep. Gallŏrum fortissĭmi, *the bravest of the Gauls*. Caes.

(3) With *neuters*: *hoc, id, illud, quid; multum, plus, plurĭmum, minus, minĭmum, tantum, quantum*, etc.:

Id temporis, *that (of) time*. Cic. Multum ōpĕrae, *much (of) service*. Cic.

(4) With *omnes* and *cuncti*, rarely:

Măcĕdŏnum omnes, *all of the Macedonians*. Liv. Hŏmĭnum cuncti, *all of the men*. Ovid. These generally agree with their nouns: Omnes hŏmĭnes, *all men*. Cic.

4) With a few *Adverbs* used substantively:

(1) With *adverbs of Quantity*—*abunde, affĕtim, nĭmis, pĕrum, partim, quoad, sĕtis*:

Armŏrum affĕtim, *abundance of arms*. Liv. Lŭcis nĭmis, *too much (of) light*. Ovid. Săpĕntiăe pĕrum, *little (of) wisdom*. Sall. Partim cŏpiărum, *a portion of the forces*. Liv. Quoad ejus făcĕre pŏtest, *as far as (as much of it as) he is able to do*. Cic.

(2) With *adverbs of Place*—*hic, huc, nusquam, ŭbi*, etc.:

Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*. Cic.

(3) With *adverbs of Extent, degree*, etc.—*eo, huc, quo*:

Huc arrŏgantĭae, *to this degree of insolence*. Tac.

(4) With *Superlatives*:

Maxĭme omnium, *most of all*. Cic.

Lŏcl and lŏcŏrum occur as *partitive genitives* in expressions of time:

Intĕrea lŏcl, *in the mean time*. Ter. Adhuc lŏcŏrum, *hitherto*. Plant.

IV. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—designating *character* or *quality*—including *value, price, size, weight, age*, etc.

Vir maxĭmi consĭlii, *a man of very great prudence*. Nep. Mitis ingĕnii jŭvĕnis, *a youth of mild disposition*. Liv. Vestis magni prĕtĭi, *a gar-*



*ment of great value.* Cic. *Exsiliū dēcem annōrum, an exile of ten years.*  
 Nep. *Cōrōna parvi pondēris, a crown of small weight.* Liv. See 402, III.1.

1. *This Genitive* is regularly accompanied by an adjective, numeral, or pronoun, as in the examples, but compounds containing an adjective or numeral do not require any additional modifier. Thus

1) Compounds in *mōdi* :

*Supplicium hujusmodi, a punishment of this kind.* Cic.

2) *Tridui, bidui*, from *triduum = tres dies*, and *biduum = duo (bis) dies* :

*Via tridui, a journey of three days.* Caes. Sometimes the governing word *ita, epdium* is omitted : *Abērant bidui, They were two days journey distant.* Cic.

## V. GENITIVE OF SPECIFICATION—with the general force of an Appositive (363) :

*Virtus continentiae, the virtue of self-control.* Cic. *Verbum voluptātis, the word (of) pleasure.* Cic. *Oppidum Antiōchiae, the city of Antioch.* Cic. *Tellus Ausōniae, the land of Ausonia.* Virg.

### 397. Peculiarities.—We notice the following :

#### 1. GOVERNING WORD OMITTED : especially

(1) *Aedes, templum, discipulus, hōmo, jūvēnis, puer*, etc. :

*Ad Jōvis (sc. aedem), near the temple of Jupiter.* Liv. *Hannibal annōrum novem (sc. puer), Hannibal a boy nine years of age.* Liv.

In many cases where we supply *son, daughter, husband, wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Gen. depending directly on the proper noun expressed :

*Hasdrūbal Giscōnis, Gisco's Hasdrubal*, or *Hasdrubal the son of Gisco.* Liv. *Hectōris Andrōmāche, Hector's Andromache*, or *Andromache the wife of Hector.* Virg.

(2) Sometimes *causa, grātia* :

*Nāves sui commōdi (causa) fēcērat, He had built vessels for his own advantage.* Caes.

(3) Generally when expressed before another Gen. :

*Conferre vitam Trēbonii cum Dōlābellae (sc. vita), to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella.* Cic.

#### 2. TWO GENITIVES WITH THE SAME NOUN—generally one Subjective and one Objective :

*Memmiū dīdium pōtēntiae, Memmius's hatred of power.* Sall.

#### 3. GENITIVE AND POSSESSIVE—especially the Gen. of *ipse, solus, unus, omnis*, but sometimes of other words :

*Tua ipsius amicitia, your own friendship.* Cic. *Meum solius peccātum, my fault alone.* Cic. *Nōmen meum absentis, my name while absent.* Cic.

Here *ipsius* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua* ; *solus* and *absentis*, with *mei* (of me) involved in *meum*.

### 398. Other Constructions—for the Genitive are :

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. See 428.

2. ADJECTIVE :

*Bellīca glōria* = *belli glōria*, *the glory of war*. Cic. *Conjux Hectōrea* = *conjux Hectōris*, *the wife of Hector*. Virg.

3. POSSESSIVE.—This is regularly used for the Subjective Gen. of Personal pronouns, rarely for the Objective:

*Mea dōmus*, *my house*. Cic. *Fāma tua*, *your fame*. Cic. *Amor noster*, *love for us* (our love). Cic.

4. CASE WITH PREPOSITION.—1) For the *Objective Genitive*, the Accusative with *in*, *erga*, *adversus*:—2) For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with *inter*, *ante*, *apud*, or the Ablative with *ex*, *de*, *in*:

*Odium in hōmīnum gēnus*, *hatred of or towards the race of men*. Cic. *Erga vos amor*, *love towards you*. Cic. *Inter rēges opulētissimū*, *the most wealthy of (among) kings*. Sen. *Unus ex vīris*, *one of the heroes*. Cic.

5. DATIVE depending on the VERB, instead of the Genitive depending on a noun:

*Urbi fundāmenta jēcere*, *to lay the foundations of (for) the city*. Liv. *Caesāri ad pēdes projēcere*, *to cast at the feet of Caesar*, i. e., before Caesar at his feet. Caes. See 392. 1.

## II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

### RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning:

*Avīdus laudis*, *desirous of praise*. Cic. *Otiī cūpīdus*, *desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens vōluptātis*, *productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Glōriāe mēmōr*, *mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force—*of*, *in respect of*—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in *ax* and participles in *ans* and *ens* used adjectively:

*Virtūtum fērax*, *productive of virtues*. Liv. *Tēnax prōpōsīti*, *tenacious (steadfast) of purpose*. Hor. *Amans patriae*, *loving (fond of) his country*. Cic. *Fūgiens lābōris*, *shunning labor*. Caes.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *recollection*, *participation*, *mastery*, *fulness*, and their contraries:

(1) DESIRE, AVERSION—*āvīdus*, *cūpīdus*, *stūdiōsus*; *fastīdiōsus*, etc.; sometimes *aemūlus* and *invidus*, which also take the Dative:

*Contentiōnis cūpīdus*, *desirous of contention*. Cic. *Sāpientiae stūdiōsus*, *studious of (student of) wisdom*. Cic.

(2) KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION with their contraries—*gnārus*,

*ignārus, consultus, conscius, inscius, nescius, certus, incertus, suspensus; prōvidus, prudens, imprudens; peritus, imperitus, rudis, insuetus; mēmōr, immēmōr, etc.:*

Rei gnārus, *acquainted with the thing.* Cic. Prādens rei militāris, *skilled in military science.* Nep. Pēritus belli, *skilled in war.* Nep. Insuetus lābōris, *unaccustomed to labor.* Caes. Glōriae mēmōr, *mindful of glory.* Liv. Immēmōr bēnēficii, *forgetful of kindness.* Cic.

(3) PARTICIPATION, FULNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries—*affinis, consors, exsors, expers, particeps; plenus, fertilis, refertus, egēnus, inops, vācuus; pōtens, impōtens, compos, impos, etc.:*

Affinis culpaē, *sharing the fault.* Cic. Rātiōnis particeps, *endowed with (sharing) reason.* Cic. Rātiōnis expers, *destitute of reason.* Cic. Vita mētus plēna, *a life full of fear.* Cic. Mei pōtens sum, *I am master of myself.* Liv. Virtūtis compos, *capable of virtue.* Cic.

### 3. OTHER ADJECTIVES also occur with the Genitive.

1) A few of a signification kindred to the above:

Mānifestus rērum cāpitālium, *convicted of capital crimes.* Sall. Noxiū conjūrātiōnis, *guilty of conspiracy.* Tac.

2) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis; par and dispar,* especially to denote internal or essential likeness. See 391. 2. 4).

3) Sometimes *aliēnus, communis, proprius, publicus, sacer, vicinus:*

Aliēnus dignitātis, *inconsistent with dignity.* Cic. Viri proprius, *characteristic of a man.* Cic.

4) In the poets and late prose writers, especially Tacitus, a Genitive of Cause occurs with a few adjectives, especially those denoting *emotion or feeling*, and a Gen. having the force of—*in, in respect of, for,* especially *ānīmi* and *ingēniī*, with many adjectives:

Anxiū pōtēntiae, *anxious for power.* Tac. Lassus militiae, *tired of military service.* Hor. See Gen. with Verbs, 409. 2 and 4. Aeger ānīmi, *afflicted in mind.* Liv. Anxiū ānīmi, *anxious in mind.* Sall. Intēger aevi, *whole in respect of age, i. e., in the bloom of youth.* Virg.

### 4. PARTITIVE GENITIVE with Adjectives. See 396. III. 3).

### 5. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) DATIVE: Mānus sublitis āvidae, *hands ready for sudden events.* Tac. Insuetus mōrībūs Rōmānis, *unaccustomed to Roman manners.* Liv. Fācinōri mens conscia, *a mind conscious of crime.* Cic.

2) ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITION: Insuetus ad pugnam, *unaccustomed to battle.* Liv. Fertilis ad omnia, *productive for all things.* Plin. Avidus in novās res, *eager for new things.* Liv.

3) ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITION: Prādens in iūre cīvili, *learned in civil law.* Cic. Rūdis in iūre cīvili, *uninstructed in civil law.* Cic. His de rēbus conscius, *aware of those things.* Cic. Vācuus de dēfensōrībūs, *destitute of defenders.* Caes. Cūris vācuus, *free from cares.* Cic. Rēfertus bōnis, *replete with blessings.* Cic.

### 6. GENITIVE AND DATIVE with the same adjective:

Sibi consci culpaē, *conscious to themselves of fault.* Cic.

## III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

## 400. The Genitive with Verbs includes

- I. Predicate Genitive.
- II. Genitive of Place.
- III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

## I. Predicate Genitive.

## RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject is put in the Genitive :

*Omnia hostium erant, All things belonged to the enemy.*<sup>1</sup> Liv. *Sénatus Hannibālis erat, The senate was Hannibal's*, i. e., in his interest. Liv. *Judicis est verum sequi, To follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*<sup>2</sup> Cic. *Parvi pretii est, It is of small value.* Cic.

1. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.—The Predicate Genitive is distinguished from the Predicate Nominative and Accusative by the fact that it always designates a different person or thing from its subject, while they always designate the same person or thing as their subjects. See 362.

2. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE.—The genitive is often nearly or quite equivalent to a predicate adjective (353. 1): *hominis est* = *humānum est*, it is the mark of a man, is human; *stulti est* = *stultum est*, it is foolish. The Gen. is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *sapientis est* (for *sapiens est*), it is the part of a wise man, is wise.

## 402. Varieties of Predicate Genitive.—The principal are,

I. SUBJECTIVE OR POSSESSIVE GENITIVE—generally best rendered by—*of, property of, duty, business, mark, characteristic of* :

*Haec hostium erant, These things were of (belonged to) the enemy.* Liv. *Est imperatoris sup̄erare, It is the duty of a commander to conquer.* Caes.

II. PARTITIVE GENITIVE :

*Fies nobilium fontium, You will become one of the noble fountains.* Hor.

III. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—including *value, price, size, weight*, etc. :

*Summae facultatis est, He is (a man) of the highest ability.* Cic. *Op̄era magni fuit, The assistance was of great value.* Nep.

1. The Genitive of *Price* or *Value* is generally an adjective belonging to *pretii* understood; but sometimes *pretii* is expressed :

<sup>1</sup> Lit. *were of the enemy*, or *were the enemy's*.

<sup>2</sup> Lit. *is of a judge*.

Parvi pretii est, *It is of little value.* Cic. See 396. IV.

2. Price and Value with verbs of *buying, selling,* and the like, are expressed

1) Regularly by the Ablative. See 416.

2) Sometimes by the Genitive of adjectives, like the Pred. Gen. of price:

Vendo frumentum pluris, *I sell grain at a higher price.* Cic.

But the Gen. is thus used only in *indefinite* and *general* expressions of price and value. A definite price or value regularly requires the Ablative.

3) In familiar discourse sometimes by the genitives, *assis, flocci, nihili, pili* and a few others:

Non flocci pendere, *not to care a straw* (lock of wool) *for.* Plaut.

3. *Boni* and *Aequi*, as Predicate Genitives, occur in such expressions as *aequi boni facere* and *boni consilire*, to take in good part.

**403. Verbs with Predicate Genitive.**—This genitive occurs most frequently with *sum* and *facio*, but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming* and *regarding*:

Haec hostium erant, *These things were the enemy's.* Liv. Oram Rōmānae ditionis fecit, *He brought the coast under (of) Roman rule.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs of this class admit in the active, an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the second example.

2. With Verbs of *Seeming* and *Regarding*—*videor, habeo, dico, puto*, etc.—*esse* may generally be supplied:

Hōminis videtur, *It seems to be (esse) the mark of a man.* Cic.

**404. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur.**

1. The *Possessive* is regularly used for the Pred. Gen. of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not *tui*) videre, *It is your duty to see.* Cic.

2. The Genitive with *Officium, Mūnus, Nēgōtium, Proprium*:

Sēnātus officium est, *It is the duty of the senate.* Cic. Fuit proprium pōpuli, *It was characteristic of the people.* Cic.

The Predicate Genitive could in most instances be explained by supplying some such word, but it seems to be more in accordance with the idiom of the Latin to regard the genitive as complete in itself.

3. The *Ablative of Characteristic.* See 423.

## II. Genitive of Place. See 421. II.

## III. Genitive in Special Constructions.

**405.** The Genitive, either alone or with an Accusative, is used in a few constructions which deserve separate mention.

## RULE XIX.—Genitive with Certain Verbs.

### 406. The Genitive is used

#### I. With *miserere* and *miserere*:

*Miserere laborum, Pity the labors.* Virg. *Miserescite regis, Pity the king.* Virg.

#### II. With *recordor*, *memini*, *reminisce*, and *obliscor*:

*Meminit praeteritorum, He remembers the past.* Cic. *Oblitus sum mei, I have forgotten myself.* Ter. *Flagitiorum recordari, to recollect base deeds.* Cic. *Reminisci virtutis, to remember virtue.* Caes.

#### III. With *refert* and *interest*:

*Illorum refert, It concerns them.* Sall. *Interest omnium, It is the interest of all.* Cic.

1. EXPLANATION.—The Genitive may be explained as dependent upon *re* in *refert*, and upon *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*. With the other verbs it accords with the Greek idiom, and with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, it also conforms to the analogy of the Gen. with the adjectives *memor* and *immemor* (399. 2. 2).

2. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—The expression *Venit mihi in mentem*, It occurs to my mind, equivalent to *reminisce*, is sometimes construed with the Gen.:

*Venit mihi Platonis in mentem, The recollection of Plato comes to my mind, or I recollect Plato.* Cic. But the Nom. is also admissible: *Non venit in mentem pugna, Does not the battle come to mind?* Liv.

### 407. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS with verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting* also occur:

#### 1. The Accusative: *Meminere Paulum, I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *thing* (not person), with *recordor*, and, if it be a neuter pronoun or adjective, also with other verbs:

*Triumphos recordari, to recall triumphs.* Cic. *Ea reminiscere, Remember those things.* Cic.

#### 2. The Ablative with *De*: *Recordare de ceteris, Beshink yourself of the others.* Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *person* with *recordor*, and occurs also with *memini*.

### 408. The CONSTRUCTION with *Refert* and *Interest* is as follows:

#### 1. The PERSON or THING interested is denoted

##### 1) By the *Genitive* as under the rule.

2) By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive* :

Meā rēfert, *It concerns me.* Ter. Intērest meā, *It interests me.* Cic.

This possessive regularly takes the place of the Gen. of personal pronouns, and may be explained as agreeing with *re* in *rēfert*, and with *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*.

3) By the *Dative*, or *Accusative with Ad* ; but rarely, and only with *rēfert*, which moreover often omits the person :

Quid rēfert viventi, *What does it concern one living?* Hor. Ad me rēfert, *It concerns me.* Plant.

2. The **SUBJECT OF IMPORTANCE**, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun :

Intērest omnium recte faciōre, *To do right is the interest of all.* Cic. Vestrā hōc intērest, *This interests you.* Cic.

3. The **DEGREE OF INTEREST** is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Gen. of Value (402. 1 and 2) :

Vestrā maxime intērest, *It especially interests you.* Cic. Quid nostrā rēfert, *What does it concern us?* Cic. Magni intērest meā, *It greatly interests me.* Cic.

4. The **OBJECT OR END** for which it is important is expressed by the *Accusative with ad*, rarely by the *Dative* :

Ad hōnōrem nostrum intērest, *It is important for our honor.* Cic.

#### 409. GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.—Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive :

1. Some Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*; as *ēgeo*, *indīgeo*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399. 2. 2) :

Virtus exercitiōnis indiget, *Virtus requires exercise.* Cic. Auxilii ēgere, *to need aid.* Caes.

2. Some Verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling* like adjectives (399. 3. 4) :

Animi pendeo, *I am uncertain in mind.* Cic. Discrucior animi, *I am troubled in mind.* Plant.

3. A few Verbs denoting *Mastery* or *Participation* like adjectives (399. 2. 2) , *pōtior*, *ādīpiscor*, *regno* :

Siciliāe pōtītus est, *He became master of Sicily.* Nep. Rōrum ādeptus est, *He obtained the power.* Tac. Regnāvit pōpūlorum, *He was king of the people.* Hor.

4. A Genitive of *Separation* or *Cause* occurs in the poets, with a few verbs—*abstinēo*, *dēcipio*, *dēsino*, *dēsisto* ; *mīror* :

Abstīnēre irarum, *to abstain from anger.* Hor. Lāborum dēcipitur, *He is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. Dēsine quērulārū, *Cease from complaints.* Hor. Dēsistēre pugnae, *to desist from the battle.* Virg. Justitiāe mīrari, *to admire (wonder at or because of) justice.* Virg.

5. *Sātāgo* and *Sātāgīto* admit a genitive dependent upon *sat* (396. 4) :

Rērum sātāgere, *to be occupied with (have enough of) business.* Ter.

6. Genitive of *Gerunds* and *Gerundives*. See 563 and 563. 5.

## RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing :

- I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing.*
- II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.*
- III. *Misēret, Poenitet, Pūdet, Taedet, and Piget.*

I. REMINDING, ETC.—Te amicitiae commōnēfacit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milites nēcessitātis mōnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. ACCUSING, ETC.—Vīros scōlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lēvītātis eum convincere, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvēre injūriā eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. MISERET, POENITET, ETC.—Eōrum nos misēret, *We pity them* (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Consilii me poenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultitiae meae pūdet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The GENITIVE OF THING designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge, and with *misēret, poenitet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive:

Accūsātus est prōditiōnis, *He was accused of treason.* Nep.

3. Verbs of REMINDING, *mōneo, admōneo, commōneo, commōnēfacio*, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, thus admitting two accusatives:

Illud me admōnes, *You admonish me of that.* Cic.

2) The *Ablative* with *de*, *mōneo* generally so:

De proelio vos admōnui, *I have reminded you of the battle.* Cic.

4. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The *Genitive* with *nōmīne* or *crīmīne*:

Nōmīne conjūratiōnis damnāti sunt, *They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.* Cic.

2) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely:

Id me accūsas, *You accuse me of that.* Plaut.

3) The *Ablative* with a preposition, generally *de*:

De pecūniis rēpētundis damnātus est, *He was convicted of extortion.* Cic.

5. With Verbs of CONDEMNING, the *Punishment* may be expressed



1) By the *Genitive* :

*Cāptis* condemnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad* :

*Ad bestias* condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild beasts*. Suet.

3) By the *Ablative* :

*Cāpte* damnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

6. MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, PIGET.—An Infinitive or Clause is sometimes the subject of these verbs :

*Me poenitet vixisse*, *I repent having lived*. Cic.

1) Like *Miseret* are sometimes used *miserescit, commiserescit, miseretur, commiseretur*. Like *Tædet* are used *pertaedet, pertaesum est*.

2) *Pudet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed :  
*Me tui pudet*, *I am ashamed in your presence*. Ter. *Pudet hominum*, *It is a shame in the sight of men*. Liv.

3) *Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object :

*Pertaesus ignāviam suam*, *disgusted with his own inaction*. Suet.

7. The ACCUSATIVE and GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of FREEING with the accessory notion of ACQUITTING :

*Eum culpae liberāre*, *to free him from blame*, i. e., to acquit him of fault. Liv. *So purgo, decipio*, and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of FILLING, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399.

2. 2) and 409. 1), especially *compleo* and *impleo* :

*Multitudinem religiōnis implēvit*, *He inspired (filled) the multitude with religion*. Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of EMOTION or FEELING (409. 2), rarely :

*Te angis animi*, *You make yourself anxious in mind*. Plaut.

## IV. GENITIVE WITH ADVERBS.

### 411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs :

1. With *Partitives*. See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Pridie* and *Postridie*, perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them :

*Pridie ejus diēi*, *on the day before that day*. Caes. *Postridie ejus diēi*, *on the day after that day*. Caes.

3. With *Ergo* and *Tenus*, originally nouns :

*Virtutis ergo*, *on account of virtue*. Cic. *Lumbōrum tenus*, *as far as the loins*. Cic. For *tenus* with the Abl., see 434.

## SECTION VII.

### ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive ; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from, by, in, with, and ex*—

presses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives, while the genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393,

**413. The Ablative is used as**

**I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means—including**

1. Ablative of Price.
2. Ablative after Comparatives.
3. Ablative of Difference.
4. Ablative in Special Constructions.

**II. Ablative of Place—including**

Source and Separation.

**III. Ablative of Time.**

**IV. Ablative of Characteristic.**

**V. Ablative of Specification.**

**VI. Ablative Absolute.**

**VII. Ablative with Prepositions.**

**I. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.**

**RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.**

**414. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative:**

*Ars utilitate laudatur, An art is praised because of its usefulness. Cic. Glória ducitur, He is led by glory. Cic. Duobus modis fit, It is done in two ways. Cic. Sol omnia luce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light. Cic. Apri dentibus se tütantur, Boars defend themselves with their tusks. Cic. Aeger erat vulneribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds. Nep. Laetus sorte tua, pleased with your lot. Hor.*

**1. APPLICATION OF RULE.**—This ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

**2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.**—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* anything is or is done.

1) This includes such ablatives as *meo iudicio*, in accordance with my opinion; *mea sententia, jussu, impulsu, monitu*, etc.

2) With *Passive* and *Intransitive* verbs, *Cause* is regularly expressed by the Abl., though a preposition with the Acc. or Abl. sometimes occurs:

*Amicitia est propter se expetenda, Friendship is to be sought for its own sake. Cic.*

3) With *Transitive* verbs the Abl. without a Prep. is rare; but *causa, gratia* and ablatives in *u* of nouns used only in that case (184), *jussu, rogatu, mandatu*, etc., are thus used; sometimes also other words.

In other cases, *Cause* in the sense of—*on account of, because of*, is generally expressed—(1) by a Preposition with its case: *ob, propter, de, ex, prae*, etc.; or (2) by a Perfect Participle with an Ablative:

In oppidum propter timorem sese recipiunt, *They betake themselves into the city on account of their fear.* Caes. Regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem facit, *Influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy.* Caes.

*Cupiditate* in the 2d example really expresses the *cause* of the action *fecit*, but by the use of *inductus*, it becomes the Abl. of Cause with that participle.

8. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the Prep. *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*—*môre, ordine, ratione*, etc.—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *with the greatest violence.* Nep. Møre Persarum, *in the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum silentio audire, *to hear in silence.* Liv. Id ordine facere, *to do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed. See also 434. 2.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom anything is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the Prep. *A* or *Ab*:

Occisus est a Thebanis, *He was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

1) The Abl. without a Prep. or the Accus. with *per* is sometimes used, especially when the Person is regarded as the *Means*, rather than as the *Agent*.

Cornua Numidis firmat, *He strengthens the wings with Numidians.* Liv. Per Fabricium, *by means of (through the agency of) Fabricius.* Cic.

2) Dative of *Apparent Agent*. See 388.

6. PERSONIFICATION.—When anything is personified as agent, the ablative with *A* or *Ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci a voluptate, *to be conquered by pleasure.* Cic. A fortuna datam occasionem, *an opportunity furnished by fortune.* Nep.

7. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—This generally takes *cum*:

Vivit cum Balbo, *He lives with Balbus.* Cic. But

In describing military movements, the preposition is often omitted when the Abl. is qualified by an adjective:

Ingenti exercitu profectus est, *He set out with a large army.* Liv.

415. KINDRED USES OF THE ABLATIVE.—Kindred to the Ablative of Cause, etc., are

I. The Ablative of Price—that by which the trade is effected.

II. The Ablative with Comparatives—that by which the comparison is effected.

III. The Ablative of Difference—that by which one object differs from another.

IV. The Ablative in Special Constructions.

**RULE XXII.—Ablative of Price.****416. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative :**

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg. Conduxit magno dōmum, *He hired a house at a high price.* Cic. Multo sanguine Poenis victōria stētit, *The victory cost the Carthaginians (stood to the Carthaginians at) much blood.* Liv. Quinquāginta tālentis aestimāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vile est viginti minis, *It is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

**1. ABLATIVE OF PRICE.**—This is used

1) With verbs of buying, selling, hiring, letting, *īmo, vendo, conducō, lūco, vāneo*, etc.

2) With verbs of costing, of being cheap or dear, *sto, consto, lūceo, sum*, etc.

3) With verbs of valuing, *aestimo*, etc.

4) With adjectives of value, *cārus, vānālis*, etc.

**2. EXCHANGING.**—With verbs of exchanging—*mūto, commūto*, etc.—the thing received is generally treated as the price, as with verbs of *selling* :

Pāce bellum mūtāvit, *He exchanged war for peace.* Sall. But sometimes the thing given is treated as the price, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Abl. with *cum* : Exsiliū patria mūtāvit, *He exchanged country for exile.* Curt.

**3. ADVERBS OF PRICE** are sometimes used : *dōne īmere*, to purchase well, i. e., at a low price ; *cāre aestimāre*, to value at a high price.

**4. GENITIVE OF PRICE.** See 402. III.

**RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.****417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative :**

Nihil est amābīlius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est mēlius bōnitate, *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

**1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM** are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them :

Hibernia mīnor quam Brītanīa existimātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terribīlior, *more terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

**2. ABLATIVE, WHEN ADMISSIBLE.**—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. This abbreviation is admissible only in place of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative, but is not necessary even here except for *quam* with a Relative :

Scimus sōlem majōrem esse terrā, *We know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amicitia, qua nihil mēlius habēmus; *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule.

1) In the first example the Ablative (*terra*) is admissible but not necessary, *quam terram* might have been used; but in the second example the Ablative (*quā*) is necessary, the conjunction *quam* would be inadmissible.

2) In the examples under the rule the ablatives *virtūte* and *bonitāte* are both equivalent to *quam* with the Nom. *quam virtus* and *quam bonitas*, which might have been used.

3) The Omission of *Quam* in examples like the following is a rare exception:

Pāne ēgeo, jam pōtiōre plācentis (*quam placentae sunt*); *I need bread, now better than cakes.* Hor.

3. CONSTRUCTION WITH PLUS, MINUS, ETC.—*Plus, minus, amplius, longius*, without *quam*, in expressions of number and quantity, are generally followed by the same case as if *quam* were used; sometimes also *major, minor*, etc.:

Tēcum plus annum vixit, *He lived with you more than a year.* Cic. Minus duo millia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

So in expressions of age: nātus plus triginta annos, *having been born more than thirty years.* The same meaning is also expressed by—*major triginta annos nātus, major triginta annis, major quam triginta annōrum, or major triginta annōrum.*

4. ATQUE OR AC FOR QUAM.—This occurs chiefly in poetry and late prose: Arctius atque hēdērā, *more closely than with ivy.* Hor.

5. ALIUS WITH THE ABLATIVE sometimes occurs. It then involves a comparison, *other than*:

Quaerit alia his, *He seeks other things than these.* Plaut.

6. PECULIARITIES.—*Quam pro* denotes disproportion, and many ablatives—*opinione, spe, aequo, justo, solito*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Minor caedes quam pro victōria, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sērius spe vēnit, *He came later than was hoped (than hope).* Liv. Plus aequo, *more than is fair.* Cic.

## RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Difference.

418. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Uno die longiōrem mensem faciunt, *They make the month one day longer (longer by one day).* Cic. Bīduo me antecessit, *He preceded me by two days.* Cic. Sunt magnitudīne paulo infra ēlēphantos, *They are in size a little below the elephant.* Caes.

1. The Ablative is thus used not only with comparatives, but also with all words involving a comparison.

2. The Ablative of *Difference* includes the Abl. of *Distance* (878. 2), and the Abl. with *ante, post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (427).

**RULE XXV.—Ablative in Special Constructions.****419. The Ablative is used**

I. With *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, *vescor*, and their compounds:

*Plūrimis rēbus fruimur et ūtimur*, *We enjoy and use very many things.* Cic. *Magna est praeda pōtita*, *He obtained great booty.* Nep. *Vescimur bestiis*, *We live upon animals.* Cic.

II. With *fido*, *confido*, *nitor*, and *innitor*:

*Nemo pōtest fortunae stabilitate confidere*, *No one can trust (confide in) the stability of fortune.* Cic. *Salus veritate nititur*, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLenty and WANT:

*Non ēgeo mēdicina*, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic. *Vācāre culpa*, *to be free from fault.* Cic. *Villa abundat lacte, caseo, melle*; *The villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.* Cic. *Urbs nuda praesidio*, *a city destitute of defence.* Cic. *Virtute praeditus*, *endowed with virtue.* Cic.

IV. With *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, and *frētus*:

*Digni sunt amicitia*, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic. *Natura parvo contenta*, *nature content with little.* Cic. *Frētus amicis*, *relying upon his friends.* Liv.

V. With *opus* and *usus*: *Uti Auct. hab. in m. Rule 9. obs. 1*

*Auctoritate tua nobis opus est*, *We need (there is to us a need of) your authority.* Cic. *Usus est tua mihi opēra*, *I need your aid.* Plaut.

1. EXPLANATION.—This Ablative may in most instances be readily explained as the Ablative of *Cause* or *Means*: thus *utor*, I use, serve myself by means of; *fruo*, I enjoy, delight myself with; *vescor*, I feed upon, feed myself with; *fido*, *confido*, I confide in, am confident because of, etc.

2. ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Dignor* and transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* take the Accusative with the Ablative:

*Me dignor hōnōre*, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Virg. *Armīs nāves ōnērat*, *He loads the ships with arms.* Sall. *Oculis se privat*, *He deprives himself of his eyes.* Cic. See 371. 2.

1) Transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* signify to fill, furnish with, deprive of, etc.: *afficio*, *cūmulo*, *compleo*, *impleo*, *imbuo*, *instruo*, *ōnēro*, *orno*, etc.—*orbo*, *privo*, *spolio*, etc.

2) For the Accusative and Genitive with some of these verbs, see 410. 7. 2).

3. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Opus est* and *usus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing. See examples.

1) The Ablative is sometimes a Perfect Participle, or, with *opus est*, a Noun and Participle :

Consulto *opus est*, *There is need of deliberation*. Sall. *Opus fuit* Hirtio *convento*, *There was need of meeting* Hirtius. Cic.

2) With *opus est*, rarely with *usus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

(1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative :

*Dux nobis opus est*, *We need a leader, or a leader is necessary* (a necessity) *for us*. Cic. *Temporis opus est*, *There is need of time*. Liv. *Opus est cibum*, *There is need of food*. Plaut.

(2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine :

*Opus est te valere*, *It is necessary that you be well*. Cic. *Opus est ut laevem*, *It is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. *Dicte est opus*, *It is necessary to be told*. Ter.

4. Other Constructions.—Several of the words mentioned under the rule admit other constructions. Thus,

1) *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and *vescor* were originally transitive and are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *us* is passive in sense, as if from transitive verbs.

2) *Fido* and *confido* admit the Dative :

*Virtuti confidēre*, *to confide in virtue*. Cic. See 385. 1.

3) *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *frētus*.—*Dignus* and *indignus* admit the Gen. and *frētus* the Dat.

*Dignus sālūtis*, *worthy of safety*. Plaut. *Rei frētus*, *relying upon the thing*. Liv.

4) *Genitive*.—For the *genitive* with *pōtior*, see 409. 8. For the *genitive* with verbs and adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want*, see 409. 1, 410. 7, and 899. 2. 2).

## II. ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH anything is or is done :

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH anything proceeds;—including *Source* and *Separation*.

### RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive ;

I. Hannibal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp*. Caes. In Appia via, *on the Appian way*. Cic. Ab urbe prōficiētur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Afrīca, *from Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābylōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fugit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

422. NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS.—These sometimes omit the preposition:

1. The Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, sometimes omits the preposition:

1) Generally the Ablatives—*lōco, lōcis, pars, partibus, dextra, laeva, sinistra, terra, mārī*, and other Ablatives when qualified by *totus*:

Allquid lōco pōnere, *to put anything in its place*. Cic. Terrā mārīque, *on land and sea*. Liv. Tōta Graecia, *in all Greece*. Nep.

2) Sometimes other Ablatives, especially when qualified by adjectives:  
Hoc libro, *in this book*. Cic.

In poetry the preposition is often omitted even when the ablative has no modifier:  
Silvis agrisque, *in the forests and fields*. Ov.

2. The Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH sometimes omits the preposition, especially in poetry:

Cādere nūbibus, *to fall from the clouds*. Virg. Lābi ēquo, *to fall from a horse*. Hor.

423. NAMES OF TOWNS.—These differ in their construction from other names of places,

I. Generally in simply dropping the preposition. But

II. In the Singular of the First and Second declensions they designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive. See examples under the Rule.

1. PREPOSITION RETAINED.—The preposition is sometimes retained, especially for emphasis or contrast:

Ab Ardea Rōmam vēnērunt, *They came from Ardea to Rome*. Liv. So also when the *vicinity* rather than the town itself is meant: Discessit a Brundisio, *He departed from Brundisium*, i. e., from the port. Caes. Apud Mantinēam, *near Mantinea*. Cic. Ad Trēbiam, *at or near the Trebia*. Liv.

2. GENITIVE.—This, it must be observed, never denotes the PLACE FROM WHICH.

The Genitive-Forms denoting the *place in which*, are genitives only in form. They probably belonged originally to a case called the *Locative*, afterward blended with the Ablative, except in the Sing. of Dec. I and II, where it is united with the Gen. Accordingly these genitives are in force old Ablatives.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:



1) *Ablative by Attraction* :

In monte Albāno Lāviniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium*. Liv.

2) *Ablative without Attraction*, generally with a preposition :

In ipsa Alexandria, *in Alexandria itself*. Cic. Longa Alba, *at Alba Longa*. Virg.

This is the regular construction when the noun takes an adjective or adjective pronoun, but the Gen. *dōmī* admits a *possessive* or *aliēnus* :

Dōmī suae, *at his home*. Cic.

3) With an Appellative—*urbs*, *oppidum*—the name of the town is in the Gen. or Abl., but the appellative itself is in the Abl., generally with a Prep. :

In oppido Antiochiaē, *in the city of Antioch*. Cic. In oppido Citio, *in the town Citium*. Nep. Albae, *in urbe opportuna, at Alba, a convenient city*. Cic.

424. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS.—Thus are used

1. Many names of Islands :

Vixit Cypri, *He lived in Cyprus*. Nep. Dēlo proficiscitur, *He proceeds from Delos*. Cic.

2. Dōmus, rus and the genitives hūmī, militīae and bellī :

Rūri agere vitam, *to spend life in the country*. Liv. Dōmī militīaeque, *at home and in the field*. Cic. Dōmo profugit, *He fled from home*. Cic.

3. The Genitive of other nouns also occurs :

1) By *Attraction* after names of towns :

Rōmae Nūmīdiaeque, *at Rome and in Numidia*. Sall.

2) *Without Attraction* in a few proper names and rarely also the genitives *ārēnae*, *fōci*, *terrae* :

Dōmum Chersōnēsi hābuit, *He had a house in the Chersonesus*. Nep. Truncum reliquit *ārēnae*, *He left the body in the sand*. Virg.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Source and Separation.

425. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition :

SOURCE.—Hoc audiī de pārente meo, *I heard this from my father*. Cic. Oriundi ab Sābinis, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Stātua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*. Cic. Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

SEPARATION.—Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic. Hunc a tuis ārīs arcēbis, *You will keep this one from your altars*. Cic. Expulsus est patria, *He was banished from his country*. Cic.

1. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE designates that from which anything is derived, including parentage, material, etc.

2. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is used :

1) With Intransitive verbs signifying, *to abstain from, be distant from, etc.*

2) In connection with the Accusative after transitive verbs signifying, *to hold from, separate from, free from, and the like: arceo, abstineo, deterreo, ejicio, excludo, exsolvo, libero, pello, prohibeo, removeo, solvo, etc.:*

Urbem obsidiōne liberāre, *to free the city from siege.* Nep.

3. Preposition Omitted.—This generally occurs

1) With Perfect Participles denoting parentage or birth—*gēnitus, nātus, ortus, etc.:*

Jove nātus, *son of Jupiter.* Cic.

2) With Verbs of *Freeing*, except *libero*, which is used both with and without a preposition:

Somno solvi, *to be released from sleep.* Cic. But in the sense of *acquitting* these verbs admit the genitive (410. 7): Aliquem culpae liberāre, *to free one from blame, i. e., acquit him.* Liv.

3) With *Moveo* before the ablatives—*lōco, sēnātū and tribu:*

Signum mōvēre lōco, *to move the standard from the place.* Cic.

4) The preposition is sometimes omitted with other words, especially in poetry.

### III. ABLATIVE OF TIME.

#### RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsīmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vere convēnere, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātali die suo, *on his birthday.* Nep. Hiēme et aestate, *in winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word, so used as to involve the time of an action or event, may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugna*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōria*, in memory, i. e., in the time of one's recollection.

2. ABLATIVE WITH IN.—This is used to denote

1) The *circumstances* of the time, rather than time itself:

In tāli tempore, *under such circumstances.* Liv.

2) The time *in or within* which anything is done:

In diēbus proxīmis dēcem, *in the next ten days.* Sall.

(1) This is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in die*, twice in the day; *in puēritia*, in boyhood; *in sēnectūte*, in old age.

(2) In a kindred sense occur also the Abl. with *de* and the Accus. with *inter* or *intra*:

De mēdia nocte, *in the middle of the night.* Caes. Inter annos quattuordēcim, *in (within) fourteen years.* Caes.

**427. ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.**—The time since an action or event is denoted by *Abhinc* with the Accusative or Ablative, and the time between two events, by *Ante* or *Post* with the Accusative or Ablative :

*Abhinc annos trēcentos fuit, He lived (was) three hundred years since.* Cic. *Abhinc annis quattuor, four years since.* Cic. *Hōmērus annis multis fuit ante Rōmūlum, Homer lived many years before Romulus.* Cic. *Paucis ante diēbus, a few days before.* Cic. *Post dies paucos vēnit, He came after a few days.* Liv.

**1. EXPLANATION.**—(1) The Accusative with *abhinc* is explained as Duration of Time (378), with *ante* and *post* as dependent upon those prepositions. (2) The Ablative in both cases is explained as the Ablative of Difference (418).

With the Abl. *ante* and *post* are used adverbially unless an Accus. is expressed after them : thus in *paucis ante diēbus*, before by a few days.

**2. NUMERALS WITH ANTE AND POST.**—These may be either cardinal or ordinal. Thus : five years after = *quinque annis post*, or *quinto anno post* ; or *post quinque annos*, or *post quintum annum* ; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quinque post annis*, etc.

**3. QUAM WITH ANTE AND POST.**—*Quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, may be united with them, or may even be used for *postquam* :

*Quartum post annum quam rēdiērat, four years after he had returned.* Nep. *Nōno anno postquam, nine years after.* Nep. *Sexto anno quam erat expulsus, six years after he had been banished.* Nep.

**4. THE ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE** may be used for *postquam* :  
*Quātrīduo, quo occisus est, four days after he was killed.* Cic.

#### IV. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

##### RULE XXIX.—Characteristic.

**428. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing :**

*Summa virtūte adolescens, a youth of the highest virtue.* Caes. *Cātīlina ingēnio mālō fuit, Catiline was a man of a bad spirit.* Sall.

**1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC** is used

1) With Substantives as in the first example.

2) In the Predicate with *sum*, and the other verbs which admit a Predicate Genitive (408) as in the second example.

**2. The ABLATIVE WITH A GENITIVE** instead of the ablative with an adjective is sometimes used :

*Uri sunt spēcīe tauri, The urus is of the appearance of a bull.* Caes.

**3. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.**—See 396. IV.

**4. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE DISTINGUISHED.**—The Genitive generally expresses permanent and essential qualities ; the Ablative is not limited to any particular kind of qualities.

## V. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

## RULE XXX.—Specification.

429. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application :

Agēsilaus nōmine, non pōtestāte fuit rex, *Agēsilaus was king in name, not in power.* Nep. Claudus altēro pēde, *lame in one foot.* Nep. Mōribus sīmiles, *similar in character.* Cic.

1. FORCE OF ABLATIVE.—This shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true : thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name* : *similar* (in what respect?) *in character.*

2. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. See 380.

## VI. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

430. A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be grammatically independent of (*absolved from*) the rest of the sentence, and yet may express various adverbial modifications of the predicate. When so used they are said to be in the case Absolute.

## RULE XXXI.—Ablative Absolute.

431. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE :

Servio regnante vīgūrunt, *They flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic. Rēgibus exactis, consūles creati sunt, *After the banishment of the kings, consuls were appointed.* Liv. Sērēno coelo, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Cānīnio consūle, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

1. USE.—The Ablative Absolute is much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, and expresses a great variety of relations,—*time, cause, reason, means, condition, concession, etc.*

2. HOW RENDERED.—This ablative is generally best rendered (1) by a *Clause* with—*when, while, for, since, if, though, etc.*, (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition*,—*in, during, after, by, from, through, etc.*, or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object* :

Servio regnante, *while Servius reigned, or in the reign of Servius.* Cic. Rēligiōne neglecta, *because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perdītis rēbus omnibus, tāmen, *etc., Though all things are lost, still, etc.* Cic. Equitātu prae-misso, *subsequēbātur, Having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.

3. A Connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative :

Nisi mūnitis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. AN INFINITIVE OF CLAUSE may be in the Abl. Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Audīto Dārīum mōvisse, pergit, *Having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced*. Curt. Multi, incerto quid vitārent, intēriērunt, *Many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished*. Liv.

5. PARTICIPLE ALONE:

Multum certāto, pervicit, *He conquered after a hard struggle* (it having been much contested). Tac.

## VII. ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.

For the Ablative with Prepositions, see 432 and 434.

## SECTION VIII.

### CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad āmicum scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate house*. Liv. In Itālia, *in Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp*.

433. The Accusative is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *to the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *toward the gods*. Cic. Ante lūcem, *before light*. Cic. Apud conciliū, *in the presence of the council*. Cic. Circa fōrum, *around the forum*. Cic. Citra flūmen, *on this side of the river*. Cic. Contra nātūrā, *contrary to nature*. Cic. Intra mūrōs, *within the walls*. Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp*. Caes. Sēcundum nātūrā, *according to nature*. Cic. Trans Alpes, *across the Alps*. Cic.

Like *Prōpe*, the derivatives *prōptior* and *prōximus* take the Accus. dependent perhaps upon *ad* understood:

Prōptior montem, *nearer to the mountain*. Sall. Prōximus māre, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See also 437, and for compounds, 371. 4. and 374. 6.

434. The Ablative is used with

A or ab (abs), absque, cōram, cum, de,  
e or ex, prae, pro, sine, tēnus:

Ab urbe, *from the city*. Caes. Cūram conventu, *in the presence of the assembly*. Nep. Cum Antiocho, *with Antiochus*. Cic. De fōro, *from the forum*. Cic. Ex Asia, *from Asia*. Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart*. Cic.

1. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sūper*, admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition:

Abire magistrātū, *to retire from office*. Tac. Pugna excēdunt, *They retire from the battle*. Caes.

Sometimes the Prep. is repeated, or one of kindred meaning is used:

De vita dēcēdēre, *to depart from life*. Cic. Dēcēdēre ex Asia, *to depart from Asia*. Cic.

2. The Ablative with or without *De* is sometimes used with *Fācio*, *Fīo*, or *Sum*, as follows:

Quid hoc hōmīne fācias, *What are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid te (or de te) fūtūrum est, *What will become of you?* Cic.

The Dative occurs in nearly the same sense:

Quid hūc hōmīni fācias, *What are you to do with (or to) this man?* Cic.

3. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, *e*, *ex*.—*A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* either before vowels or consonants. *Abs* is antiquated, except before *te*.

4. *Tēnus* follows its case:

Collo tēnus, *up to the neck*. Ov.

5. *Cum* with the Abl. of a Pera. Pronoun is appended to it: *mēcum*, *tēcum*, etc., generally also with a relative: *quēcum*, *quībūscum*.

#### 435. THE ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE IS USED WITH

In, sub, subter, sūper:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannībal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain*. Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*. Liv. Subter tōgam, *under the toga*. Liv. Subter testūdīne, *under a tortoise or shed*. Virg. Sūper Nūmīdiam, *beyond Numidia*. Sall. Hac sūper re scribam, *I will write on this subject*. Cic.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither?* the Ablative in answer to *where?* In Asiam (whither?), *into Asia*; In Itālia (where?), *in Italy*.

2. *Subter* and *Sūper* generally take the Accusative, but *sūper* with the force of—*concerning*, *of*, *on* (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

436. PREPOSITIONS AS ADVERBS.—The prepositions were originally adverbs, and many of them are sometimes so used in classical authors.

437. ADVERBS AS PREPOSITIONS.—Conversely several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions with an oblique case, though in most instances a preposition could readily be supplied. Such are

1. With Accusative: *prōptus*, *proxīme*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *usque*:

Prōptus pēricūlum (ad), *nearer to danger*. Liv. Prīdie Idus (ante), *the day before the Ides*. Cic. Usque pēdes (ad), *even to the feet*. Curt.

2. With Ablative: *pālam*, *prōcul*, *simul* (poetic):

Pālam pōpūlo, *in the presence of the people*. Liv. Prōcul castris, *at a distance from the camp*. Tac. Simul his, *with these*. Hor.

3. With Accusative or Ablative: *clam*:

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge*. Plant. Clam vōbis, *without your knowledge*. Caes.

## CHAPTER III.

### SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

#### RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in **GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE**:

*Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.* Cic. *Vērae amicitiae, true friendships.* Cic. *Māgister optimus, the best teacher.* Cic.

1. **APPLICATION OF THE RULE.**—This rule includes Adjectives, Pronouns, and Participles, as they are adjectives in form.

2. **ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.**—An adjective is called *attributive*, unless it unites with the verb (generally *sum*), to form the *predicate*; it is then called a *predicate-adjective*: as *caeca est*, above.

3. **AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.**—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun, clause, infinitive*, etc.:

*Quis clārior, Who is more illustrious?* Cic. *Certum est liberos amari, It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. See 35. III.

4. **NEUTER WITH MASCULINE.**—Sometimes the Predicate Adjective is neuter, when the subject is *Masc.* or *Fem.*:

*Mors est extrēmum, Death is the last (thing).* Cic.

5. **NEUTER WITH GENITIVE.**—A neuter adjective with a genitive is often used instead of an adjective with its noun:

*Multum op̄erae (for multa op̄era), much service (much of service).* Cic. *Id temp̄oris, that time.* Cic. *Vāna rerum (for vānae res), vain things.* Hor.

6. **CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.**—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

*Pars certare parāti, a part (some), prepared to contend.* Virg. *Caesi sunt tria millia, Three thousand (men) were slain.* Liv. *Dēmōsthēnes cum cētēris erant expulsi, Demosthenes with the others had been banished.* Nep.

7. **AGREEMENT WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.**—See 462.

8. **AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.**—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

*Majōra (for majōrum) īnītia rerum, the beginnings of greater things.* Liv. *Cursus justi (justus) amnis, the regular course of the river.* Liv.

**439. WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS.**—An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all conjointly, or may agree with one and be understood with the others :

Castor et Pollux visi sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen.* Cic. Tēmēritas ignorātiōque vitiōsa est, *Rashness and ignorance are bad.* Cic.

1. **ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE.**—This generally agrees with the nearest noun :

Agri omnes et mēria, *all lands and seas.* Cic.

2. **DIFFERENT GENDERS.**—When the nouns are of different genders, they may denote

1) *Persons* : then the adjective or participle is masculine : Pāter et māter mortui sunt, *Father and mother are dead.* Ter.

2) *Persons and Things* : then the adjective generally takes the gender of the person :

Rex rēgiāque classis prōfecti sunt, *The king and the royal fleet set out.* Liv.

3) *Things* : then the adjective is neuter :

Hōnōres, victōriæ fortuita sunt, *Honors and victories are accidental (things).* Cic.

3. **NEUTER WITH MASCULINE OR FEMININE.**—With masculine or feminine nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective is often neuter :

Lābor et dōlor sunt finitima, *Labor and pain are kindred (things).* Cic. Nox atque praeda hostes rēmōrāta sunt, *Night and plunder detained the enemy.* Sall.

4. **TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.**—Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun :

Prīma et vicēsimā lēgiōnes, *the first and the twentieth legions.* Tac.

So in proper names : Cnaeus et Publius Scipiones, *Cnaeus and Publius Scipio.* Cic.

## USE OF ADJECTIVES.

**440.** The Adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the adjective in English, but it presents a few peculiarities.

**441. WITH THE FORCE OF NOUNS.**—Adjectives are often used substantively : *docti*, the learned ; *multi*, many persons ; *multa*, many things.

1. **MASCULINE ADJECTIVES** in the Plural often designate Persons : *fortes*, the brave ; *divites*, the rich ; *paupēres*, the poor ; *viventes*, the living ; *mortui*, the dead ; *multi*, many ; *pauci*, few ; *omnes*, all ; *mei*, my friends ; *tui*, your friends, etc.

2. **NEUTER ADJECTIVES** in the Plural often designate things : *vera*, *falsa*, *utilia*, true, false, useful things ; *mea*, *nostra*, my, our things ; *multa*, *pauca*, *omnia*, many, few, all things ; *haec*, *illa*, these, those things.



8. NOUN UNDERSTOOD.—Many adjectives become substantives, by the omission of their nouns: *patria* (terra), native country; *dextra* (manus), right hand; *fēra* (bestia), wild beast; *hiberna* (castra), winter-quarters.

4. WITH RES.—Adjectives with *res* are used with great freedom: *res adversae*, adversity; *res secundae*, prosperity; *res publica*, republic.

5. FROM PROPER NAMES.—Adjectives from proper names are often equivalent to the English objective with *of*: *pugna Mārāthōnia*, the battle of Marathon; *Diāna Ephēsia*, Diana of Ephesus; *Hercūles Xēnōphontius*, the Hercules of Xenophon.

6. DESIGNATING A PART.—A few adjectives sometimes designate a particular part of an object: *primus*, *mēdius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *infimus*, *imius*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cētera*; *prima nox*, the first part of the night; *summus mons*, the highest part of the mountain.

In Livy and late writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a genitive sometimes occurs:

Ad ultimum inōpiæ, for ad ultimam inōpiam, to extreme destitution. Liv.

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

Nemo saltat sobrius, No one dances when he is sober, or when sober.  
Cic. Hortensium vivum amavi, I loved Hortensius, while he was alive.  
Cic. Homo nunquam sobrius, a man, who is never sober. Cic.

1. Prior, *primus*, *ultimus*, *postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause:

Primus mōrem solvit, He was the first who broke the custom. Liv.

With the adverb *primum*, the thought would be, he first broke the custom, and then did something else.

443. INSTEAD OF ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

Socrātes venēnum laetus hausit, Socrates cheerfully drank the poison. Sen.  
Sēnātus frēquens convēnit, The senate assembled in great numbers. Cic.  
Roscius erat Rōmæ frēquens, Roscius was frequently at Rome. Cic.

Adjectives thus used are

1. Those expressive of joy, knowledge, and their opposites: *laetus*, *libens*, *invitus*, *tristis*, *sciens*, *insciens*, *prūdens*, *imprūdens*, etc.

2. In the Poets also adjectives of time and space:

Dōmestīcus otior, I idle about home. Hor. Vespertīnus pōte tectum, At evening seek your abode. Hor. See also 335. 4.

## COMPARISON.

444. A comparison between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hōrum, the former of these (two). Nep. Gallōrum fortissīmi, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes.

1. WITH THE FORCE OF TOO OR VERY.—The comparative sometimes has the force of *too* or *somewhat*, and the superlative, the force of *very*: *doctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

2. COMPARATIVE AFTER QUAM.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, both adjectives are put in the comparative; but when it is said to possess one quality rather than another, both are in the positive, the former with *māgis* or *pōtius*:

*Clārior quam grātor*, more illustrious than pleasing. Liv. *Dīsertus māgis quam sāpiens*, fluent rather than wise. Cic.

In this sense *māgis* is sometimes omitted, and occasionally the adjective before *quam* is in the comparative.

3. STRENGTHENING WORDS.—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by other words:

1) Comparatives by *etiam*, even, still; *multo*, much; *etiam doctior*, much more learned.

2) Superlatives by *longe*, *multo*, by far, much; *ūnus*, *ūnus omntum*, alone, alone of all, often best rendered, *by far*; *quam*, *quantus*, as possible:

*Multo maxīma pars*, by far the largest part. Cic. *Res ūna omnium difficillima*, a thing by far the most difficult of all. Cic. *Quam maximae cōplae*, forces as large as possible. Sall. *Quantā maxīma vastitas*, the greatest possible devastation. Liv.

4. COMPARISON IN ADVERBS has the same force, as in adjectives:

*Quam saepissime*, as often as possible. Cic. *Fortius quam felicius*, with more bravery than success. Liv.

## CHAPTER IV.

### SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

#### RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON:

*Animal quod sanguinem hābet*, an animal which has blood. Cic. *Ego*, qui te confirmo, I, who encourage you. Cic. *Vis est in virtūtibus*; eas excita, There is strength in virtues, arouse them. Cic.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This rule applies to all Pronouns when used as nouns. Pronouns used as adjectives conform to the rule for adjectives. See 438.

The Antecedent is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *animal* is the antecedent of *quod*, and *virtūtibus* the antecedent of *eas*.

2. AGREEMENT WITH PERSONAL PRONOUN.—When the antecedent is a Demonstrative in agreement with a Personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter :

Tu es is qui me ornasti, *You are the one who commended me.* Cic.

3. WITH TWO ANTECEDENTS.—When a relative or other pronoun, refers to two or more antecedents, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest :

Puëri müliëresque, qui, *boys and women, who.* Caes. Peccätum ac culpa, quae, *error and fault, which.* Cic.

1) With antecedents of different genders, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439. 2); hence *puëri müliëresque qui*, above.

2) With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verba. See 468. 1.

4. WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—A pronoun sometimes agrees with a Predicate-Noun or an Appositive instead of the antecedent :

Animal quem (for *quod*) vocämus hömīnem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. Thēbae, quod (*quae*) cäput est, *Thebes which is the capital.* Liv. Ea (*id*) erat confessio, *That* (i. e., the action referred to) *was a confession.* Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, qui, *the river Rhine, which.* Caes.

In the last example *qui* agrees with the appositive *Rhenus*; in the other examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea*, are attracted to agree with their predicate nouns *hömīnem*, *caput*, and *confessio*.

5. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the pronoun is construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form :

Equitātūs, qui vidērunt, *the cavalry who saw.* Caes.

6. ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted :

1) When it is indefinite :

Sunt qui censeant, *There are some who think.* Cic.

2) When it is the pronoun *is* :

Terra reddit quod accēpit, *The earth returns what it has received.* Cic.

3) When it is implied in a possessive :

Vestra, qui cum integrītate vixistis, hoc intērest, *This interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Here the antecedent is *vos*, implied in *vestra*.

7. CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445. 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent :

Nos, id quod debet, patria dēlectat, *Our country delights us as it ought* (lit. *that which it owes*). Cic.

8. RELATIVE AS ADJECTIVE.

Dies instat, quo die, *The day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tēnēbant, *Cūmae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. **ANTECEDENT ATTRACTED.**—In Poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative:

Urbem quam statuo, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.*  
Virg.

## I. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

446. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:

Significamus, quid sentiamus, *We show what we think.* Cic. Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducit, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. The Nominative of the third person is supplied, when necessary, by *is* or *illa*.

2. *Nos* and *noster* for *ego* and *meus*.—The writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nos* for *ego*, *noster* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular.

3. The genitives *nostrum* and *vestrum* are generally partitive genitives: *nostri* and *vestri* are rarely so used.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Mānus lāva, *Wash your hands.* Cic. Mihi mea vīta cāra est, *My life is dear to me.* Plaut.

For Possessive with Genitive in the sense of own, see 397. 3.

### *Reflexive use of Pronouns.*

448. *Sui* and *Suus* have a reflexive sense (*himself*, etc.), and the other Personal and Possessive pronouns are sometimes so used:

Se diligit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Sua vi mōvētur, *He is moved by his own power.* Cic. Me consolor, *I console myself.* Cic.

1. *Inter nos*, *inter vos*, *inter se*, have a reciprocal force, *each other*, *one another*, together:

Collōquimur inter nos, *We converse together.* Cic. Amant inter se, *They love one another.* Cic.

2. Instead of *inter se*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Hōmīnes hōmīnibus ūtīles sunt, *Men are useful to men*, i. e., to each other. Cic.

449. *Sui* and *Suus* refer,

I. In Principal Clauses, to the *Subject*:

Se diligit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Justitia propter sese colenda est,

*Justice should be cultivated for its own sake.* Cic. *Annūlum suum dedit, He gave his ring.* Nep.

II. In Subordinate Clauses, generally to the *principal* subject, but sometimes to the *subordinate* subject:

TO PRINCIPAL SUBJECT.—*Sentit ānīmus se vi sua mōvēri, The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power.* Cic. *A me pētīvit ut sēcum essem, He asked (from) me to be with him (that I would be).* Cic. *Pervestigat quid sui cīves cōgitent, He tries to ascertain what his fellow citizens think.* Cic.

TO SUBORDINATE SUBJECT.—*Respondit pōpūlum in suum arbitrium impērāre, He replied that the people ruled according to their own will.* Caes.

1. REFLEXIVE AND DEMONSTRATIVE.—*Sui* and *Suus* differ from *Is* (451. 6) used reflexively:

1) In referring back to a subject, while *is* generally refers to an object:  
*Se diligit, He loves himself.* Cic. *Deum agnoscis ex ejus opēribus, You recognize a god by (from) his works.* Cic.

2) In referring, when used as the subject of an Infinitive, to the principal subject, while *is* generally refers to some other word:

*Aliquid scire se gaudent, They rejoice that they know something.* Cic. *Obligat civitatem nihil eos mutāturos, He binds the state not to change anything (that they will).* Just.

2. *Suus* = HIS OWN, ETC.—*Suus* referring to the *Object* instead of the subject, often occurs in the sense of *his own, their own, fitting, etc.*:

*Caesārem sua nātūra mītiōrem fecit, Caesar's own nature made him more mild (his own nature made Caesar more mild).* Cic. *Iustitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own).* Cic.

3. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *sui* and *suus* refer to the latter:

*A Caesāre invitōr sibi ut sim lēgātus, I am invited by Caesar (real agent) to be his lieutenant.* Cic.

4. *Suus* SUBSTANTIVELY.—The Plural of *Suus* used substantively—*his, their friends, possessions, etc.*—is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases:

*Fuit hoc luctuōsum suis, This was afflicting to his friends.* Cic. Here *suis* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

5. *Sui* and *Suus* sometimes refer to an omitted subject:

*Dēforme est de se praedicāre, To boast of one's self is disgusting.* Cic.

6. REFLEXIVES REFERRING TO DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject:

*Respondit nēmīnem sēcum sine sua pernīcie contendisse, He replied that no one had contended with him without (his) destruction.* Caes.

Here *se* refers to the subject of *respondit* and *eua* to *nēmīnem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

## II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

450. *Hic, Iste, Ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hic* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed, and *ille*, that which is remote from both, and so near only to some third person.

*Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city. Cic. Muta istam mentem, Change that purpose of yours. Cic. Si illos negligis, if you disregard those. Cic.*

1. **HIC AND ILLE IN CONTRASTS.**—*Hic* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space or time:

*Non antiquo illo more, sed hoc nostro fuit eruditus, He was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way. Cic.*

2. **HIC AND ILLE, FORMER AND LATTER.**—In reference to two objects previously mentioned:

1) *Hic* generally refers to the latter, and *ille* to the former:

*Ignavia, labor: illa maturam senectutem, hic longam adolescentiam reddit; Indolence, labor: the former makes old age premature, the latter makes youth long. Cels.*

2) But *Hic* refers to the more important, and *ille* to the less important:

*Certa pax, sperata victoria: haec (pax) in tua, illa in deorum potestate est; Sure peace, anticipated victory: the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods. Liv.*

3. *Hic* is often used of what immediately follows in discourse: *haec verba*, these words, i. e., the following words.

4. *Iste* sometimes indicates contempt:

*Cur pro isto pugnas? Why do you fight for such a one? Cic.*

5. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous:

*Magnus ille Alexander, that great Alexander, i. e., the great Alexander of history. Cic. Medea illa, that well-known Medea. Cic.*

451. *Is* and *Idem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives:

*Dionysius aufugit: is est in provincia, Dionysius has fled: he is in the province. Cic. Is qui satis habet, he who has enough. Cic. Eadem audire malunt, They prefer to hear the same things. Liv.*

1. *Is* is often omitted, especially before a relative or a genitive:

*Terra reddit quod accepit, The earth returns what it has received. Cic. Flabat pater de filii morte, de patris filius, The father wept over the death of the son, the son over (that) of the father. Cic.*

2. *Is with a Conjunction* is often used for emphasis, like the English *and that too*, and *that indeed* :

Unam rem explicābo eamque maximam, *One thing I will explain and that too a most important one.* Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered, also, yet :

Nihil ūtile, quod non Idem hōnestum, *Nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Quum dicat—nēgat Idem, *Though he asserts—he yet denies (the same denies).* Cic.

4. *Is—qui* = *he—who*, such—as, such—that :

Hi sūmus, qui esse debēmus, *We are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gens quae nesciat, *The race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Idem—qui* ; *idem ac* or *atque* = *the same—who*, *the same—as* :

Idem mōres, qui, *the same manners which or as.* Cic. Est Idem ac fuit, *He is the same as he was.* Ter.

6. *Is Reflexive.* See 449. 1.

#### 452. *Ipsē* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self* :

*Ipsē* Caesar, *Caesar himself.* Cic. Fac ut te ipsum custōdias, *See that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. *IPSE WITH SUBJECT.*—*Ipsē* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject :

Mē ipse consōlor, *I myself (not another) console myself.* Cic.

2. *IPSE VERY.*—*Ipsē* is often best rendered by *very* :

*Ipsē* ille Gorgias, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With Numerals *Ipsē* has the force of—*just so many, just* :

Trīginta dies ipsi, *just thirty days.* Cic.

4. *Ipsē* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own* :

Nostra ipsōrum amicitia, *Our own friendship.* Cic. See 397. 3.

5. *Ipsē Reflexive*, sometimes supplies the place of an emphatic *sui* or *suus* :

Lēgātos mīsit qui ipsi vitam pētērent, *He sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

### III. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

453. The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun: sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence :

Res loquītur ipsa ; quae semper vālet ; *The fact itself speaks, and this (which) ever has weight.* Cic. Qui proelium committunt, *They engage battle.* Caes. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. *RELATIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.*—Relatives and Demonstratives are often correlatives to each other: *hic—qui, iste—qui*, etc. These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—qui, idem—qui*, 451. 4 and 5.

## 2. THE DEMONSTRATIVE OMITTED :

Quos pueros miseram epistolam attulerunt, *The boys whom I had sent brought a letter.* Cic. Urbem quam statuo, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.* Virg.

## 3. TWO RELATIVES in the same clause :

Artes quas qui tenent, *the arts, whose possessors* (which, who possess). Cic.

4. RELATIVE CLAUSE = ABLATIVE WITH PRO.—Quae tua prudentia est = qua es prudentia = pro tua prudentia = *such is your prudence, or you are of such prudence, or in accordance with your prudence, etc. :*

Spero, quae tua prudentia est, te valere, *I hope you are well, such is your prudence (which is, etc.).*

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—An adjective belonging in sense to the antecedent, sometimes stands in the relative clause in agreement with the relative. This is especially common with comparatives, superlatives, and numerals :

Vasa, quae pulcherrima viderat, *the most beautiful vessels which he had seen* (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. De servis suis, quem habuit fidelissimum, misit, *He sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had.* Nep.

6. *Quod Expletive*, or apparently so, often stands at the beginning of a sentence, especially before *si, nisi, etsi*, and sometimes before *quia, quoniam, utinam*. In translating it is sometimes omitted, and sometimes rendered by *now, but, and :*

Quod si ceciderint, *if or but if they should fall.* Cic.

7. *Qui dicitur, qui vocatur*, or the corresponding active *quem dicunt, quem vocant*, are often used in the sense of *so called, the so called, what they or you call, etc. :*

Vestra quae dicitur vita, mors est, *Your so called life* (lit. *your, which is called life*) *is death.* Cic. Lex ista quam vocas non est lex, *That law as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

## IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

454. The Interrogative *quis*, is used substantively ; *qui*, adjectively :

Quis ego sum, *Who am I?* Cic. Quid faciet, *What will he do?* Cic. Qui vir fuit, *What kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. **QUIS AND QUI**—Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *qui* substantively : Quis rex unquam fuit, *What king was there ever?* Cic. Qui sis, considera, *Consider who you are.* Cic.

2. **QUID**, *why, how is it that*, etc., is often used adverbially (880. 2), or stands apparently unconnected, by the ellipsis of *propter* or a verb : *Quid enim*, *why then* (*est* or *dicam*)? *Quid quod*, *what of the fact that?*

## 3. TWO INTERROGATIVES in the same clause :

Quis quem fraudavit, *who defrauded, and whom did he defraud* (lit. *who defrauded whom*)? Cic.

4. **ATTRACTION**.—The interrogative often agrees with the predicate noun :

Quam (for *quid*) dicam voluptatem videtis, *You see what I call pleasure.* Cic.



## V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

455. *Aliquis, quis, qui, and quispiam*, are entirely indefinite, *some one, any one*:

Est *aliquis*, *there is some one*. Liv. Dixit *quis*, *some one said*. Cic. Si *quis rex*, *if any king*. Cic. Alia res *quaequam*, *any other thing*. Cic.

1. *Aliquis* is more emphatic than *quispiam*.

2. *Quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *et, nisi, and ne*. *Quis* is generally used substantively and *qui* adjectively.

456. *Quidam*, a certain one, is less indefinite than *aliquis*:

*Quidam* rhētor antiquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician*. Cic. Accurrit *quidam*, *A certain one runs up*. Hor.

1. *Quidam* with an Adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Justitia mirifica quaedam videtur, *Justice seems somewhat wonderful*. Cic.

2. *Quidam* with *quasi* and sometimes without it, has the force of a *certain, a kind of, as it were*:

Quasi alumna quaedam, *a certain foster child as it were*. Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative:

Neque me *quisquam* agnovit, *Nor did any one recognize me*. Cic. Si *quisquam*, *if any one*. Cic. Num censes *illum* animal esse, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nemo* is the negative of *quisquam*, and is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively:

Nēmīnem laesit, *He harmed no one*. Cic. Nēmō poēta, *no poet*. Cic.

2. *Nullus* is the negative of *ullus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Gen. and Abl. of *nemo*, which generally wants those cases:

Nullum animal, *no animal*. Cic. Nullus aures, *the ears of no one*. Cic.

3. *Nullus* for *non*.—*Nullus* is sometimes used for an emphatic *non*:

Nullus venit, *He did not come*. Cic. Mortui nulli sunt, *The dead are not*. Cic.

458. *Quivis, Quilibet*, any one whatever, and *Quisque*, every one, each one, are general indefinites (191):

Quaelibet res, *any thing*. Cic. Tuorum *quisque* necessariorum, *each one of your friends*. Cic.

1. *Quisque* with Superlatives and Ordinals is generally best rendered by *all* or by *ever, always*:

Epicūros doctissimus *quisque* contemnit, *All the most learned despise the Epicureans, or the most learned ever despise*, etc. Cic.

2. *Ut quisque*—*ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more*:

Ut *quisque* sibi plurimum confidit, *ita* maxime excellit, *The more one confides in himself, the more he excels*. Cic.

459. *Alius* and *Alter* are often repeated: *alius—alius*, one—another; *alii—alii*, some—others; *alter—alter*, one—another; *alteri—alteri*, the one party—the other:

*Alii glōriæ serviunt, alii pēcūniæ, Some are slaves to glory, others to money. Cic. Alteri dimicant, alteri timent, One party contends, the other fears. Cic.*

1. *Alius* repeated in different cases often involves an ellipsis:

*Alius alia via civitatem auxerunt, They advanced the state, one in one way, another in another. Liv. So also with alius or aliter: Aliter alii vivunt, Some live in one way, others in another. Cic.*

2. After *Alius*, *Alter*, and the like, *atque*, *ac*, and *et* often mean *than*:

*Non alius essem atque sum, I would not be other than I am. Cic.*

## CHAPTER V.

### SYNTAX OF VERBS.

#### SECTION I.

##### AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

#### RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON:

*Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic. Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Cic.*

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject according to 438.:

*Thebani accusati sunt, The Thebans were accused. Cic.*

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted—

- 1) When it is a Personal Pronoun:

*Significamus quid sentiamus, We show what we think. Cic. But*

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

- 2) When it means *men, people*: *ferunt, dicunt, they (men, people) say.*

- 3) When it can be readily supplied from the context:

Discipulos moneo, ut studia ament, *I instruct pupils to love their studies.*  
 Quint.

4) When the verb is impersonal :

Me piget stultitiae, *I am tired of folly.* Cic.

3. VERB OMITTED.—*Est* and *sunt* are often omitted, other verbs less frequently :

Omnia praeclara rara, *All excellent things are (sunt) rare.* Cic.

**461. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.**—Sometimes the Predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus

1. With Collective Nouns, *pars*, *multitudo*, and the like :

Multitudo abeunt, *The multitude depart.* Liv. Pars per agros dilapsi, *a part (some) dispersed through the fields.* Liv.

Here *multitudo* and *pars*, though Sing. and Fem. in form, are Plur. and Masc. in sense. See also 438. 6.

2. With *Millia*, often masculine in sense :

Caesi sunt tria millia, *Three thousand men were slain.* Liv.

3. With *Quisque*, *Uterque*, *Alius*—*Alium*, *Alter*—*Altèrum*, and the like :

Uterque educunt, *they each lead out.* Caes. Alter altèrum videmus, *We see each other.* Cic.

4. With Singular Subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum* :

Dux cum principibus capiuntur, *The leader with his chiefs is taken.* Liv. See 438. 6.

5. With *Partim*—*Partim* in the sense of *pars*—*pars* :

Bonorum partim necessaria, partim non necessaria sunt, *Of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary.* Cic.

**462. AGREEMENT WITH APPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN.**—Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or Predicate Noun :

Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum, concrematum est, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned.* Plin. Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda, *Not every error should be called folly.* Cic.

1. WITH AN APPOSITIVE.—The Verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbs*, *oppidum*, or *civitas*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

2. WITH A PREDICATE NOUN.—The verb agrees with the predicate noun, when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

**463. AGREEMENT WITH COMPOUND SUBJECT.**—With two or more subjects the verb agrees—

I. With one subject and is understood with the others :

Aut mōres spectāri aut fortūna sōlet, *Either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Hōmērus fuit et Hēsiodus ante Rōmān conditā, *Homer and Hesiod lived (were) before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the Plural Number :

Lentulus, Scipio perierunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cicero vālemus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tu et Tullia vāletis, *You and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. PERSON.—With subjects differing in Person, the verb takes the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third, as in the examples just given.

2. PARTICIPLES.—See 439.

3. TWO SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb :

Sēnātus pōpulusque intelligit, *The senate and people (i. e., the state as a unit) understand.* Cic. Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, *Time and necessity (i. e., the crisis) demand.* Cic.

4. SUBJECTS WITH AUT OR NEC.—With singular subjects connected by *aut*, *aut—aut*, *neo—nec*, the verb generally agrees with the nearest subject, but with subjects differing in person, it is generally Plur. :

Aut Brūtus aut Cassius iudicāvit, *Either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic. Haec nēque ego nēque tu fecimus, *Neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter.

## SECTION II.

### USE OF VOICES.

**464.** In a transitive verb, the Active voice represents the subject as acting upon some object, the Passive, as acted upon by some other person or thing :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. A Deo omnia facta sunt, *All things were made by God.* Cic.

**465. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.**—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But

I. That which in the active construction would be the object must be the subject in the passive ; and

II. That which in the active would be the subject must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, for persons, without it for things : (371.6) :

Deus omnia constituit, *God ordained all things*, or: A Deo omnia constituta sunt, *All things were ordained by God*. Cic. Dei providentia mundum administrat, *The providence of God rules the world*, or: Dei providentia mundus administratur, *The world is ruled by the providence of God*. Cic.

1. The PASSIVE VOICE is sometimes equivalent to the Act. with a reflexive pronoun, like the Greek Middle:

Lavantur in fluminibus, *They bathe (wash themselves) in the rivers*. Caes.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS (198) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Curritur ad praetorium, *They run to the praetorium (it is run to)*. Cic.

3. DEPONENT VERBS, though Passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mirabar, *I admired that*. Cic. Ab urbe proficisci, *to set out from the city*. Caes.

4. SEMI-DEPONENTS (272. 3) have some of the Active forms and some of the Passive, without change of meaning.

### SECTION III.

#### TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

##### I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cicero valemus, *Cicero and I are well*. Cic. Hoc te rogo, *I ask you for this*. Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used,

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths and customs*:

Nihil est amabilius virtute, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue*. Cic. Fortes fortuna adjuvat, *Fortune helps the brave*. Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the Historical Present:

Jugurtha vallo moenia circumdat, *Jugurtha surrounds the city with a rampart*. Sall.

1. HISTORICAL PRESENT.—This may sometimes be best rendered by the English Imperfect, and sometimes by the English Present, as that has a similar historical use.

2. **PRESENT WITH JAMDIU, JAMDUDUM.**—The Latin Present, when used of an action which has been going on for some time, may generally be best rendered by the English Perfect with *have*, especially after *jamdiu*, *jamdudum*, etc. :

*Jamdiu ignōro quid āgas, I have not known for a long time what you are doing.* Cic.

3. **PRESENT APPLIED TO AUTHORS.**—The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant :

*Xēnōphon fācit Socrātem dispūtāntem, Xenophon represents Socrates discussing.* Cic.

4. **PRESENT WITH DUM.**—The Present with *dum*, while, is often used of past actions :

*Dum ea pārānt, Sāguntum oppugnābātur, While they were (are) making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked.* Liv.

5. **PRESENT OF AN ATTEMPTED ACTION.**—The Present is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action :

*Tuscūlānum vendit, He is attempting to sell the Tusculan estate.* Cic.

6. **PRESENT FOR FUTURE.**—The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in conditions :

*Si vincimus, omnia tūta ērunt, If we conquer, all things will be safe.* Sall.

## II. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time :

*Stābant nobilissīmi jūvēnes, There stood (were standing) most noble youths.* Liv. *Colles oppidum cingebant, Hills encompassed the town.* Caes.

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events :

*Ante oppidum plānitēs pātēbat, Before the town extended a plain.* Caes. *Fulgentes glādios vidēbant, They saw (were seeing) the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary or repeated actions and events*, often rendered by *was wont*, etc. :

*Pausānias ēpūlābātur mōre Persārum, Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style.* Nep.

1. **IMPERFECT OF ATTEMPTED ACTION.**—The Imperfect is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action :

*Consūles sēdēbant tūmultus, The consuls attempted to quell the seditions.* Liv.

2. **IMPERFECT IN LETTERS.**—In letters the Imperfect is often used for the Present, as the writer adapts the tense to the time of the reader :

*Nihil hābēbam quod scribērem, I have nothing to write (I had, i. e., when I wrote).* Cic.

## III. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time :

Scribam ad te, *I will write to you.* Cic. Nunquam aberrābimus, *We shall never go astray.* Cic.

1. FUTURE WITH IMPERATIVE FORCE.—In Latin as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative :

Cūrābis et scribes, *You will take care and write.* Cic.

2. LATIN FUTURE FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future Tense, though sometimes put in the present in English :

Nātūram si sequēmur, nunquam aberrābimus, *If we follow nature, we shall never go astray.* Cic.

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE WITH MELIUS.—With *melius* the Future Indicative has often the force of the Subjunctive :

Mōlius peribimus, *We would perish rather, or it would be better for us to perish.* Liv.

## IV. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses :

I. As the PRESENT PERFECT or PERFECT DEFINITE, it represents the action as at present completed, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have* :

De gēnere belli dixi, *I have spoken of the character of the war.* Cic.

II. As the HISTORICAL PERFECT or PERFECT INDEFINITE, it represents the action as a simple historical fact :

Miltiades est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

1. PERFECT OF WHAT HAS CEASED TO BE.—The Perfect is sometimes used where the emphasis rests particularly on the *completion* of the action, implying that what was true of the past, is not true of the present :

Hābuit, non hābet, *He had, but has not.* Cic. Fuit Ilium, *Ilium was.* Virg.

2. PERFECT INDICATIVE WITH PAENE, PROPE.—The Perfect Indicative with *paene*, *prope*, may often be rendered by *might*, *would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative :

Brūtum non minus amo, *paene dixi*, quam te, *I love Brutus not less, I might almost say, or I had almost said, than I do you.* Cic.

3. PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect where the English uses the Present, especially in repeated and customary actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297) :

Mēminīit praetēritōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Quum ad villam vēni, hoc me dēlectat, *When I come (have come) to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic.

## V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some definite past time:

Cōpias quas pro castris collōcāverat, rēdūxit, *He led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes.

1. PLUPERFECT IN LETTERS.—In letters as the Imperfect is often used for the Present (469. 2), so the Pluperfect is often used for the Perfect:

Nihil hābēbam quod scribērem: ad tuas omnes epistōlas rescripsēram, *I have (had) nothing to write: I have already replied to all your letters (I had replied, i. e., before writing this).* Cic.

2. PLUPERFECT FOR ENGLISH IMPERFECT.—This occurs under the same circumstances as the Perfect for the Present (471. 3):

Mēmīnēram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

## VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam quum vēnērō, scribam ad te, *When I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tu haec lēges, ēgo illum fortasse convēnērō, *When you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. FUTURE PERFECT TO DENOTE CERTAINTY.—The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote the *speedy* or *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officium praestitūrō, *I will surely discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. FUTURE PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—This is rare, but occurs in conditional clauses:

Si interpretāri pōtūrō, his verbis tūtūr, *If I can (shall have been able to) understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

## SECTION IV.

### USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

#### RULE XXXVI.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Nonne expulsus est patria, *Was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hoc fēci, dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.



1. **THREE USES.**—The Indicative is thus used,

- 1) To *assert a fact*, as in the first example;
- 2) To *inquire after a fact*, as in the second example;
- 3) To *assume as a fact*, as in *dum licuit* in the third example.

2. **INDICATIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.**—The third use of the Indicative—to *assume as a fact*—belongs only to Subordinate clauses.

**475. SPECIAL USES.**—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive:

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (512. 2):

*Haec conditio non accipienda fuit, This condition should not have been accepted.* Cic. *Rēlictū agros erant nīsi littēras mīsisset, They would have abandoned (were about to) their fields had he not sent a letter.* Cic.

2. *Indicative for Effect.*—The Historical tenses of the Indicative, particularly the Pluperfect, are sometimes used for effect, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so:

*Vicērāmus, nīsi rēcēpisset Antōnium, We should have (lit. had) conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. *Mēlius fuērat, prōmissum non esse servātum, It would have been (had been) better that the promise should not have been kept.* Cic. See 511. 2.

3. *Indicative with Pronouns and Adverbs.*—Pronouns and relative adverbs, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cunque* (187. 4), take the Indicative:

*Quisquis est, is est sapiens, Whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. *Hoc ultimum, utcumque initum est, proelium fuit, This, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv.

4. *In Expressions of Duty, Necessity, Ability, and the like*, the Latin often uses the Indicative where the English does not:

*Tardius quam debuērat, more slowly than he should have done.* Cic.

So also in *cum* with *aequum, par, justum, melius, utilius, longum, difficile*, and the like:

*Longum est persēqui utilitatēs, It would be tedious (is a long task) to enumerate the uses.* Cic.

## SECTION V.

### TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**476.** Tense in the Subjunctive does not designate the time of the action as definitely as in the Indicative, but it marks with great exactness its continuance or completion.

477. The Present and Imperfect express *Incomplete* action:

Valeant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Utinam vëra invënire possem, *O that I were able to find the truth.* Cic.

478. The Perfect and Pluperfect express *Completed* action:

Oblitus es quid dixërim, *You have forgotten what I said.* Cic. Thëmistocles, quum Græciam libërasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic

479. The Future Tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive: the mood itself—used only of that which is merely *conceived* and *uncertain*—is so nearly related to the Future, that those tenses are seldom needed. Their place is however supplied, when necessary, by the periphrastic forms in *rus* (481. III. 1).

480. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—The Subjunctive Tenses in their use conform to the following

### RULE XXXVII.—Sequence of Tenses.

Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical upon Historical:

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Nëmto ërit qui censeat, *There will be no one who will think.* Cic. Quasiëräs nonne pütärem, *You had asked, whether I did not think.* Cic.

481. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In accordance with this rule,

I. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Principal tense—*present, present perfect, future, future perfect*—is put,

1. In the Present for Incomplete Action:

Videó quid ägas,	<i>I see what you are doing.</i>
Vidi quid ägas,	<i>I have seen what you are doing.</i>
Videbö quid ägas;	<i>I shall see what you do.</i>
Vidëro quid ägas,	<i>I shall have seen what you do.</i>

2. In the Perfect for Completed Action:

Videó quid ägëris,	<i>I see what you have done.</i>
Vidi quid egeris,	<i>I have seen what you have done.</i>
Videbö quid egeris,	<i>I shall see what you have done.</i>
Vidëro quid egeris,	<i>I shall have seen what you have done.</i>

II. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Historical tense—*imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*—is put,

1. In the Imperfect for Incomplete Action :

Vidēbam quid āgēres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidi quid āgeres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidēram quid āgeres,	<i>I had seen what you were doing.</i>

2. In the Pluperfect for Completed Action :

Vidēbam quid āgisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidi quid āgisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidēram quid āgisses,	<i>I had seen what you had done.</i>

III. The Periphrastic Forms in *rus* conform to the rule :

Video quid actūrus sis,	<i>I see what you are going to do.</i>
Vidēbam quid actūrus esses,	<i>I saw what you were going to do.</i>

1. FUTURE SUPPLIED.—The Future is supplied when necessary (479), (1) by the Present<sup>1</sup> or Imperfect Subjunctive of the periphrastic forms in *rus*, or (2) by *futūrum sit ut*,<sup>2</sup> with the regular Present, and *futūrum esset ut*, with the regular Imperfect. The first method is confined to the Active, the second occurs in both voices :

*Incertum est quam longa vīta futūra sit, It is uncertain how long life will continue. Cic. Incertum erat quo missūri classem fōrent, It was uncertain whither they would send the fleet. Liv.*

2. FUTURE PERFECT SUPPLIED.—The Future Perfect is supplied, when necessary, by *futūrum sit ut*, with the Perfect, and *futūrum esset ut*, with the Pluperfect. But this circumlocution is rarely necessary. In the Passive it is sometimes abridged to *futūrus sim* and *futūrus essem*, with the Perfect participle :

*Non dubito quin confecta jam res futūra sit, I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished. Cic.*

IV. The HISTORICAL PRESENT is treated sometimes as a Principal tense, as it really is in Form, and sometimes as a Historical tense, as it really is in Sense :

1. As Principal tense according to its Form :

*Ubī orant, ut sibi parcat, The Ubī implore him to spare them. Caes.*

2. As Historical tense according to its Sense :

*Persuadet Castico ut regnum occupāret, He persuaded Casticus to seize the government. Caes.*

V. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE often refers to *present* time, especially in conditional sentences (510. 1); accordingly, when thus used, it is treated as a Principal tense :

<sup>1</sup> The Present, of course, after Principal tenses, and the Imperfect after Historical tenses, according to 480.

<sup>2</sup> *Futūrum sit*, etc., after Principal tenses, and *futūrum esset*, etc., after Historical tenses.

*Mēmōrāre possem quibus in locis hostes fuderit, I might (now) state in what places he routed the enemy.* Sall.

VI. The PRESENT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES, Present and Future PARTICIPLES, as also GERUNDS and SUPINES, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (540. 571):

*Spēro fore<sup>1</sup> ut contingat, I hope it may happen* (I hope it will be that it may happen). Cic. *Non spērāverat fore ut ad se dēficerent, He had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

482. EXCEPTIONS IN SEQUENCE.—The following exceptions in the sequence of tenses occur:

1. AFTER PERFECT DEFINITE.—The Perfect Definite sometimes conforms to the law for the Historical Perfect, thus admitting the *Imperfect* for the *Present*:

*Quōniam quae subsidia hāberes expōsui, nunc dicam, Since I have shown what aids you have (or had), I will now speak.* Cic.

2. AFTER HISTORICAL TENSES.—Conversely Historical tenses, when followed by clauses denoting *consequence* or *result*, often conform to the law of sequence for Principal tenses, thus admitting the *Present* or *Perfect*:

*Epāminondas fide sic usus est, ut possit iudicāri, Epaminondas used such fidelity that it may be judged.* Nep. *Adeo excellēbat Aristides abstinētia, ut Justus sit appellātus, Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

Here the *Result* is viewed in its relation to the Present rather than to the Past: *possit iudicāri*, may be judged now; *sit appellātus*, has been called, i. e., even to the present day.

3. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ORATIO OBLIQUA.—In indirect discourse (528. and 538. 1) dependent upon a Historical tense, the narrator often uses the Principal tenses to give a lively effect to his narrative:

*Exītus fuit orationis: Nēque ullos vācāre agros, qui dāri possint; The close of the oration was, that there were (are) not any lands unoccupied, which could (can) be given.* Caes.

---

<sup>1</sup> Here *fore* shares the tense of *spēro*, and is accordingly followed by the Present *contingat*, but below it shares the tense of *spērāverat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect *dēficerent*.

## SECTION VI.

### USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

483. The Subjunctive represents the action of the verb, not as an actual fact, but as something supposed or conceived. It may denote that the action is conceived,

1. As Possible, Potential.
2. As Desirable.
3. As a Purpose or Result.
4. As a Condition.
5. As a Concession.
6. As a Cause or Reason.
7. As an Indirect Question.
8. As dependent upon another subordinate action: (1) By Attraction after another Subjunctive, (2) In Indirect Discourse.

484. VARIETIES.—The Subjunctive in its various uses may accordingly be characterized as follows:

- I. The Potential Subjunctive.
- II. The Subjunctive of Desire.
- III. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result.
- IV. The Subjunctive of Condition.
- V. The Subjunctive of Concession.
- VI. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason.
- VII. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.
- VIII. The Subjunctive by Attraction.
- IX. The Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

### I. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### RULE XXXVIII.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible*:

Forsitan quaerātis, *Perhaps you may inquire*. Cic. Hoc nemo dixerit, *No one would say this*. Cic. Huic cēdamus, hujus conditionēs audiamus, *Shall we yield to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic.

486. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In this Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used,

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*, as in the first and second examples.

II. In *Deliberative Questions*, to ask not what is, but what *may be* or *should be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last example under the rule.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real*:

Quamquam ōpūlis cāreat sēnectus, *though old age may be without its feasts*. Cic. Quōniam non possent, *since they would not be able*. Caes. Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might demand*. Liv.

Here the Subjunctive after *quamquam*, *quōniam*, and *ubi*, is entirely independent of those conjunctions. In this way many conjunctions which do not require the Subjunctive, admit that mood whenever the thought requires it.

1. USE OF THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.—This Subjunctive, it will be observed, has a wide application, and is used in almost all kinds of sentences and clauses, whether declarative or interrogative, principal or subordinate, whether introduced by conjunctions or relatives.

2. *How rendered*.—The Potential Subjunctive is generally best rendered by our Potential signs—*may, can, must, might*, etc., but sometimes by *shall* or *will*.

3. SUBJUNCTIVE OF INCLINATION.—The Subjunctive sometimes denotes inclination:

Ego censeam, *I should think, or I am inclined to think*. Liv.

4. IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.—In the Potential sense, the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dīcēres*, you would have said; *crēdēres, putāres*, you would have thought; *vidēres, cernēres*, you would have seen:

Moesti, *crēdēres* victos, rēdeunt in castra, *Sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp*. Liv.

5. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION.—Subordinate clauses in narration sometimes take the Subjunctive to denote that the action is *often* or *indefinitely repeated*. Thus with *ubi*, whenever, *quōties*, as often as, *quicunque*, whoever, *ut quisque*, as each one, and the like:

Id fētiālis ubi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, *The fētial priest was wont to hurl a spear whenever (i. e., every time) he had said this*. Liv. Ut quisque lābōrāret lōcus, occurrēbat, *As each place (one after another) became endangered, he rushed to its relief*. Liv.

## II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.

## RULE XXXIX.—Desire, Command.

487. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired* :

Văleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Amemus patriam, *Let us love our country.* Cic. Robore utare, *Use your strength.* Cic. Scribere ne pigresce, *Do not neglect to write.* Cic.

488. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—The Subjunctive of Desire is used,

I. To express a WISH, as in *prayers, exhortations, and entreaties*, as in the first and second examples.

II. To express a COMMAND mildly, as in *admonitions, precepts, and warnings*, as in the third and fourth examples.

1. WITH UTINAM.—The Subjunctive of *Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes—especially in the poets, by *ut*, *si*, *o si* :

Utinam cōnata efficere possim, *May I be able to accomplish my endeavors.* Cic.

2. FORCE OF TENSES.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled ; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled :

Sint beati, *May they be happy.* Cic. Ne transieris Ibērum, *Do not cross the Ebro.* Liv. Utinam possem, utinam pōtuissem, *Would that I were able, would that I had been able.* Cic.

The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered, *should have been, ought to have been* :

Hoc dicēret, *He should have said this.* Cic. Mortem oppētīlisses, *You should have met death.* Clō.

3. NEGATIVE NE.—With this Subjunctive the negative is *ne*, rarely *non* :  
Ne audeant, *Let them not dare.* Cic. Non recēdāmus, *Let us not recede.* Cic.

4. IN ASSEVERATIONS.—The first person of the subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn affirmations or asseverations :

Mōriar, si pūto, *May I die, if I think.* Cic. Ne sim salvus, si scribo, *May I not be safe, if I write.* Cic.

So with *ita* and *sic* : Sollicitat, ita vīvam, *As I live, it troubles me.* Cic.

Here *ita vīvam* means literally, *may I so live*, i. e., may I live only in case this is true.

5. IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—The Subjunctive of desire is sometimes used in relative clauses :

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *Elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event* (may which be auspicious). Liv. Sēnectus, ad quam utinam pervēniātis, *old age, to which may you attain.* Cic.

## III. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.

## RULE XL.—Purpose or Result.

489. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used,

I. With *ut, ne, quo, quin, quōminus* :

PURPOSE.—*Enītur ut vincat, He strives that he may conquer. Cic. Pūnit ne peccetur, He punishes that crime may not be committed. Sen.*

RESULT.—*Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset carissimus, He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians. Nep.*

II. With *qui = ut is, ut ego, tu, etc.* :

PURPOSE.—*Missi sunt, qui (ut ii) consulerent Apollinem, They were sent to consult Apollo (who should or that they should). Nep.*

RESULT.—*Non is sum qui (ut ego) his utar, I am not such an one as to use these things. Cic.*

## Conjunctions of Purpose or Result.

1. *Ut* and *Ne*.

490. *Ut* and *ne* are the regular conjunctions in clauses denoting Purpose or Result.

*Ut* and *ne* denote Purpose.

*Ut* and *ut non* denote Result.

491. PURE PURPOSE.—*Ut* and *ne*—*that, in order that, that not, in order that not, lest, etc.*—are used after verbs of a great variety of significations to express simply the Purpose of the action. A correlative—*ideo, idcirco, etc.*—may or may not precede :

*Legum idcirco servi sumus, ut liberi esse possimus, We are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free. Cic.* See also the examples under the Rule.

492. MIXED PURPOSE.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ne* are used to denote a *Purpose* which partakes more or less of the character of a *Direct Object*—Mixed Purpose. Thus with verbs and expressions denoting

1. EFFORT—striving for a purpose ; attaining a purpose :

*nitor, contendo, studeo, —curo, id ago, operam do, etc., facio, efficio, impetro, consequor, etc.* :



Contendit, ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Cūrāvi ut bene vivērem, *I took care to lead a good life.* Sen. Effecit ut impērātor mittērētur, *He caused a commander to be sent (attained his purpose).* Nep. But see 495.

## 2. EXHORTATION, IMPULSE—urging one to effort :

admōneo, mōneo, hortor,—cōgo, impello, mōveo,—ōro, rōgo,—impēro, praecipio, etc. :

Te hortor ut lēgas, *I exhort you to read.* Cic. Mōvēmur ut bōni almus, *We are influenced to be good.* Cic. Te rōgo ut eum jūves, *I ask you to aid him.* Cic. See also 551.-II. 1 and 2 ; 558. VI.

## 3. DESIRE AND ITS EXPRESSION : hence decision, decree, etc. :

opto, postūlo,—censeo, dēcerno, stātuo, constituo, etc.—rarely vōlo, nōlo, mālo :

Opto ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this.* Cic. Sēnātus censuerat, ūti Aeduos dēfendēret, *The senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui.* Caes.

For other particulars see 551. II. and 558. II. and VI.

## 4. FEAR :

mētuo, timeo, vēreor,—pēricūlum est, cūra est, etc. :

Timeo, ut sustineas, *I fear you will not endure them.* Cic. Vēreor ne lābōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor.* Cic.

1) By a Difference of Idiom *ut* must here be rendered *that not*, and *ne* by *that* or *lest*. This arises from the fact that the Latin treats the clause as a wish, a desired purpose, while the English treats it as the direct object of the verb.

2) *Ne non* for *ut*.—After verbs of fearing *ne non* is sometimes used for *ut*, regularly so after negative clauses :

Vēreor ne non possit, *I fear that he will not be able.* Cic.

3) *Infinitives*.—After verbs of fearing, especially *vēreor*, the infinitive is sometimes used :

Vēreor laudāre, *I fear (hesitate) to praise.* Cic.

## 493. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities :

### 1. *Ut ne*, rarely *ut non*, for *ne* :

Praedixit, ut ne lēgātos dimittērent, *He charged them not to (that they should not) release the delegates.* Nep. Ut plūra non dicam, *not to say more*, i. e., that I may not. Cic.

### 2. *Ut* omitted,—especially with *vōlo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, *fācio*, and verbs of directing, urging, and the like :

Tu vēlim sis, *I desire that you may be.* Cic. Fac hābeas, *see (make) that you have.* Cic. Sēnātus decrēvit, dārent ōpēram consūles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it.* Sall.

### 3. *Ut* and *Ne* dependent upon a Noun :

*Fecit pacem his conditionibus, ne qui afficerentur exilio, He made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile.* Nep.

4. *Nedum* and *ne* dependent upon *fac* (or some other word) understood:

*Vix in tectis frigus vitatur, nedum in mari sit facile, The cold is escaped with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy on the sea.* Cic.

**494. PURE RESULT.**—*Ut* and *ut non*—*so that, so that not*—are often used with the Subjunctive, to express simply a *Result* or a *Consequence*:

*Ita vixit ut Atheniensibus esset carissimus, He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. *Ita laudo, ut non pertimescam, I so praise as not to fear.* Cic.

A correlative—*ita* in these examples—generally precedes: thus, *ita, sic, tam, adeo, tantopere, talis, tantus, ejusmodi*.

**495. MIXED RESULT.**—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ut non* are used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Result* which partakes of the character of a *Direct Object, Subject, or Appositive*: Thus

1. **OBJECT AND RESULT**—with *fucio, efficio*, of the action of irrational forces:

*Sol efficit ut omnia florescant, The sun causes all things to bloom, i. e., produces that result.* Cic. See 492. 1.

2. **SUBJECT AND RESULT**—with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, remains, follows, is distant, etc.*:

*accidit, contingit, evenit, fit, restat, sequitur, adest, etc.*

*Fit ut quisque delectetur, The result is (it happens) that every one is delighted.* Cic. *Sequitur ut falsum sit, It follows that it is false.* Cic.

1) The Subjunctive is sometimes, though rarely, used when the predicate is a Noun or Adjective with the copula *sum*:

*Mos est ut nolint, It is their custom not to be willing* (that they are unwilling). Cic. *Proximum est, ut doceam, The next point is, that I show.* Cic. See 556. I. 1 and 2.

2) Subjunctive Clauses with *ut*, in the form of questions expressive of surprise, sometimes stand alone, by the omission of some predicate, as *credendum est, verisimile est*, is it to be credited, is it probable?

*Tu ut unquam te corrigas, that you should ever reform?* i. e., Is it to be supposed that you will ever reform? Cic.

3) See also 556 with its subdivisions.

3. **APPOSITIVE AND RESULT**—with Demonstratives and a few Nouns:

*Habet hoc virtus ut delectet, Virtue has this advantage, that it delights.* Cic. *Est hoc vitium, ut invidia gloriae comes sit, There is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory.* Nep.

**496. PECULIARITIES.**—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities:

1. *Ut* omitted:

*Te oportet virtus trahat, It is necessary that virtue should attract you.*

*Cic. Causam habeat necesse est, It is necessary that it should have a cause.*  
*Cic.*

2. Subjunctive with *Quam*—with or without *ut*:

*Liberalius quam ut posset, too freely to be able* (more freely than so as to be able). *Nep. Imponēbat amplius quam ferre possent, He imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. *Tantum abest.*—After *tantum abest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs:

*Philosophia, tantum abest, ut laudetur ut etiam vituperetur, So far is it from the truth* (so much is wanting), *that philosophy is praised that it is even censured.* *Cic.*

2. **Quo, Quin, Quominus.**

**497. Quo, by which, that,** is sometimes used for *ut*, especially with comparatives:

*Médico dare quo sit studiōsior, to give to the physician, that* (by this means) *he may be more attentive.* *Cic.*

For *non quo* of Cause, see 520. 3.

**498. QUIN.**—*Quin* (*qui* and *ne*), *by which not, that not*, is often used to introduce a Purpose or Result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative. Thus especially,

1. In the ordinary sense of *ne* and *ut non*:

*Rētinēri non pōtērant, quin tela conijcerent, They could not be restrained from hurling* (that they might not) *their weapons.* *Cacs. Nihil est tam difficile quin (ut non) investigāri possit, Nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated.* *Ter.*

After verbs of *hindering, opposing*, and the like, *quin* has the force of *ne*.

2. After *Nemo, Nullus, Nihil, Quis?*

*Adest nemo, quin videat, There is no one present who does not see.* *Cic. Quis est quin cernat, Who is there who does not perceive?* *Cic.*

*Is* or *id* is sometimes expressed after *quin*:

*Nihil est quin id intēreat, There is nothing which does not perish.* *Cic.*

3. In the sense of *that, but that, without*, with a participial noun, especially after negative expressions, implying *doubt, uncertainty, omission*, and the like:

Non est dubium quin beneficium sit, *There is no doubt that it is a benefit.* Sen. Nullum intermisi diem quin aliquid darem, *I allowed no day to pass, without giving something.* Cic. Facere non possum quin litteras mit- tam, *I cannot but send a letter.* Cic.

1) Such expressions are: non dubito, non dubium est—non multum adest, pau- lum adest, nihil adest, quid adest?—non, vix, segre abstinere; mihi non tempore; non, nihil praetermitto—facere non possum, fieri non potest.

2) The Infinitive, for *Quin* with the Subjunctive, occurs with verbs of doubting: Quis dubitat patere Europam, *Who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

3) *Non Quin* of Cause. See 520. 3.

499. QUOMINUS.—Quominus (quo and minus), *that thus the less, that not*, is sometimes used for *ne* and *ut non*, after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like:

Non deterret sapientem mors quominus reipublicae consulat, *Death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic. Non recusavit, quominus poenam subiret, *He did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. Per eum stetit quominus dimicaretur, *It was owing to him (stood through him), that the engagement was not made.* Caes.

1. Expressions of *hindering*, etc., are: deterreo, impedio, prohibeo,—obsto, obsisto, officio,—recuso, per me stat, etc.

2. Verbs of *hindering* admit a variety of constructions: the Infinitive, the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, or *quominus*.

### *Relative of Purpose or Result.*

500. A Relative Clause denoting a Purpose or a Re- sult is equivalent to a clause with *ut*, denoting purpose or result, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason. The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a pronoun: *qui* = *ut ego*, *ut tu*, *ut is*, etc.: but the clause may often be best ren- dered by the English Infinitive:

PURPOSE.—Missi sunt qui (ut ii) consulerent Apollinem, *They were sent to consult Apollo (who should, or that they should).* Nep. Missi sunt delecti qui Thermopylas occuparent, *Picked men were sent to take possession of Ther- mopylae.* Nep.

RESULT.—Non is sum qui (= *ut ego*) his utar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.* Cic. Innocentia est affectio talis animi, quae (= *ut ea*) no- ceat nemini, *Innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one, or as to injure no one.* Cic.

1. PURPOSE.—Relative clauses denoting purpose involve no difficulties, and are readily recognized.

2. RESULT.—Relative clauses denoting result are used in their more ob- vious applications, after such words as *tam*, *so*; *talis*, *is*, *ejusmodi*, *such*, *as*

in the above examples; but they also occur in many cases which require special mention. See 501.

3. INDICATIVE AFTER TALIS, ETC.—In a relative clause after *talis*, *is*, etc., the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*:

Mihi causa talis oblata est, in qua oratio deesse nemini potest, *Such a cause has been offered me, (one) in which no one can fail of an oration (an oration can be wanting to no one).* Cic.

501. Relative clauses of Result, in their less obvious applications, include,

I. Relative clauses after *Indefinite* and *General antecedents*, where such words as *tam*, *talis*, *is*, etc., may be supplied:

Nunc dicis aliquid (*ejusmodi*, or *tale*) quod ad rem pertineat, *Now you state something which belongs to the subject (i. e., something of such a character as to belong, etc.).* Cic. Sunt qui putent, *there are some who think.* Cic. Nemo est qui non cupiat, *there is no one who does not desire, i. e., such as not to desire.* Cic.

1. In the same way *quod*, or a relative particle, *ubi*, *unde*, *quo*, *cur*, etc., with the *Subjunctive* is used after *est*, there is reason, *non est, nihil est*, there is no reason, *quid est*, what reason is there? *non habeo, nihil habeo*, I have no reason:

Est quod gaudeas, *There is reason why you should rejoice, or so that you may.* Plaut. Non est quod credas, *There is no reason why you should believe.* Sen. Nihil habeo, quod incusem senectutem, *I have no reason why I should accuse old age.* Cic.

2. INDICATIVE AFTER INDEFINITE ANTECEDENT.—A Relative clause after an indefinite antecedent also takes the Indicative, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt qui non audent dicere, *There are some who (actually) do not dare to speak.* Cic. Multa sunt, quae dici possunt, *There are many things which may be said.* Cic. So also clauses with Rel. particles. See 1 above.

In poetry and late prose the Indicative often follows *sunt qui*:

Sunt quos juvat, *there are some whom it delights.* Hor.

II. Relative clauses after *Unus*, *Solus*, and the like, denoting that the antecedent is the only thing of such a character as to produce a given result:

Sapientia est una, quae moestitiam pellat, *Wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness (such as to dispel).* Cic. Soli centum erant qui creari possent, *There were only one hundred who could be appointed (such that they could be).* Liv.

III. Relative clauses after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Idoneus*, and *Apertus*, showing the Result of the fitness or worthiness:

Fabulae dignae sunt, quae legantur, *The fables are worthy to be read (that they should be read).* Cic. Rufum Caesar idoneum iudicaverat quem mitteret, *Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send (whom he might send).* Caes.

IV. Relative clauses after Comparatives with *Quam*:

Here the Subjunctive is entirely analogous to any other Subjunctive after *Quam* (496. 2):

*Damna majōra sunt quam quae (= ut ea) aestimāri possint, The losses are too great to be estimated (greater than so that they can be). Liv.*

#### IV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION.

502. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood,—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion*:

*Si negem, mentiar, If I should deny it, I should speak falsely. Cic.*  
Here *si negem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

#### RULE XLI.—Subjunctive of Condition.

503. The Subjunctive of Condition is used,

I. With *dum, mōdo, dummodo*:

*Mānent ingēnia, mōdo permāneat industria, Mental powers remain, if only industry remains. Cic.*

II. With *ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vōlut, vōlut si*:

*Crūdēlītātē, vōlut si ādesset, horrēbant, They shuddered at his cruelty, as if he were present. Cæc.*

III. Sometimes with *si, nisi, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis*:

*Dies dēficiat, si vēlim nūmērāre, The day would fail me, if I should wish to recount. Cic. Imprōbe fēcēris, nisi mōnuēris, You would do wrong, if you should not give warning. Cic. Si vōluisset, dīmīcasset, If he had wished, he would have fought. Nep.*

1. *Si OMITTED*.—Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence:

*Nēgat quis, nēgo, Does any one deny, I deny. Ter. Rōges me, nihil rēpondeam, Should you ask me, I should make no reply. Cic. See also Imperative, 535. 2.*

2. *CONDITION SUPPLIED*.—This may be done,

1) By *Participles*: *Non pōtestis, vōluptātē omnia dirīgētes (si dirīgētis), rētīnēre virtutē, You cannot retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure. Cic.*

2) By *Oblique Cases*: *Nēmo sīne spe (nisi spem hāberet) se offerret ad mortē, No one without a hope (if he had not a hope) would expose himself to death. Cic.*

**504. FORCE OF TENSES.**—In conditional sentences the Present and Perfect tenses represent the supposition as not at all improbable, the Imperfect and Pluperfect represent it as contrary to the fact. See examples above. See also 476 to 478.

1. **PRESENT FOR IMPERFECT.**—The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Imperfect, when a condition, in itself contrary to reality, is still conceived of as possible :

Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias, *If you were the one (or, should be), you would think differently.* Ter.

2. **IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.**—The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Pluperfect, with the nice distinction that it contemplates the supposed action as *going on*, not as completed :

Num Opimium, si tum esses, tēmērarium civem putāres? *Would you think Opimius an audacious citizen, if you were living at that time (Pluperf. would you have thought—if you had lived)?* Cic.

### 1. Conditional Sentences with *Dum*, *Mōdo*, *Dummōdo*.

**505.** *Dum*, *mōdo*, and *dummōdo*, in conditions, have the force of—*if only*, *provided that*, or with *ne*, *if only not*, *provided that not* :

*Dum res māneant, verba fingant, Let them make words, if only the facts remain.* Cic. *Mōdo permāneat industria, if only industry remains.* Cic. *Dummōdo repellant pericūlum, provided he may avert danger.* Cic. *Mōdo ne laudarent, if only they did not praise.* Cic.

When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the indicative :

*Dum lēges vigēbant, while the laws were in force.* Cic.

### 2. Conditional Sentences with *Ac si*, *Ut si*, *Quāsi*, etc.

**506.** *Ac si*, *ut si*, *quā si*, *quāsi*, *tanquam*, *tanquam si*, *vēlut*, *vēlut si*, involve an ellipsis of the real conclusion :

*Misērior es, quam si oculos non habēres, You are more unhappy than (esses, you would be) if you had not eyes.* Cic. *Crūdēlītātem, vēlut si adesset, horrēbant, They shuddered at his cruelty as (they would) if he were present.* Caes. *Ut si in suam rem aliēna convertant, as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use.* Cic. *Tanquam audiant, as if they may hear.* Sen.

*Ceu* and *Sicuti* are sometimes used in the same way :

*Ceu bella fōrent, as if there were wars.* Virg. *Sicuti audiri possent, as if they could be heard.* Sall.

### 3. Conditional Sentences with *Si*, *Nisi*, *Ni*, *Sin*, *Qui*.

507. The Latin distinguishes three distinct forms of the conditional sentence with *si*, *nisi*, *ni*, *sin*:

- I. Indicative in both Clauses.
- II. Subjunctive, Present or Perfect, in both Clauses.
- III. Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both Clauses.

508. **First Form.**—*Indicative in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *real*, basing upon it any statement which would be admissible, if it were a known fact:

*Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, If this is a state, I am a citizen. Cic.*  
*Si non licēbat, non nēcesse erat, If it was not lawful, it was not necessary. Cic.*  
*Dolorem si non pōtēro frangere, occultabo, If I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it. Cic.*  
*Parvi sunt fōris arma, nisi est consilium dōmi, Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home. Cic.*

1. **CONDITION.**—The condition is introduced, when affirmative, by *si*, with or without other particles, as *quidem*, *mōdo*, etc., and when negative, by *si non*, *nisi*, *ni*. The time may be either *present*, *past*, or *future*. See examples above.

2. **CONCLUSION.**—This may take the form of a command:  
*Si peccāvi, ignosce, If I have erred, pardon me. Cic.*

509. **Second Form.**—*Subjunctive Present or Perfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the condition as *possible*:

*Haec si tēcum patria lōquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat, If your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request? Cic.*  
*Imprōbe fēcēris, nisi mōnuēris, You would do wrong, if you should not give warning. Cic.* See also examples under the Rule, 503.

When dependent upon a Historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of tenses (480).

*Mēruit ne, si Iret, retrāhērētur, He feared lest if he should go, he might be brought back. Liv.*

510. **Third Form.**—*Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *contrary to the reality*, and simply states what would have been the result, if the condition had been fulfilled:



*Sapientia non expetèrètur, si nihil efficeret, Wisdom would not be sought (as it is), if it accomplished nothing.* Cic. *Si optima tènere possèmus, haud sàne consilio egèrèmus, If we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel.* Cic. *Si vòluisset, dimicasset, If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep. *Nunquam àbisset, nìsi sibi viam mūnìvisset, He would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way.* Cic.

1. Here the *Imperfect* relates to Present time, as in the first and second examples: the *Pluperfect* to Past time, as in the third and fourth examples.

2. The *Perfect Indicative* of the periphrastic forms in *rus* sometimes occurs in the conclusion:

*Quid fùtùrum fuit, si plebs àgìtari coepta esset, What would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated?* Liv. See also 512. 2.

**511. MIXED FORMS.**—The Latin sometimes unites a condition belonging to one of the three regular forms with a conclusion belonging to another, thus producing certain Mixed Forms.

**I. Indicative in the Condition with the Subjunctive in the Conclusion.**—This combination is in most instances only apparent, as the Subjunctive is generally dependent not upon the condition, but upon the very nature of the thought:

*Pèream, si pòtèrunt, May I perish (subj. of desire, 487), if they shall be able.* Cic. *Quid timeam, si beàtus fùtùrus sum, Why should I fear (486. II.), if I am to be happy?* Cic.

**II. Subjunctive in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion.**—In this combination the Indicative gives the effect of reality to the conclusion, even though in fact dependent upon contingencies:

*Dies deficiet, si vèlim causam defendère, The day would (will) fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.* Cic. *Vicèramus nìsi rēcèpisset Antònium, We had conquered; had he not received Antony.* Cic.

1. The *Future Indicative* is often thus used in consequence of its near relationship in force to the Subjunctive, as whatever is Future is more or less contingent. See first example.

2. The *Historical tenses*, especially the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used, for effect, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so, as in the last example.

**512. SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.**—This combination of the Subjunctive and Indicative is often only apparent. Thus

1. When the truth of the conclusion is not in reality affected by the condition, as when *si* has the force of *even if, although*:

Si hoc plăceat, tamen vřlant, *Even if (although) this pleases them, they still wish.* Cic.

2. When that which stands as the conclusion is such only in appearance, the real conclusion being understood. This occurs

1) With the Indicative of *Dēbeo*, *Possum*, and the like :

Quem, si ulla in te pietas esset, cōlre debēbas, *Whom you ought to have honored (and would have honored), if there were any filial affection in you.* Cic. Dēlari exercitus pōtuit, si persēcuti victōres essent, *The army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

2) With the Imperfect and Perfect Indicative of other verbs, especially if in a periphrastic conjugation or accompanied by *Paene* or *Prōpe* :

Rēlicturi agros ērant, nīsi littēras mīsisset, *They were about to leave their lands (and would have done so), had he not sent a letter.* Cic. Pons īter paene hostibus dedit, nī tñus vir fuisset, *The bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have done so), had there not been one man.* Liv.

513. RELATIVE INVOLVING CONDITION.—The relative takes the subjunctive when it is equivalent to *si* or *dum* with the subjunctive :

Errat longe, qui crēdat, etc., *He greatly errs who supposes, etc., i. e., if or provided any one supposes, he greatly errs.* Ter. Hæc quī videat, cōgātur, *If any one should see these things, he would be compelled.* Cic. Quod sine fraude fiat, *so far as, or if only it can be done without injury.* Liv.

This principle should not be too freely applied, but it seems to present the best explanation of the Subjunctive in a few instances. *Quod sciam, quod mēmīnērim*, and the like, in the sense *so far as, or if only I know, remember, etc.* admit of this explanation.

## V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCESSIONS.

514. A concession is only a conceded condition: accordingly concessive clauses bear a strong resemblance to conditional clauses both in form and use. Thus

1. CONDITIONAL : Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.*

2. CONCESSIVE : Quamquam peccāvi, ignosce, *Though I have erred, pardon me.*

## RULE XLII.—Subjunctive of Concession.

515. The Subjunctive of Concession is used,

I. With *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum*, although :

*Licet* irrideat, plus tamen ratio valebit, *Though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. *Ut* desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas, *Though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid.

II. With *qui* = *quum* (*licet*) *is*, *quum* *ego*, etc., though he :

Absolvite Verrem, qui (*quum is*) se fateatur pecunias cepisse, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses (who may confess) that he has accepted money.* Cic.

III. Generally with *etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi* :

Quod sentiunt, *etsi* optimum sit, tamen non audent dicere, *They do not dare to state what they think, even if (though) it be most excellent.* Cic.

516. Concessive Clauses may be divided into three classes :

I. Concessive Clauses with *quamquam*. These in the best prose generally take the Indicative :

Quamquam intelligunt, tamen nunquam dicunt, *Though they understand, they never speak.* Cic.

1. The Subjunctive may of course follow *quamquam*, whenever the thought itself, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood. See 485.

2. The Subjunctive, even in the best prose, sometimes occurs with *quamquam* where we should expect the Indicative :

Quamquam ne id quidem suspicionem habuerit, *Though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

In poetry and some of the later prose, the subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction.

II. Concessive Clauses with *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum*, although ;—*qui* = *quum* (or *licet*) *is*, *ego*, *tu*, etc. These take the Subjunctive :

Non tu possis, quantumvis excellas, *You would not be able, however much (although) you excel.* Cic. Ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est, *Though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. See 518.

I. *UT* AND *NE*.—This concessive use of *ut* and *ne* may readily be explained by supplying some verb like *fac* or *sine* : thus, *ut desint vires* (515. I.) = *fac or sine ut desint vires*, make or grant that strength fails. See 489.

The Concessive Particle is sometimes omitted :

Sed habeat, tamen, *But grant that it has it, yet.* Cic.

*UT*—*SIC* OR *ITA*, *as—so, though—yet*, does not require the subjunctive.

2. **QUAMVIS AND QUANTUMVIS.**—These are strictly adverbs, in the sense of *however much*, but they generally give to the clause the force of a concession. When used with their simple adverbial force to qualify adjectives, they do not affect the mood of the clause: *quamvis multi*, however many.

3. **MOOD WITH QUAMVIS.**—In Cicero and the best prose, *quamvis* takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in the poets and later prose writers it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignitate regia, quamvis cærebat nōmine, *He was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

4. **RELATIVE IN CONCESSIONS.**—The relative denoting concession is equivalent to *licet*, or *quum*, in the sense of *though*, with a Demonstrative or Personal pronoun, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason: *qui* = *licet* (*quum*) *is*, *licet* *ego*, *tu*, etc. See examples under the Rule, 515.

III. **Concessive Clauses with the compounds of *si*:** *etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *tāmsi*. These in the use of Moods and Tenses conform to the rule for conditional clauses with *si*:

Etsi nihil hābeat in se glōria, tāmen virtutem sēquitur, *Though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic. *Etiāmsi mors oppētenda esset, even if death ought to be met.* Cic.

## VI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE AND TIME.

### RULE XLIII.—Subjunctive of Cause.

517. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used,

I. With *quum* (*cum*), since; *qui* = *quum is*, etc.:

*Quum* vīta mētus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. *Quae quum ita sint, perge, Since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. *O vis vērītātis, quae (quum ea) se dēfendat, O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

II. With *quod*, *quia*, *quōniam*, *quando*, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

*Socrātes accusātus est, quod corrumpēret iuventūtem, Socrates was accused, because (on the alleged ground that) he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

### Causal Clauses with *Quum* and *Quā*

518. **QUUM.**—*Quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes,

I. **CAUSE OR CONCESSION:**

*Quum* sint in nōbis rātio, prūdētia, *since there is in us reason and prudence.* Cic. *Phōcion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset, Phocion was poor, though he might have been very rich.* Nep. See also 515.

## II. TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or CONCESSION :

Quum dimicāret, occisus est, *When he engaged battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiēbam frēquenter, *I often heard Zeno, when I was at Athens.* Cic.

1. QUUM IN NARRATION.—*Quum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is very frequent in narration even in temporal clauses. See examples under II. above.

This use of *Quum* with the Subjunctive may in most instances be readily explained by the fact that it involves *Cause* as well as *Time*. Thus *quum dimicāret*, in the first example, not only states the *time* of the action—*occisus est*, but also its *cause* or *occasion*: the engagement was the *occasion* of his death. So with *quum essem*, as presence in Athens was an indispensable condition of hearing Zeno. But in some instances the notion of *Cause* or *Concession* is not at all apparent.

2. QUUM WITH TEMPUS, ETC.—*Quum* with the Subjunctive is sometimes used to characterize a period :

Id saecūlum quum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when* (such that) *Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, quum dēsīdēres, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic. So without *tempus*, etc. : Fuit quum arbitrārer, *there was* (a time) *when I thought.* Cic.

3. QUUM WITH INDICATIVE.—*Quum* denoting time merely, with perhaps a few exceptions in narration, takes the Indicative :

Quum quiescunt, prōbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Pārui, quum nēcesse ērat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic.

519. QUI, CAUSE OR REASON.—A Relative clause denoting cause or reason, is equivalent to a Causal clause with *Quum*, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason :

O fortunāte adōlescens, qui (*quum tu*) tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēnēris, *O fortunate youth, since you* (lit. who) *have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. EQUIVALENTS.—In such clauses, *qui* is equivalent to *quum* *ēgo*, *quum tu*, *quum is*, etc.

2. INDICATIVE.—When the statement is to be viewed as a *fact* rather than as a *reason*, the Indicative is used :

Hābeo sēnectūti grātiam, quae mihi sermōnis aviditatem auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic.

3. QUI WITH CONJUNCTIONS.—When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus,

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *quum*, *quippe*, *ut*, *utpōte* :

Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quippe qui blandiatur, *since he flatters.* Cic. Ut qui cōlōni essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*.

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia*, *quōniam* :

Quae quia certa esse non possunt, *since these things cannot be sure.* Cic. Qui quōniam intelligi nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

*Causal Clauses with Quod, Quia, Quoniam, Quando.*

520. *Quod, quia, quoniam*, and *quando* generally take,

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority*:

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed*.  
Cic. Gaude quod spectant te, *Rejoice that (because) they behold you*. Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully, or on another's authority*:

Aristides nonne expulsus est patria, quod justus esset, *Was not Aristides banished because (on the alleged ground that) he was just?* Cic.

1. QUOD WITH DICO, ETC.—*Quod* with the Subjunctive of *dico*, *piro*, and the like, is often thus used to state a reason on another's authority:

Quod se bellum gesturos dicērent = quod bellum gesturi essent, ut dicēbant, *because they were about, as they said, to wage war*. Caes.

2. CLAUSES WITH QUOD UNCONNECTED. See 554. IV.

3. NON QUO, ETC.—*Non quo, non quod, non quin*, rarely *non quia*, also *quam quod*, etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote that something was *not* the true reason:

Non quo habērem quod scribērem, *not because (that) I had anything to write*. Cic. Non quod dōleant, *not because they are pained*. Cic. Quia nōquiverat quam quod ignorāret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know*. Liv.

4. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. See 485 and 486.

**RULE XLIV.—Time with Cause.**

521. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used,

I. With *dum, donec, quoad*, until:

Expectas dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic. Ea continēbis quoad te videam, *You will keep them till I see you*. Cic.

II. With *antēquam, priusquam*, before, before that:

Antēquam de re publica dicam, expōnam consilium, *I will set forth my plan before I (can) speak of the republic*, i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic. Cic. Priusquam incipias, *before you begin*. Sall.

1. EXPLANATION.—Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time*: *dum dicat* is nearly equivalent to *ut dicat*, which is also often used after *expecto*. *Antēquam dicam* is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dicam*: *I will set forth my views, that I may afterwards speak of the republic*.

2. **WITH OTHER CONJUNCTIONS.**—The Subjunctive may of course be used in any temporal clause, when the thought, irrespective of the temporal particle, requires that mood; see 486. III.

Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might require.* Liv.

**522. DUM, DONEC, QUOAD.**—These take,

I. The *Indicative*,—(1) in the sense of *while, as long as*, and (2) in the sense of *until*, if the action is viewed as an *actual fact*:

Dum lēges vigēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Quoad rēnuntiātum est, *until it was (actually) announced.* Nep.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed not so much as a fact as something *desired or proposed*:

Diffērant, dum dēfervescat Ira, *Let them defer it, till their anger cools,* i. e., that it may cool. Cic. See also examples under the rule.

1. **DONEC, IN TACITUS**, generally takes the Subjunctive, even in speaking of facts:

Rhēnus servat viōlentiam cursus, dōnec Oceāno misceātur, *The Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current, till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

2. **DONEC, IN LIVY**, occurs with the Subjunctive even in the sense of *while*, but with the accessory notion of *cause*:

Nihil trēpidābant dōnec ponte āgērentur, *They did not fear at all while (and because) they were driven on the bridge.* Liv.

**523. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM.**—These generally take,

I. The *Indicative*, when they denote mere priority of time:

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic. Antēquam in Siciliam vēni, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when they denote a dependence of one event upon another. Thus,

1. In any *Tense*, when the accessory notion of *purpose or cause* is involved:

Priusquam incēpias, consulto ōpus est, *Before you begin there is need of deliberation,* i. e., as preparatory to your beginning. Sall. Tempestas minētur, antēquam surgat, *The tempest threatens, before it rises,* i. e., the threatening of the tempest naturally precedes its rising. Sen.

2. In the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as the regular construction in *narration*, because the one event is generally treated as the occasion or natural antecedent of the other:

Antēquam urbem cāpērent, *before they took the city.* Liv. Priusquam de meo adventu audire pōtuisent, in Mācēdōniam perrexi, *Before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cic.

1) **INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.**—With *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the Indicative and Subjunctive are sometimes used without any apparent difference of meaning, but the Subjunctive probably denotes a closer connection between the two events:

Ante de incommōdis dico, pauca dicenda, *Before I (actually) speak of disadvantages, a few things should be mentioned.* Cic. Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, expōnam consiliū, *Before I speak of the republic, I will set forth my plan.* Cic.

2) **ANTE—QUAM, PRIUS—QUAM.**—The two parts of which *antēquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam* are compounded are often separated, so that *ante*, *prius*, or *post* stands in the principal clause and *quam* in the subordinate clause:

Pauca ante diūbus, quam Syracūsae capērentur, *a few days before Syracuse was taken.* Liv. See *Timaeus*, 704. IV. 3.

## VII. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

524. A clause which involves a question without directly asking it, is called an indirect or dependent question.

### RULE XLV.—Indirect Questions.

525. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Quaeritur, cur doctissimi hōmīnes dissentiant, *It is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesieras, nonne pūtārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. **WITH INTERROGATIVES.**—Indirect or *Dependent* questions, like those not dependent, are introduced by interrogative words: *quid*, *cur*, *nonne*, *quālis*, etc.; rarely by *sī*, whether; *ut*, how. See examples above.

2. **SUBSTANTIVE FORCE.**—Indirect questions are used *substantively*, and generally, though not always, supply the place of subjects or objects of verbs. But an Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes inserted after the leading verb.

Ego illum nescio qui fuērit, *I do not know (him), who he was.* Ter.

3. **DIRECT AND INDIRECT.**—An *indirect* question may be readily changed to a *direct* or *independent* question.

Thus the direct question involved in the first example is: *Quid dies fērat*, What will a day bring forth? So in the second: *Cur doctissimi hōmīnes dissentiunt*, Why do the most learned men disagree?

4. **SUBJUNCTIVE OMITTED.**—After *nescio quis*, I know not who = *quidam*, some one; *nescio quōmodo*, I know not how, etc., as also after *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, very much, there is an ellipsis of the Subjunctive:

Nescio quid ānīmus praesāgit, *The mind forebodes, I know not what (it forebodes, praesāgiat, understood).* Ter. Id mīrum quantum prōfuit, *This profited, it is wonderful how much, i. e., it wonderfully profited.* Liv.



5. **INDIRECT QUESTIONS DISTINGUISHED.**—Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished from certain similar forms. Thus,

1) *From Relative Clauses.*—Clauses introduced by Relative Pronouns or Relative Adverbs always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while Indirect Questions are generally so used :

Dicam quod sentio (*rel. clause*), *I will tell that which (id quod) I think.*

Cic. Dicam quid intelligam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.*

Cic. Quaeramus tibi mālēficiū est, *Let us seek there (ibi) where the crime is.* Cic.

In the first and third examples, *quod sentio* and *tibi—est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ibi* as the antecedent or correlative of *tibi*; but in the second example, *quid intelligam* is an indirect question and the object of *dicam*: *I will tell (what?) what I know*, i. e., will answer that question.

2) *From Direct Questions and Exclamations :*

Quid āgendū est? Nescio, *What is to be done? I know not.* Cic.

Vide! quam conversā res est, *See! how changed is the case.* Cic.

6. **INDICATIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**—The Indicative in Indirect Questions is sometimes used in the poets; especially in *Plautus* and *Terence* :

Si mēmōrāre vēlim, quam fideli ānimo fui, possum, *If I wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

7. **QUESTIONS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA.** See 530. II. 2.

526. **SINGLE AND DOUBLE QUESTIONS.**—Indirect questions, like those which are direct (346. II.), may be either single or double.

I. **An Indirect Single Question** is introduced by some interrogative word—either a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

Rōgāt qui vir esset (481. IV.), *He asked who he was.* Liv. Epāminondas quāesivī, salvusne esset clipeus, *Epaminondas inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dūbīto num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. See also the examples under the Rule, 525.

II. **An Indirect Double Question (whether—or)** admits of two constructions :

1. It generally takes *utrum* or *ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second :

Quaeritur, virtus suamne propter dignitatem, an propter fructus aliquos expetitur, *It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2. But sometimes it omits the particle in the first member, and takes *an* or *ne* in the second :

Quaeritur, nātura an doctrina possit effici virtus, *It is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature or by education.* Cic.

1) **NECNE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**—In the second member of the Double Question, *neque*, and sometimes *an non*, are used in the sense of *or not*:

*Sapientia beitos efficit necne, quaestio est, Whether or not wisdom makes men happy, is a question.* Cic.

2) **INTERROGATIVE AN IN EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT.**—*An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dubito an*, I doubt whether not = I am inclined to think; *nescio an*, *haud scio an*, I know not whether not = I am inclined to think; *dubium est an*, *incertum est an*, it is uncertain whether not = it is probable:

*Dubito an Thrasýbulum primum omnium ponam, I doubt whether I should not place Thrasýbulus first of all, i. e., I am inclined to think I should.* Nep. *Gracchus nescio an habuisset parem neminem, I am inclined to think Gracchus would have had no equal.* Cic.

## VIII. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

### RULE XLVI.—Attraction.

527. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive:

*Vereor, ne, dum minuere velim laborem, augeam, I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic. *Tempus est hujusmodi, ut, ubi quisque sit, ibi esse minime velit, The time is of such a character that every one wishes to be least of all where he is.* Cic. *Mos est, ut dicat sententiam, qui velit, The custom is that he who wishes expresses his opinion.* Cic.

1. **APPLICATION.**—This rule is applicable to clauses introduced by conjunctions, adverbs, or relatives. Thus, in the examples, the clauses introduced by *dum*, *ubi*, and *qui*, take the subjunctive, because they are dependent upon clauses which have the subjunctive.

2. **INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.**—Such clauses generally take,

1) The *Indicative*, when they are in a measure *parenthetical* or give special prominence to the *fact* stated:

*Milites misit, ut eos qui fugerant perséquerentur, He sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled, i. e., the fugitives.* Caes. *Tanta vis prohibitis est, ut eam, vel in iis quos nunquam vidimus, diligamus, Such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen.* Cic.

The *Indicative* with *dum* is very common, especially in the poets and historians:

*Fuere qui, dum dubitat Scaevinus, hortarentur Pisónem, There were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated.* Tac.

2). The *Subjunctive*, when the clauses are essential to the general thought of the sentence, as in the examples under the rule.

3. **AFTER INFINITIVE CLAUSES.**—The principle just stated (2) applies also to the use of Moods in clauses dependent upon the Infinitive:

Răserunt silvam esse quae appellatur Băcenis, *They report that there is a forest, which is called Bacenis.* Caes. Mos est laudari eos qui sint in proeliis interfecti, *It is a custom that those who have fallen in battle should be eulogized.* Cic.

But clauses dependent upon the Infinitive are found most frequently in the *Oratio Obliqua*, and are accordingly provided for by 529.

## IX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE,—

### *Oratio Obliqua.*

528. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua*:

Plătōnem fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeo te dōlōrem ferre mōdēratē, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Utilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Obliqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Oratio Recta*. Thus in the first example, *Plătōnem in Itāliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be: *Plătō in Itāliam vēnit*.

2. QUOTATION.—Words quoted without change belong of course to the Direct Discourse:

Rex "duumvīros" inquit "sēcundum lēgem fācio," *The king said, "I appoint duumvirs according to law."* Liv.

## RULE XLVII.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

529. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the *Oratio Obliqua*<sup>1</sup>:

Ad postūlata Caesāris respondit, cur vēnīret (*direct*: cur vēnis?), *To the demands of Caesar he replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēno cum lēgiōne vēniat (*direct*: cum lēgiōne vēni), *He writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.* Caes. Hippias glōriatus est, annūlum quem hāberet (*direct*: hābeo) se sua mānu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

<sup>1</sup> The Rules for the Subjunctive will be presented in a body, with the other Rules of Syntax, in Chapter VII. 591.

NOTE.—For convenience of reference the following outline of the use of Moods and Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua is here inserted.

### I. Moods in the Oratio Obliqua.

530. PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.—The Principal clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, undergo the following changes of Mood :

#### I. When *Declarative*, they take the Infinitive (551) :

Dicēbat ānimos esse divinos (direct : *ānīmi sūt divīni*), *He was wont to say that souls were divine.* Cic. Plātōnem Tārentum vēnisse rēpērio (*Plāto Tārentum vēnit*), *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Cāto mirāri se (*mīror*) aiēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic.

#### II. When *Interrogative* or *Imperative*, they generally take the Subjunctive according to Rule XLVII.

1. VERB OMITTED.—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression ; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose :

Pŷthia praecepit ut Miltiādem impēriōrem sūmērent ; incepta prospēra fūtūra, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander, (telling them) that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

2. RHETORICAL QUESTIONS.—Questions which are such only in form, requiring no answer, are generally construed, according to sense, in the Infinitive. They are sometimes called Rhetorical questions, as they are often used for Rhetorical effect instead of assertions : thus *num possit*, can he? for *non potest*, he can not ; *quid sit turpius*, what is more base? for *nihil est turpius*, nothing is more base.

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or third person :

Respondit num mēmōriam dēpōnēre posse, *He replied, could he lay aside the recollection.* Caes. Here the direct question would be : Num mēmōriam dēpōnēre possum?

#### 3. IMPERATIVE CLAUSES.—In the Oratio Obliqua, imperative clauses take,

1) After *jūbeo*, regularly the Infinitive, rarely the Subjunctive with *ut* : Nāves aedificāri jussit, *He ordered that vessels should be built.* Caes. Jussit ut Euboeam pētērent, *He ordered that they should seek Euboea.* Liv.

2) After other verbs of commanding, the Subjunctive, generally with *ut*, etc., but sometimes without it :

Impēravit, ut faciērent, *He commanded that they should make, or commanded them to make.* Caes. Huic mandat Belgas ādeat, *He enjoins upon him to visit the Belgians.* Caes.

#### 531. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Subordinate clauses

of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, put their finite verbs in the Subjunctive :

DIRECT : Orābant : "Nōbis auxiliū fer, quod prēmimur," *They prayed, "Bring us help, because we are oppressed."*

INDIRECT : Orābant, ut sibi auxiliū ferret quod prēmērentur, *They prayed that he would bring them help, because they were oppressed.* Caes. Hippias glōriātus est, annulum quem hāberet (*hābeo*) se sua mānu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

1. INFINITIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—It must be remembered (453), that Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, sometimes have the force of Principal clauses. When thus used in the Oratio Obliqua, they may be construed with the Infinitive :

Ad eum dēfertur, esse cīvem Rōmānum qui quērērētur : quem (= *et eum*) asservētum esse, *It was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. So also comparisons : Te suspīcor iisdem, quibus me ipsum, commōvērī, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I am.* Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.—The Infinitive occurs, especially in Livy and Tacitus, even in clauses after *quia*, *quum*, and *quamquam* :

Dicit, se moenibus inclūsos tēnere eos ; quia per agros vāgārī, *He says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because (otherwise) they would wander through the fields.* Liv. See also 551. I. 5 and 6.

3. INDICATIVE IN PARENTHETICAL CLAUSES.—Clauses may be introduced parenthetically in the oratio obliqua without strictly forming a part of it, and may accordingly take the Indicative :

Rēfērunt silvā esse, quae appellātur Bācēnis, *They report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis.* Caes.

4. INDICATIVE IN CLAUSES NOT PARENTHETICAL.—Sometimes clauses not parenthetical take the Indicative to give prominence to the *fact* stated. This occurs most frequently in Relative clauses :

Certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes discessisse, *He was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls.* Caes.

## II. Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua.

532. GENERAL USE.—Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua generally conform to the ordinary rules for Infinitive and Subjunctive Tenses. See 480 and 540.

533. SPECIAL USE.—The law of Sequence of Tenses admits, however, in the Oratio Obliqua, of certain qualifications :

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after a Historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative :

Caesar respondit, si obeldes sibi dentur, sese pacem esse facturum, *Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace.* Caes.

2. In Conditional sentences of the third form (510),

1) The Condition retains the Imperfect or Pluperfect without reference to the tense of the Principal verb ;

2) The Conclusion changes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive into the Periphrastic Infinitives in *rus esse* and *rus fuisse* :

Censes Pompeium laetaturum fuisse, si sciret, *Do you think Pompey would have rejoiced, if he had known ?* Cic. Clamitabat, si ille adesset, venturos esse, *He cried out that they would come, if he were present.* Caes.

But the Regular Infinitive, instead of the periphrastic forms, sometimes occurs in this construction.

3. Conditional Sentences of the second form (509), after Historical tenses, sometimes retain in their conditional clauses the Present or Perfect and sometimes change it to the Imperfect or Pluperfect, according to the Rule for Sequence of Tenses (480) :

Respondit, si experiri velint, paratum esse, *He replied, if they wished to make the trial he was ready.* Caes. Legatos mittit, si ita fecisset, amicitiam futuram, *He sent messengers saying that, if he would do thus, there would be friendship.* Caes.

Here *mittit* is the Historical Present. See 467. III.

4. The Future Perfect in a Subordinate clause of the Direct discourse is changed in the Indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a Principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Historical tense :

Agunt ut dimicent ; ibi imperium fore, unde victoria fuerit, *They arrange that they shall fight ; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory (whence the victory may have been).* Liv. Apparebat regnaturum, qui vicisset, *It was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

## SECTION VII.

### IMPERATIVE.

#### I. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

534. The Imperative has but two Tenses :

I. The PRESENT :—which has only the Second person, and corresponds to the English Imperative :

Justitiam cole, *Practise justice.* Cic. Perge, Catilina, *Go, Catiline.* Cic.

II. The FUTURE:—which has the Second and Third persons, and corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*:

It constitutes appellator, *They shall be called consuls, or let them be called consuls.* Cic. Quod dixero, facitote, *You shall do what I say (shall have said).* Ter.

1. FUTURE FOR PRESENT.—The Future Imperative is sometimes used where we should expect the Present:

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebretote illos dies, *Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.* Cic.

This is particularly common in certain verbs: thus *scito* has only the forms of the Future in common use.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Imperative Present is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, of an action which belongs entirely to the future:

Ubi aciem videris, tum ordines dissipa, *When you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks.* Liv.

## II. USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

### RULE XLVIII.—Imperative.

535. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties:

Justitiam cole, *Practice justice.* Cic. Tu ne cede malis, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Si quid in te peccavi, ignosce, *If I have sinned against you, pardon me.* Cic.

1. CIRCUMLOCUTIONS.—Instead of the simple Imperative, several circumlocutions are common:

1) *Cura ut, fac ut, fac*, each with the Subjunctive:

*Cura ut venias, See that you come.* Cic. See 489.

2) *Fac ne, cave ne, cave*, with the Subjunctive:

*Cave facias, Beware of doing it, or see that you do not do it.* Cic.

3) *Noli, nolite*, with the Infinitive:

*Noli imitari, do not imitate.* Cic. See 538. 2.

2. IMPERATIVE CLAUSE FOR CONDITION.—An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause:

*Lacesse; jam videbis furem, Provokes him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic.* Cic.

3. IMPERATIVE SUPPLIED.—The place of the Imperative may be variously supplied:

1) By the Subjunctive of Desire (487):

*Sint beati, Let them be happy.* Cic. *Impii ne audeant, Let not the impious dare.* Cic.

2) By the Indicative Future :

*Quod optimum videbitur, facies, You will do (for Imper. do) what shall seem best. Cic.*

536. The Imperative Present, like the English Imperative, is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties. See examples under the Rule.

537. The Imperative Future is used,

I. In commands involving future rather than present action :

*Rem penditote, You shall consider the subject. Cic. Cras petito; dabitur, Ask to-morrow; it shall be granted. Plaut.*

II. In laws, orders, precepts, etc. :

*Consules nemini parento, The consuls shall be subject to no one. Cic. Salus populi suprema lex esto, The safety of the people shall be the supreme law. Cic.*

538. IMPERATIVE IN PROHIBITIONS.—In prohibitions or negative commands,

1. The negative *ne*, rarely *non*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve* is generally used, rarely *nēque* :

*Tu ne cede malis, Do not yield to misfortunes. Virg. Hominem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito, nēve urito, Thou shall not bury or burn a dead body in the city. Cic.*

2. Instead of *ne* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use *nōli* and *nōlite* with the Infinitive :

*Nolite putare (for ne putate), do not think (be unwilling to think). Cic.*

## SECTION VIII.

### INFINITIVE

539. The treatment of the Latin Infinitive embraces four topics :

I. The Tenses of the Infinitive.

II. The Subject of the Infinitive.

III. The Predicate after the Infinitive.

IV. The Construction of the Infinitive.



## I. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

**540.** The Infinitive has three tenses, *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*. They express however not absolute, but *relative* time, denoting respectively Present, Past, or Future time, relatively to the Principal verb.

**541. PRESENT INFINITIVE.**—This represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Cūpio me esse clémentem, *I desire to be mild.* Cic. Māluit se diligī quam mētui, *He preferred to be loved rather than feared.* Nep.

**1. REAL TIME.**—Hence the real time denoted by the Present Infinitive is the time of the verb on which it depends. Thus,

In the first example, *esse*, dependent upon the Pres. *cūpio*, is both relatively and absolutely present; but *diligī* and *mētui*, in the second, dependent upon the Perf. *māluit*, are present relatively to that verb, but like that really and absolutely past.

**2. WITHOUT TIME.**—Sometimes the Present Infinitive has little or no reference to time, and becomes in sense little more than a verbal noun :

Vincēre scis, *You know how to conquer, or you understand conquering.* Liv.

**3. PRESENT WITH DEBEO, POSSUM, ETC.**—After the past tenses of *dēbeo*, *oportet*, *possum*, and the like, the Present Infinitive is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect :

Dēbuit officiōsior esse, *He ought to have been more attentive.* Cic. Id pōtuit faciēre, *He might have done this.* Cic. Non suscipi bellum oportuit, *The war ought not to have been undertaken.* Liv.

**542. PERFECT INFINITIVE.**—This represents the action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Plātōnem fērunt in Itāliam vānisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Consciūs mihi ēram, nihil a me commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me.* Cic.

**1. REAL TIME.**—Hence the real time denoted by the Perfect Infinitive is that of the Perfect tense, if dependent upon the Present, and that of the Plusperfect, if dependent upon a Historical tense, as in the examples.

**2. PERFECT FOR PRESENT.**—In the poets the Perfect Infinitive is sometimes used for the Present :

Vēcānnū tātīgisse timent poētā, *They fear to touch (to have touched) the mad poet.* Hor.

In prose this is exceedingly rare.

**543. FUTURE INFINITIVE.**—This represents the action as about to take place in time subsequent to that of the principal verb :

Brūtū vīsum īri a me pūto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic. Orācūlū dātū erat victrīces Athēnas fōre, *An oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious.* Cic.

Hence after a Principal tense the real time of the Future Infinitive is Future, but after a Historical tense the real time can be determined only by the context.

**544. CIRCUMLOCUTION FOR FUTURE INFINITIVE.**—Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the circumlocution *fütürum esse ut*, or *före ut*, with the Subjunctive,—Present after a Principal tense, and Imperfect after a Historical tense,—is frequently used:

*Spéro före ut contingat id nōbis, I hope this will fall to our lot* (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). *Cic. Non spērāvērāt Hannibal, före ut ad se dēficerēt, Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* *Liv. See 556. II. 1.*

1. CIRCUMLOCUTION NECESSARY.—*Fütürum esse ut*, or *före ut*, with the Subjunctive, for the Future Infinitive, is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the Participle in *rus*.

2. *FÖRE UT* WITH PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.—Sometimes *före ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in Passive and Deponent verbs, *före* with the Perfect Participle may be used with the same force:

*Dico me satis adeptum före, I say that I shall have obtained enough.* *Cic.*

3. FUTURUM FUISSE UT WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Fütürum fuisse ut* with the Subjunctive may be used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of the third form when made dependent:

*Nisi nuntii essent allati, existimabant fütürum fuisse, ut oppidum amitteretur, They thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought.* *Cæsar. See 583. 2.*

## II. SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

### RULE XLIX.—Subject.

**545. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:**

*Sentimus cālère ignem, We perceive that fire is hot.* *Cic. Plätōnem Tārentum vēnisse repērio, I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* *Cic.*

1. HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.—In lively description the Infinitive is sometimes used for the Indicative Imperfect. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative:

*Hostes gaesa conjicere, The enemy hurled their javelins.*

The Historical Infinitive may often be explained by supplying *coeptit* or *coeperunt*; but in most instances it is better to treat it simply as an *idiom* of the language.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The Subject of an Infinitive may be omitted:

1) When it denotes the same person or thing as the subject of the principal clause, or may be readily supplied from the context:

*Magna negotia völnnt ägere, They wish to accomplish great undertakings.* *Cic. Peccäre licet nemini, It is not lawful for any one to sin.* *Cic.*

2) When it is indefinite or general :

Diligī jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE OMITTED.—*Esse* and *fuisse* are often omitted in the compound forms of the Infinitive and with predicate adjectives, other infinitives less frequently (551. 5) :

Audīvi sōlītum Fabricium, *I have heard that Fabricius was wont.* Cic.  
Spērāmus nōbīs prōfūtūros, *We hope to benefit you.* Cic.

(*probris?*)

### III. PREDICATE AFTER INFINITIVE.

546. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after an Infinitive regularly agrees with the Subject, expressed or understood (362.3) :

Ego me Phīdīam esse malle, *I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. Trādītum est, Hōmērum caecum fuisse, *It has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic. Jūgurtha omnibus cārus esse (*historical infinitive*), *Jugurtha was dear to all.* Sall.

547. A Predicate Noun or Adjective, after an Infinitive whose Subject is omitted, is often attracted into the Nominative or Dative :

I. It is attracted into the Nominative to agree with the Subject of the principal verb, when the latter is the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

Nōlo esse laudātor, *I am unwilling to be an eulogist.* Cic. Beātus esse sine virtūte nēmo pōtest, *No one can be happy without virtue.* Cic.

This occurs most frequently,

1. After verbs of *duty, ability, courage, custom, desire, beginning, continuing, ending*, and the like—*dēbeo, possum, audeo, sōleo, cūpio, vōlo, mālō, nōlo, incipio, pergo, dēsīno* :

Quis scientior esse dēbuit, *Who ought to have been more learned?* Cic. Pārens dici pōtest, *He can be called a parent.* Cic. Stoīcus esse vōluit, *He wished to be a Stoic.* Cic. Crādūli esse coepērunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Dēsīnant esse tīmīdi, *Let them cease to be timid.* Cic.

2. After various Passive verbs of *saying, thinking, finding, seeming*, and the like—*dīcor, trādqr, fēror—crēdor, existīmor, pūtor—rēpērior—vīdeor*, etc. :

Inventor esse dīctur, *He is said to be the inventor.* Cic. Prūdēns esse pūtabātur, *He was thought to be prudent.* Cic.

II. The Predicate Noun or Adjective is sometimes attracted into the Dative to agree with a Dative in the principal clause, when the latter denotes the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

Patrīcio tribūno plēbis fīrī nō licēbat, *It was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. Mihi negligentī esse nō licuit, *It was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

1. This is rare, but is the regular construction after *licet*, and sometimes occurs after *necesse est*, when used after *licet*, and occasionally in other connections :

*Illis timidis licet esse, nobis necesse est fortibus viris esse, It is permitted them to be timid, it is necessary for us to be brave men.* Liv. But,

2. Even with *licet* the attraction does not always take place :

*Ei consulem fieri licet, It is lawful for him to be made consul.* Cæsar.

#### IV. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

548. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, has in general the construction of a Noun in the Nominative or Accusative, and is used,

I. As a Nominative—Subject of a Verb.

II. As an Accusative—Object of a Verb.

III. In Special Constructions.

##### I. Infinitive as Subject.

549. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as a Nominative, and is thus made the Subject of a sentence, according to Rule III. :

WITH SUBJECT.—*Faciens est vinciri civem Rōmānum, That a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. *Certum est liberos amari, It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. *Lēgem brevem esse oportet, It is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

WITHOUT SUBJECT.—*Ars est difficilis rem publicam regere, To rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. *Cārum esse jucundum est, It is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. *Hæc scire juvat, To know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. *Peccare licet nemini, To sin is not lawful for any one.* Cic.

1. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—When the subject is an Infinitive, the Predicate is either (1) a Noun or Adjective with *Sum*, or (2) an Impersonal verb or a verb used Impersonally. See the examples above.

2. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may be the subject of another Infinitive :

*Intelligi necesse est esse deos, It must be understood that there are gods.* Cic.

Here *esse deos* is the subject of *intelligi*, and *intelligi esse deos* is the subject of *necesse est*.

3. INFINITIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—The Infinitive sometimes takes a Demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it :

*Quibusdam hoc displicet philosophari, This philosophizing (this to philosophize) displeases some persons.* Cic. *Vivere ipsum turpe est nobis, To live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

4. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION FOR IMPERSONAL.—With Passive verbs, instead of the Infinitive with a subject accusative, a Personal construction is

common, by which the Subject Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative of the leading verb :

*Aristides justissimus fuisse traditur* (for *Aristidem justissimum fuisse traditur*), *Aristides is said to have been most just.* Cic.

The Personal Construction is used,

1) Regularly—(1) with a few verbs—*videor, jubeor, vector*, also with *coepitum* and *desitusum* with a Passive Infinitive, and (2) with the Simple Tenses of many verbs of saying, thinking, and the like—*dīcor, trador, feror, perhibeor, putor, existimor* :

*Solem e mundo tollere videntur*, *They seem to remove the sun from the world.* Cic. *Consili coepti sumus*, *We have begun to be consulted.* Cic. *Platōnem audivisse dicitur*, *He is said to have heard Plato.* Cic.

2) Sometimes with many other verbs of *saying, showing, perceiving, finding*, and the like, though the impersonal construction is more common :

*Dii beati esse intelliguntur*, *The gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

## II. Infinitive as Object.

550. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as an Accusative, and is thus made the object of a verb, according to Rule V. :

*Te dicunt esse sapientem*, *They say that you are wise.* Cic. *Haec vitare cupimus*, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. *Mānere decrevit*, *He decided to remain.* Nep.

551. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as object with a great variety of verbs. Thus,

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring,—*Verba Sentiendi et Declārandi.*

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.

III. With Verbs of Emotion and Feeling.

I. WITH VERBS OF PERCEIVING AND DECLARING.—*Sentimus calere ignem*, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. *Mihi narravit te sollicitum esse*, *He told me that you were troubled.* Cic. *Scripterunt Themistoclem in Asiam transisse*, *They wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. VERBA SENTIENDI.—*Verbs of Perceiving* include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses : *audio, video, sentio*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind : thinking, believing, knowing, *cogito, puto, existimo, credo, spero, intelligo, scio*, etc.

2. VERBA DECLARANDI.—*Verbs of Declaring* are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts : *dico, narro, nuntio, doceo, ostendo, promitto*, etc.

3. EXPRESSIONS WITH THE FORCE OF VERBS.—The Infinitive with a subject may be used with expressions equivalent to verbs of perceiving and declaring. Thus :

With *scire* *fortē*, report says, *testis sum*, I am a witness = I testify; *conscius malis sum*, I am conscious, I know:

*Nullam mihi rēlātā esse grātiā, tu es testis*, *You are a witness* (can testify) *that no grateful return has been made to me.* Cic.

4. PARTICIPLE FOR INFINITIVE.—Verbs of Perceiving take the Accusative with the Present Participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action:

*Cātōnem vīdī in bibliōthēca sēdentem*, *I saw Cato sitting in the library.* Cic.

5. SUBJECTS COMPARED.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared by means of *quam*, *idem*—*qui*, etc.; if the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative with its Infinitive omitted may follow in the second:

*Plātōnem sēvunt Idem scnsisse, quod Pythāgorā*, *They say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras.* Cic.

6. PREDICATES COMPARED.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared and the Infinitive with a Subject is used in the first clause, the Infinitive with its subject omitted often follows in the second:

*Num pūtātis, dixisse Antōnium mināciū quam factūrum fuisse*, *Do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted?* Cic.

But the second clause may take the subjunctive, with or without *ut*:

*Audeo dicere ipsos pōtius cultōres agrōrum sēre quam ut cōll prohibeat*, *I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled.* Liv.

II. WITH VERBS OF WISHING AND DESIRING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with these verbs:

*Te tua frui virtūte cūpimus*, *We desire that you should enjoy your virtue.* Cic. *Pontem iubet rescindi*, *He orders the bridge to be broken down* (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. *Lex eum necārī vētuit*, *The law forbade that he should be put to death.* Liv.

1. VERBS OF WISHING.—The Infinitive is thus used not only with verbs which directly express a wish, *cūpio*, *vōlo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, etc., but also with many which involve a wish or command: *pōtior*, *sino*, to permit; *impēro*, *jūbeo*, to command; *prohibeo*, *vēto*, to forbid. See also 558. II.

2. SUBJUNCTIVE FOR INFINITIVE.—Several verbs involving a wish or command admit the Subjunctive:

1) Opto. See 492. 8.

2) Vōlo, mālo, nōlo, impēro, and jūbeo admit the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

*Vōlo ut respondeas*, *I wish you would reply.* Cic. *Mālo te hostis mētuat*, *I prefer that the enemy should fear you.* Cic.

3) Concēdo, permitto, rarely pōtior and sino, admit the Subjunctive with *ut*:

*Concēdo ut haec apta sint*, *I admit that these things are suitable.* Cic.

III. WITH VERBS OF EMOTION OR FEELING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with these verbs:

Gaudeo, te mihi suadere, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Miramur, te laetari, *We wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Verbs of emotion are *gaudeo, doleo, miror, quoror*, and the like; also *aegre fero, graviter fero*, etc.

**552. INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.**—This is used as Object with many verbs:

Vincere scis, *You know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Creduli esse coeperunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Haec vitare cupimus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Solent cogitare, *They are accustomed to think.* Cic. Nemo mortem effugere potest, *No one is able to escape death.* Cic.

1. **VERBS WITH THE INFINITIVE.**—The Infinitive may depend upon verbs signifying to *dare, desire, determine—begin, continue, end—know, learn, neglect—owe, promise*, etc., also to *be able, be accustomed, be wont*, etc.

2. **INFINITIVE AS A SECOND OBJECT.**—With a few verbs—*docceo, cogo, assuefacio, arguo*, etc.—the Infinitive is used in connection with a direct object; see 374. 4:

Te sapere docet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Nationes parere assuefecit, *He accustomed the nations to obey.* Cic.

In the Passive these verbs of course retain the Infinitive:

Num sum Graece loqui docendus, *Must I be taught to speak Greek?* Cic.

3. **INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.**—By a construction according to sense, the Infinitive is used after adjectives in the sense of participles or verbs with the Infinitive:

Est paratus (vult) audire, *He is prepared to hear* (is willing to hear). Cic. Pelides cedere nescius (= nesciens), *Pelides not knowing how to yield.* Hor. Avidi committere pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

This construction is rare in good prose, but common in poetry.

4. **INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.**—The Infinitive regarded as a noun in the accusative, sometimes depends upon a preposition:

Multum interest inter dare et accipere, *There is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

### III. Infinitive in Special Constructions.

**553.** The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is generally used as the Subject or Object of a verb, but sometimes occurs in other relations. It is thus used,

#### I. As Predicate; see 362:

Exitus fuit orationis: sibi nullam cum his amicitiam, *The close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes. Vivere est cogitare, *To live is to think.* Cic.

Here *sibi—amicitiam* is used substantively, and is the Predicate Nominative after *fuit*, according to Rule I. *Cogitare* is in the same construction after *est*.

## II. As Appositive ; see 368 :

Oraculum datum erat victrices Athēnas fore, *The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given.* Cic. Illud sōleo mirari non me accipere tuas littēras, *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a subject accusative, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—In the examples, the clause *victrices Athēnas fore* is in apposition with *oraculum*, and the clause *non me accipere tuas littēras*, in apposition with *illud*.

## III. In Exclamations ; see 381 :

Te sic vexari, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne incepto desistere victam, *that I vanquished should abandon my undertaking!* Virg.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a Subject, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (381, 381. 8). It may often be explained as an Accus. by supplying some verb, as *doleo*, etc., or as a Nom. by supplying *credendum est* or *credibile est*. Thus the first example becomes: *I grieve* (*doleo*) *that you*, etc., and the second becomes: *Is it to be supposed* (*credendum est*) *that I vanquished*, etc.

3. IMPASSIONED QUESTIONS.—This construction is most frequent in impassioned questions, as in the second example.

## IV. As Ablative Absolute. See 431. 4.

## V. To express Purpose :

Pēcus ēgit altos visere montes, *He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Non pōpūlāre pēnites vēmūmus, *We have not come to lay waste your homes.* Virg.

This construction is confined to poetry.

## VI. Poetic Infinitive for Gerund. See 563. 6.

## SECTION IX.

### SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

554. Subject and Object Clauses, in which, as we have just seen (549 and 550), the Infinitive is so freely used, assume four distinct forms :

I. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—These represent the Subject or Object as *Interrogative* in character :

Quæritur, cur dissentiant, *It is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid ægendum sit, nescio, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic. See 525.



**II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES.**—These have simply the force of Nouns, merely supplying the place of the Nominative, or the Accusative:

Antëcellëre contigit, *It was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened).

Cic. Magna nêgôtia völuit ägëre, *He wished to achieve great undertakings.*

Cic. See 549, 550.

**III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.**—These clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne*, etc., are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then involve Purpose or Result:

Contigit ut patriam vindicäret, *It was his good fortune to save his country.* Nep. Völo ut mihi respondeas, *I wish you would answer me.* Cic. See 492, 495.

Here *ut—vindicäret* is at once subject and result: it was his good fortune to save his country, or his good fortune was such that he saved his country. In the second example, *ut—respondeas* expresses not only the object desired, but also the purpose of the desire.

**IV. CLAUSES WITH QUOD.**—These again are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then either give prominence to the fact stated, or present it as a Ground or Reason:

Bënéfïcium est quod nêcesse est möri, *It is a blessing that it is necessary to die.* Sen. Gaudeo quod te interpellävi, *I rejoice that (because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. See 520.

Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark:

Quod me Agämënnönem aemüläri pütas, fallëris, *As to the fact that you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

## I. FORMS OF SUBJECT CLAUSES.

**555. INTERROGATIVE.**—Subject clauses which are interrogative in character, of course take the form of indirect questions. See 525. 2 and 554. I.

**556. NOT INTERROGATIVE.**—Subject clauses which are not interrogative, with some predicates take the form of Infinitive clauses, or clauses with *quod*; while with other predicates they take the form of Subjunctive clauses with *ut*, *ne*, etc. Thus,

I. With most impersonal verbs and with predicates consisting of *est* with a Noun or Adjective, the Subject may be supplied (1) by the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative, or, (2) if

the fact is to be made prominent or adduced as a reason, by a clause with *quod*:

*Me poenitet vixisse, I regret that I have lived. Cic. Quod te offendi me poenitet, I regret that (or because) I have offended you. Cic.*

1. SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Mos est, mōris est, consuetudo est, consuetudinis est, It is a custom, etc.*, admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

*Mos est hominum ut nolint, It is a custom of men that they are not willing. Cic.*

2. ADJECTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Relliquum est, proximum est, extremum est—verum est, verisimile est, falsum est—gloriosum est, mirum est, optimum est, etc.*, admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

*Relliquum est ut certemus, it remains that we contend. Cic. Verum est ut bonos diligant, It is true that they love the good. Cic.*

II. With Impersonal verbs signifying to *happen*—*accidit, contingit, evenit, fit—ut, ut non*, with the Subjunctive, is generally used (495. 2):

*Thrasylulo contigit, ut patriam vindicaret, It was the good fortune of Thrasylulus (happened to him) to deliver his country. Nep.*

1. Here belong *accidit ut, est ut, futurum esse ut, or fore ut. See 544.*

2. Clauses with *quod* also occur with verbs of happening.

III. With Impersonal verbs signifying *it follows, remains, is distant*, and the like, the Subjunctive clause with *ut* is generally used:

*Relinquatur, ut quiescamus, It remains that we should submit. Cic. See 495. 2.*

IV. Subjunctive clause standing alone. See 495. 2. 2.

## II. FORMS OF OBJECT CLAUSES.

557. INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are interrogative in character, of course, take the form of indirect questions. See 554. I.

558. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are not interrogative in character, supplying the place of direct objects after transitive verbs, sometimes take the form of Infinitive clauses, sometimes of Subjunctive clauses, and sometimes of clauses with *quod*. Thus,

I. Verbs of DECLARING take,

1. Regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. See 551. I.

2. But the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, when they involve a *command*:

Dolābellas dixit, ut ad me scriberet ut in Italiā vānfrēm, *He told Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy.* Cic. See 492. 2.

II. Verbs of DETERMINING, *stātuo, constitūto, decerno*, and the like, take,

1. Generally the Infinitive, when the subject is the same as that of the principal verb, rarely the Subjunctive:

Mānere decrēvit, *He determined to remain.* Nep. Stātuerunt, ut libertātem dēfenderent, *They determined to defend liberty.* Cic. See 551. II.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (expressed or understood), when a new subject is introduced:

Constituērat, ut tribūnus quērērētur, *He had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint.* Sall. Sēnātus decrēvit, dārent opēram consūles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. See 492. 3.

*Stātuo, decerno*, etc., when they mean *to think, deem, suppose*, etc., become *verba sentiendī* (551. I. 1), and of course take the Infinitive:

Laudem sapiētiāe stātuo esse maximā, *I deem it to be the highest praise of wisdom.* Cic.

III. Verbs of STRIVING, ENDEAVORING, take the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See 492. 1.

But *contendo, nitor*, and *tento*, admit the Infinitive:

Lōcum oppugnāre contendit, *He proceeds to storm the city.* Caes. Tentābo de hoc dicere, *I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint. See 552.

IV. Verbs of CAUSING, MAKING, ACCOMPLISHING, take the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *ut non*. See 492, 495.

1. EXAMPLES.—Fācio, efficio, perficio—ādīpiscor, impetro—assēquor, consēquor, and sometimes sēro, are examples of verbs of this class.

2. FACIO AND EFFICIO.—Fācio in the sense of *assume, suppose, take*, the Infinitive; efficio in the sense of *prove, show*, either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive with *ut*, etc.:

Fac ānimos non rēmānere post mortem, *Assumes that souls do not survive after death.* Cic. Vult efficere ānimos esse mortāles, *He wishes to show that souls are mortal.* Cic.

V. Verbs of EMOTION OR FEELING, whether of joy or sorrow, take,

1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative, to express the Object in view of which the feeling is exercised. See 551. III.

2. Clauses with *quod*, to make more prominent the Reason for the feeling:

Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (or because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. Dolēbam quod sōcium āmisēram, *I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See 520. I.

For VERBS OF DESIRING, see 551. II. 2.

VI. Verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, ADVISING, WARNING, COM-

**MANDING**, and the like, take the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Oro ut hōmīnes mīseros conserves, *I implore that you would preserve the unhappy men.* Cic. Postulant ut signum detur, *They demand that the signal be given.* Liv. See 492. 2.

1. **EXAMPLES.**—Verbs of this class are numerous—the following are examples: oro, rogo, peto, precor, obsecro—flagito, postulo, praecipio—hortor, moneo, suadeo, persuadeo—impello, incito, moveo, commoveo.

2. **USED AS VERBA DECLARANDI.**—Some of these verbs in particular significations become *verba declarandi* (551. 2), and accordingly take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: thus *moneo*, in the sense of *remind* and *persuadeo* in the sense of *convince*.

3. **INFINITIVE.**—Even in their ordinary significations some of these verbs, especially *hortor*, *moneo*, and *postulo*, sometimes take the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative:

Postulat se absolvi, *He demands that he should be acquitted.* Cic. See 551. II. 1 and 2.

The Infinitive is much more common in poetry than in prose.

## SECTION X.

### GERUND.

559. The Gerund is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers, as a noun it is itself governed.

560. The Gerund has four cases: Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, governed like nouns in the same situation:

Beate vivendi cupiditate incensi sumus, *We are animated with the desire of living happily.* Cic. Charta inutilis scribendo, *paper unfit for writing.* Plin. Ad agendum natus, *born for action.* Cic. In agendo, *in acting.* Cic.

1. **ACCUSATIVE.**—The Accusative of the Gerund is used only after Prepositions.

2. **GERUND AND INFINITIVE.**—The gerund and the infinitive are kindred forms, expressing the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun (196. II.). They are also complements of each other, the one supplying the parts which are wanting in the other. Thus the infinitive supplies the nominative and the accusative after verbs (548); the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, and ablative, and the accusative after prepositions.

561. Gerunds with Direct Objects are regularly used only in the Genitive and in the Ablative without a preposition:

Jus vocandi senatum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Injurias ferendo laudem mereretur, *You will merit praise by bearing wrongs.* Cic.

**562. GERUNDIVE.**—The place of the Gerund with a Direct Object is supplied by putting that object in the case of the Gerund and changing the latter into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with it. The participle is then called a *Gerundive*:

*Inita sunt consilia urbis delendae* = *urbem delendi*, *Plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. Numa sacerdotibus creandis animum adjecit, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests*. Liv.

1. **EXPLANATION.**—With the Gerund, the first example would be: *Inita sunt consilia urbem delendi*, in which *delendi* is governed by *consilia*, and *urbem* by *delendi*. In changing this to the Gerundive construction,

1) *Urbem*, the object, is changed into *urbis*, the case of the gerund, and is governed by *consilia*.

2) *Delendi*, the gerund, is changed into *delendae*, the gerundive, in agreement with *urbis*.

2. **GERUNDIVE.**—For the sake of brevity, the term *Gerundive* is used not only to designate the *Participle*, but also the *Construction as a whole*, including both the participle and the noun with which it agrees.

3. **USE OF GERUNDIVE.**—The Gerundive may be used in any instance for the Gerund with a Direct Object, and is almost invariably so used when the Gerund would be in the Dative or would depend upon a preposition.

But in a few instances the Gerund with a Direct Object occurs in the Dative or dependent upon a preposition. See 564. 1; 565. 2; and 566. 2.

4. **GERUNDIVES OF UTOR, FRUOR, ETC.**—In general only the gerundives of transitive verbs are used with their nouns as equivalents for Gerunds with Direct Objects; but the gerundives of *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *pōtor*, and *vescor*, originally transitive verbs, admit this construction:

*Ad munus fungendum*, *for discharging the duty*. Cic. Spes potiundorum castrorum, *the hope of getting possession of the camp*. Caes.

5. **PASSIVE SENSE.**—In a few instances, the Gerund has in appearance a passive sense:

*Nēque habent propriam percipiendi notam*, *Nor have they any proper mark of distinction*, i. e., to distinguish them. Cic.

## I. GENITIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

**563. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives:**

**GERUND.**—*Ars vivendi*, *the art of living*. Cic. Studiōsus erat audiendi, *He was desirous of hearing*. Nep. Jus vocandi senātum, *the right of summoning the senate*. Liv. Cupidus te audiendi, *desirous of hearing you*. Cic.

**GERUNDIVE.**—*Libido ejus videndi*, *the desire of seeing him*. Cic. Platōnis studiōsus audiendi fuit, *He was fond of hearing Plato*. Cic.

## 1. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive occurs most frequently—

1) With *ars, scientia, consuetudo, cupiditas, libido, studium, consilium, voluntas, spes, potestas, facultas, difficultas, occasio, tempus, genus, modus, ratio, causa, gratia, etc.*

2) With adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection*, and their opposites: *avidus, cupidus, studiosus—consciens, gnarus, ignarus—peritus, imperitus, insuetus, etc.*

2. GERUND PREFERRED.—A gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object should not be changed to the participial construction, because the latter could not distinguish the gender:

*Artem vera ac falsa diiudicandi, the art of distinguishing true things from the false. Cic.*

3. GERUND WITH GENITIVE.—The Gerund in the Genitive sometimes assumes so completely the force of a noun as to govern the Genitive instead of the Accusative:

*Rejiciendi iudicum potestas, the power of challenging (of) the judges. Cic.*

Here *rejiciendi* may be governed by *potestas*, and may itself by its substantive force govern *iudicum*, the challenging of the judges, etc. But these and similar forms in *di* are sometimes explained not as Gerunds but as Gerundives, like Gerundives with *mei, nostri, etc.* See 4 below.

4. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH *MEI, NOSTRI, ETC.*—With the Genitive of personal pronouns—*mei, nostri, tui, vestri, sui*—the participle ends in *di* without reference to Number or Gender:

*Copia placandi tui (of a woman), an opportunity of appeasing you. Ov. Sui conservandi causa, for the purpose of preserving themselves. Cic. Vestri adhortandi causa, for the purpose of exhorting you. Liv.*

This apparent irregularity may be accounted for by the fact that these genitives, though used as Personal Pronouns, are all strictly in form in the neuter singular of the Possessives *meum, tuum, suum, etc.*, hence the participle in *di* agrees with them perfectly.

5. PURPOSE.—The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is sometimes used to express Purpose or Tendency:

*Haec tradendae Hannibali victoriae sunt, These things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal. Liv. Leges pellendi claros viros, laws for driving away illustrious men. Tac. Proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis, He sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity. Tac.*

This genitive is sometimes best explained as Predicate Genitive (401), as in the first example; sometimes as dependent upon a noun, as *pellendi* dependent upon *leges* in the second example; and sometimes simply as a Genitive of Cause (398, 409. 4), as in the third example; though in such cases, especially in the second and third, *causa* may be supplied.

6. INFINITIVE FOR GERUND.—In the poets, the Infinitive is often used after nouns and adjectives, which in prose regularly take the Gerund or Gerundive:

*Cupido Stygios innare lacus, the desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes. Virg. Avidus committere pugnam, eager to engage battle. Ovid.*

## II. DATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

**564.** The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative:

GERUND.—*Quum solvendo non essent, Since they were not able to pay.* Cic. *Aqua utilis est bibendo, Water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

GERUNDIVE.—*Locum oppido condendo cepērunt, They selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. *Tempora demētendis fructibus accommodata, seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic.

1. GERUND.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare and confined mostly to late writers; with an object it is almost without example.

2. GERUNDIVE OF PURPOSE.—In Livy, Tacitus, and late writers, the Dative of the Gerundive often denotes purpose:

*Firmandae valetudini in Campāniam concessit, He withdrew into Campania to confirm his health.* Tac.

3. GERUNDIVE WITH OFFICIAL NAMES.—The Dative of the Gerundive also stands after certain official names, as *dēcemvīri, triumvīri, comitia*:

*Dēcemvīros lēgibus scribendis creāvīmus, We have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws.* Liv.

In most cases it is common to make the dative depend upon the noun, but it seems to be more in accordance with the genius of the language to treat it as the indirect object of the verb or participle.

## III. ACCUSATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

**565.** The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used after a few prepositions:

GERUND.—*Ad discendum prōpensi sumus, We are inclined to learn (to learning).* Cic. *Ad agendum natus, born to act (for acting).* Cic. *Inter laudandum, in or during play.* Quint.

GERUNDIVE.—*Ad colēdos agros, for cultivating the fields.* Cic. *Ante condendam urbem, before the founding of the city.* Liv.

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The Accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *ad*; sometimes after *inter* and *ob*; very rarely after *ante*, *circa*, and *in*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—The accusative of a gerund with a direct object sometimes occurs, but is rare:

*Ad placandum deos pertinet, It tends to appease the gods.* Cic.

3. PURPOSE.—With verbs of *giving, permitting, leaving, taking*, etc., the purpose of the action is sometimes denoted,

1) By the Gerund with *ad* :

*Ad imitandum mihi prōpositum exemplar illud, That model has been set before me for imitation.* Cic.

## 2) By the Gerundive in agreement with a noun :

*Attribuit Italiā vastandam (for ad vastandum) Cātīlinæ, He assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage (to be ravaged).* Cic.

## IV. ABLATIVE OF GERUNDS OR GERUNDIVES.

566. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used,

## I. As Ablative of Means or Instrument :

*GERUND.*—*Mens discendo alitur, The mind is nourished by learning.* Cic.  
*Salutem hominibus dando, by giving safety to men.* Cic.

*GERUNDIVE.*—*Legendis oratoribus, by reading the orators.* Cic.

## II. With Prepositions :

*GERUND.*—*Virtutes cernuntur in agendo, Virtues are seen in action.* Cic.  
*Deterrere a scribendo, to deter from writing.* Cic.

*GERUNDIVE.*—*Brutus in liberanda patria est interfectus, Brutus was slain in liberating his country.* Cic.

1. *PREPOSITIONS.*—The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *in*; sometimes after *a* (*ab*), *de*, *ex* (*e*); very rarely after *cum* and *pro*.

2. *WITH OBJECT.*—After prepositions, the ablative of the gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare :

*In tribuendo suum cuique, in giving to every one his own.* Cic.

3. *WITHOUT A PREPOSITION*, the ablative of the gerund or gerundive denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time, separation, etc.* :

*Incipiendo rēfūgi, I drew back in the very beginning.* Cic. *Possidendis agris (for possessione agrorum) contenti, content with possessing the lands.* Liv.

## SECTION XI.

## SUPINE.

567. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verb in force; but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases, as a noun it is itself governed. But,

The form in *u* is rare and does not occur with an object.

568. The Supine has but two cases: the Accusative in *um* and the Ablative in *u*.



### RULE L.—Supine in *um*.

569. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE:

Lēgati vēnērunt res rēpētītum, *Deputies came to demand restitution.*

Liv. Ad Caesārem congrātulātum convēnērunt, *They came to Caesar to congratulate him.* Cic.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion:

Fillam Agrippae nuptam dedit, *He gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa.* Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally:

Bōnos omnes perditum eunt, *They are going to destroy all the good.* Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *iri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*, forms, it will be remembered (§41. III. 1), the Future Passive Infinitive:

Brūtum vīsum iri a me pūto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* as an expression of purpose is not very common, its place is often supplied even after verbs of motion by other constructions:

1) By *ut* or *qui* with the Subjunctive. See 439.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives*. See 563. 5; 564. 2; 565. 3.

3) By *Participles*. See 573. V.

570. The Supine in *u* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (§29):

Quid est tam jūcundum audītu, *What is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing)?

Cic. Difficile dictu est, *It is difficult to tell.* Cic.

1. The Supine in *u* is used chiefly with—jūcundus, optimus—facilis, praelivis, difficilis—incredibilis, memorabilis—honestus, turpis, fas, nefas—dignus, indignus—opus est.

2. The Supine in *u* is very rare; the only examples in common use are: *audītu*, *cognītu*, *dictu*, and *factu*.

3. As the Supine in *u* is little used, its place is supplied by other constructions:

1) By *ad* with the *Gerund*: Verba ad audiendum jūcunda, *words agreeable to hear.* Cic.

2) By the *Infinitive*: Facile est vincere, *It is easy to conquer.* Cic.

3) By a *Finite Mood* with an *adverb*: Non facile dijūdicātur amor fictus, *Pretended love is not easy to detect* (is not easily detected). Cic.

## SECTION XII.

## PARTICIPLES.

## I. TENSES OF PARTICIPLES.

**571.** Participles, like Infinitives, express only relative time, and represent the action as Present, Past, or Future, relatively to the principal verb.

**572. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.**—The present participle represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb:

Oculus se non videns alia cernit, *The eye, though it does not see itself (not seeing itself), discerns other things.* Cic. Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic.

**573. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.**—The future active participle represents the action as about to take place, in time subsequent to that of the principal verb:

Sāpiens bona semper plāctūra landat, *The wise man praises blessings which will always please (being about to please).* Sen.

But the Future Passive generally loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is often best rendered by a verbal noun. See 562 and 580.

**574. PERFECT PARTICIPLE.**—The perfect participle represents the action as completed at the time of the principal verb:

Uva mātūrāta dulcescit, *The grape, when it has ripened (having ripened), becomes sweet.* Cic.

But the Perfect Participle often loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun. See 590. For *Part. with habeo*, see 383. II. 1.

## II. USE OF PARTICIPLES.

**575.** Participles are verbs in force, but Adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs they govern oblique cases, as adjectives they agree with nouns:

Anīmus se non videns alia cernit, *The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things.* Cic.

Participles in the Pres. or Perf., rarely in the Fut., may be used as adjectives or nouns: *scripta epistōla*, a written letter; *mortui*, the dead.

**576.** Participles are used to abridge or shorten discourse by supplying the place of finite verbs with relatives or conjunctions. They are used with much greater freedom in Latin than in English.

**577. PARTICIPLE FOR RELATIVE CLAUSE.**—In abridged sentences, the Participle often supplies the place of a Relative Clause:

Omnes aliud agentes, aliud simulant improbi sunt, *All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

**578. FOR OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.**—The Participle often supplies the place of a subordinate clause with a conjunction. It may express,

**I. Time:**

Plato scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Ituri in proelium canunt, *They sing when about to go into battle.* Tac.

**II. Cause, Manner, Means:**

Sol oriens diem conficit, *The sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Milites renuntiant, se perfidiam veritos revertisse, *The soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy (having feared).* Caes.

**III. Condition:**

Mendaci homini ne verum quidem dicenti credere non solemus, *We are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Reluctante natura, irritus labor est, *If nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen.

**IV. Concession:**

Scripta tua jam diu exspectans, non audeo tamen flagitare, *Though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

**V. Purpose:**

Perseus rediit, belli casum tentaturus, *Perseus returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.* Liv. Attribuit nos trucidandos Cethego, *He assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

**579. PARTICIPLE FOR PRINCIPAL CLAUSE.**—The Participle sometimes supplies the place of a principal or co-ordinate clause, and may accordingly be best rendered by a finite verb with *and* or *but*:

Classem devictam cepit, *He conquered and took the fleet* (took the fleet conquered). Nep. Re consentientes vocabulis differabant, *They agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

**580. PARTICIPLE FOR VERBAL NOUN.**—The Passive Participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of*:

In amicis eligendis, *in selecting friends*. Cic. Hómērus fuit ante Rómam conditam, *Homer lived (was) before the founding of Rome (before Rome founded)*. Cic.

**581. PARTICIPLE WITH NEGATIVE.**—The Participle with a negative, as *non*, *nihil*, is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without* :

Miserum est, nihil proficiētem angī, *It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything*. Cic. Non erubescens, *without blushing*. Cic.

## CHAPTER VI.

### SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

#### I. ADVERBS.

##### RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

**582. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :**

Sapientes feliciter vivunt, *The wise live happily*. Cic. Facile doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned*. Cic. Haud aliter, *not otherwise*. Virg.

**583. Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns :**

1. When the nouns are used with the force of adjectives or participles :

Minime largitor dux, *a leader by no means liberal*. Liv. Pópulus lāte rex, *a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively)*. Virg.

2. When in sense a participle or verb may be supplied :

Mārius, plēne vir, *Marius, truly a man*. Cic. Omnes circa pópuli, *all the neighboring peoples*. Liv.

**584. The Common Negative Particles are: *non*, *ne*, *haud*.**

1. *Non* is the usual negative :

Non ridet, *He does not laugh*. Cic.

2. *Ne* is used in prohibitions, wishes, and purposes :

Ne cēde, *Do not yield*. Virg. Ne vāleant, *that they may not be powerful*.

Cic. See 489.

3. *Haud* is used in *haud scio an*, and with adjectives and adverbs: *haud mirabile*, not wonderful; *haud ignotus*, not unknown; *haud aliter*, not otherwise.

585. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English:

*Nihil non arröget, Let him claim everything.* Hor. *Nëque hoc Zëno non vidit, Nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. NON WITH A NEGATIVE.—*Non* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative:

*Nonnëmo, some one; nonnihil, something; nonnunquam, sometimes.*

*Nëmo non, every one; nihil non, everything; nunquam non, always.*

2. EXCEPTION.—After a general negative, *ne—quidem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *nëque—nëque, nève—nève*, and the like, repeat the negation distributively:

*Non præstëreundum est ne id quidem, We must not pass by even this.* Cic. *Nëmo unquam nëque poëta nëque òrãtor fuit, No one was ever either a poet or orator.* Cic.

## II. PREPOSITIONS.

586. For the use of prepositions, see 432 to 437.

## III. CONJUNCTIONS.

587. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (309). They comprise five classes:

### I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union:

*Castor et Pollux, Castor and Pollux.* Cic. *Sënãtus pöpulusque, the senate and people.* Cic. *Nec erat difficile, Nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. LIST. See 310. 1.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Et* simply connects; *que* implies a more intimate relationship; *atque* generally gives prominence to the second part; *ac*, abbreviated from *atque*, has generally the force of *et*. *Nëque* and *nec* have the force of *et non*.

3. QUE, AC, ATQUE.—*Que* is an enclitic, i. e., is always appended to some other word; *ac* is used only before consonants; *atque*, either before vowels or consonants.

4. ETIAM, QUOQUE, ADEO, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et, atque, ac*, and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quöque* follows the word which it connects: *is quöque*, he also.

5. CORRELATIVES.—Sometimes two copulatives are used: *et—et, tum—tum, quum—tum, both—and*: non solum (non modo, or non tantum)—sed etiam (verum etiam), not only—but also.

### II. Disjunctive Conjunctions denote separation:

*Aut vestra aut sua culpa, either your fault, or his own.* Liv. *Duäbus tribusve hõris, in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. LIST.—See 310. 2.

2. AUT, VEL, VE.—*Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut verum aut falsum*, either true or false. *Ve*—for *vel*—is appended as an enclitic.

3. SIVE (*si-re*) does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, Pallas or Minerva (another name of the same goddess).

### III. Adversative Conjunctions denote opposition or contrast :

*Cūpio me esse clēmentem, sed me inertiae condemno, I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction.* Cic. *Non placet Antōnio, at placuit Servilio, It does not please Antony, but it pleased Servilius.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 3.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Sed* and *verum* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vero* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atque* often introduces an objection; *ceterum*, *but still, as to the rest*; *tamen*, *yet*.

3. COMPOUNDS OF TAMEN are also used: *attamen, sedtamen, veruntamen*, but yet.

4. AUTEM and VEBO follow the words which they connect: *hic autem, hic vero*, but this one.

### IV. Illative Conjunctions denote inference :

*Itaque a servis sepultus est, He was accordingly buried by his servants.* Nep. *In umbra igitur pugnabimus, We shall therefore fight in the shade.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 4.

2. OTHER WORDS.—Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives: *eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, quambobrem, quapropter, quare, quocirca*.

3. IGITUR.—This generally follows the word which it connects: *hic igitur*, this one therefore.

### V. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

*Difficile est consilium: sum enim solus, Counsel is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic. *Et enim jus amant, For they love the right.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 5.

2. ETENIM and NAMQUE denote a closer connection than the simple *enim* and *nam*.

3. ENIM follows its word.

588. Subordinate Conjunctions connect subordinate with principal constructions (309. II.). They comprise eight classes.

#### I. Temporal Conjunctions denote time :

*Parruit quum necesse erat, He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic. *Dum ego in Sicilia sum, while I am in Sicily.* Cic.

1. FOR LIST, see 311. 1.

2. FOR FULLER TREATMENT, see 521 to 523.

## II. Comparative Conjunctions denote comparison :

Ut optasti, ita est, *It is as you desired.* Cic. Vēlut ai ādesset, *as if he were present.* Caes.

1. For LIST, see 311. 2.
2. For FULLER TREATMENT, see 503 and 506.

## III. Conditional Conjunctions denote condition :

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Nisi est consilium dōmi, *unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic.

1. For LIST, see 311. 3.
2. For FULLER TREATMENT, see 503 and 507.

## IV. Concessive Conjunctions denote concession :

Quamquam intelligunt, *though they understand.* Cic. Etsi nihil hābeat, *although he has nothing.* Cic.

1. For LIST, see 311. 4.
2. For FULLER TREATMENT, see 515 and 516.

## V. Final Conjunctions denote purpose :

Esse oportet, ut vivas, *It is necessary to eat, that you may live.* Cic. Ut libēri esse possimus, *that we may be able to be free.* Cic.

1. For LIST, see 311. 5.
2. For FULLER TREATMENT, see 439 to 499.

## VI. Consecutive Conjunctions denote consequence or result :

Atticus ita vixit, ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. Ut eam diligāmus, *so that we love it.* Cic.

1. For LIST, see 311. 6.
2. For FULLER TREATMENT, see 439 to 499.

## VII. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Quae quum ita sint, *Since these things are so.* Cic. Quia nātūra mutārī non pōtest, *Because nature cannot be changed.* Cic.

1. For LIST, see 311. 7.
2. For FULLER TREATMENT, see 517 and 518.

## VIII. Interrogative Conjunctions or Particles denote inquiry or question :

Quaesiēras, nonne pūtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quaesīvit, salvusne esset clipeus, *He inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dūbīto num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin.

1. For LIST, see 311. 8.
2. For FULLER TREATMENT, see 346, II., 525 and 526.

## IV. INTERJECTIONS.

589. Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, as *heu*, alas! and sometimes with certain cases of nouns. See 381 and 381. 3.

590. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections. Thus:

*Pax* (*peace*), *be still*! *miserum*, *miserable*, *sad*, *lamentable*! *oro*, *pray*! *age*, *age*, *come*, *well*! *mehercules*, *by Hercules*! *per deum fidem*, *in the name of the gods*! *audes* = *ai audes* (*for audies*), *if you will hear*!

## CHAPTER VII.

## RULES OF SYNTAX.

591. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body. The enclosed numerals refer to the various articles in the work where the several topics are more fully discussed.

## NOUNS.

## AGREEMENT.

I. A PREDICATE NOUN denoting the same person or thing as its Subject, agrees with it in CASE (362):

*Ego sum nuntius*, *I am a messenger*. Liv.

II. An APPOSITIVE agrees with its Subject in CASE (363):

*Cluilius rex moritur*, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv.

## NOMINATIVE.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (367):

*Servius regnavit*, *Servius reigned*. Liv.

## VOCATIVE.

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

*Perge*, *Laeli*, *Proceed*, *Laelius*. Cic.



# ACCUSATIVE.

V. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

VI. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hāmilcārem impērātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep.

VII. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive (374):

Me sententiam rōgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic.

VIII. DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative (378):

Septem et triginta regnāvit annos, *He reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv.  
Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *to walk five miles.* Cic.

IX. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative (379):

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

X. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application (380):

Cāpita velāmur, *We have our heads veiled.* Virg. Nābe hūmēros āmictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud.* Hor.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an Interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381):

Heu me mīsērum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic.

# DATIVE.

XII. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative (384):

Tempōri cedit, *He yields to the time.* Cic.

Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage (385).

Dative with Compounds (386).

Dative of Possessor (387).

Dative of Apparent Agent (388).

Ethical Dative (389).

**XIII. Two Datives**—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (390):

*Mālo est hōmīnībūs āvāritia, Avarice is (for) an evil to men.* Cic.

**XIV. With Adjectives** the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (391):

*Omnībūs cārum est, It is dear to all.* Cic.

**XV. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs** take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives (392):

*Obtemperātio legībūs, obedience to the laws.* Cic. *Congruenter nātūræ, agreeably to nature.* Cic.

### GENITIVE.

**XVI. Any noun**, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

*Cātōnis orātiōnes, Cato's orations.* Cic.

**XVII. Many Adjectives** take a Genitive to complete their meaning (399):

*Avidus laudis, desirous of praise.* Cic.

**XVIII. A Predicate Noun** denoting a different person or thing from its Subject, is put in the Genitive (401):

*Omnia hostiū erant, All things belonged to (were of) the enemy.* Liv.

**XIX. The Genitive** is used (406),

I. With *miserere* and *miserescere*:

*Miserere laborum, pity the labors.* Virg.

II. With *recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliscor*

*Meminit praeteritorum, He remembers the past.* Cic.

III. With *refert* and *interest*:

*Interest omnium, It is the interest of all.* Cic.

**XX. A few verbs** take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing (410):

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing*:

*Te amicitiae commonefacit, He reminds you of friendship.* Cic.

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting*:

*Viros sceleris arguit, You accuse men of crime.* Cic.

III. *Miseret, Poenitet, Pudet, Taedet, and Piget*:

*Eorum nos miseret, We pity them.* Cic.

For the *Genitive of Place*, see Rule XXVI.

# ABLATIVE.

**XXI. CAUSE, MANNER, and MEANS** are denoted by the Ablative (414):

Utilit̃te laud̃tur, *It is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic.

**XXII. PRICE** is generally denoted by the Ablative (416):

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg.

**XXIII. Comparatives** without QUAM are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est am̃bilius virt̃ute, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.

**XXIV. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE** is denoted by the Ablative (418):

Uno die longior, *longer by one day.* Cic.

**XXV. The Ablative is used** (419),

I. With ūtor, fruor, fungor, p̃tior, vescor, and their compounds:

Pl̃rimis reb̃us fruimur, *We enjoy very many things.* Cic.

II. With fido, confido, ñtor, inñtor:

S̃lus ver̃tate ñt̃tur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT:

Non egeo m̃dicina, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic.

IV. With dignus, indignus, contentus, and fr̃tus:

Digni sunt am̃icitia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

V. With ōpus and ūsus:

Auct̃ritate tua nob̃is ōpus est, *We need your authority.* Cic.

**XXVI. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH** are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive (421):

In It̃lia fuit, *He was in Italy.* Nep. Ex Africa, *from Africa.* Liv. Ath̃enis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. R̃omae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

**XXVII. SOURCE and SEPARATION** are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition (425):

Oriundi ab Săbīnia, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic.

**XXVIII.** The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative (426):

Octōgēsīmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year*. Cic.

**XXIX.** The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing (428):

Summa virtūte adolescens, *a youth of the highest virtue*. Cæsa.

**XXX.** The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application (429):

Nōmīne, non pōtestāte fuit rex, *He was king in name, not in power*. Nep.

**XXXI.** The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE (431):

Servio regnante, *in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic.

#### CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

**XXXII.** The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions (432):

Ad āmicum, *to a friend*. Cic. In Itālia, *in Italy*. Nep.

#### ADJECTIVES.

**XXXIII.** An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*. Cic.

#### PRONOUNS.

**XXXIV.** A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Animā, quod sanguinem hābet, *an animal which has blood*. Cic.

#### VERBS.

##### AGREEMENT.

**XXXV.** A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego rēges ejēcī, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

XXXVI. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificavit, *God made the world.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES.

XXXVII. Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical, upon Historical (480):

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Quaesieras nonne pütärem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

XXXVIII. The POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE represents the action not as real, but as *possible* (485):

Forsitan quaerätis, *perhaps you may inquire.* Cic.

XXXIX. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE represents the action not as real, but as *desired* (487):

Väleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic.

XL. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT is used (489),

I. With *ut, ne, quo, quin, quöminüs*:

Enitütur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.

II. With *qui = ut is, ut ego, tu, etc.*:

Missi sunt, qui (*ut ii*) consüllärent Apollinem, *They were sent to consult Apollo.* Nep.

XLI. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION is used (503),

I. With *dum, mödo, dümmödo*:

Mödo permäneat industria, *if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With *ac si, ut si, quäsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, välut, välut si*:

Välut si ädesset, *as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with *si, näl, ni, sin, qui = si is, si quis*:

Si välim nümäräre, *if I should wish to recount.* Cic.

XLII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONCESSION is used (515),

I. With *licet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, ne, quum, although*:

Licet irrideat, *though he may deride.* Cic.

II. With **qui** = **quum** (licet) **is**, **quum** **ěgo**, etc., though he:.

Absolvite Verrem, **qui** (**quum is**) fateatur, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses.* Cic.

III. Generally with **etui**, **tămetui**, **ětiamsi**:

Etsi optimum sit, *even if* (though) *it be most excellent.* Cic.

**XLIII.** The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON is used (517),

I. With **quum** (cum), since; **qui** = **quum is**, etc.

Quum vita mētus plena sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quōniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Quod corrumpēret jūventātem, *because* (on the ground that) *he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

**XLIV.** The SUBJUNCTIVE OF TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE OR PURPOSE is used (521),

I. With **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, until:

Exspectas, dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic.

II. With **antēquam**, **priusquam**, before:

Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, *before I (can) speak of the republic.* Cic.

**XLV.** The Subjunctive is used in INDIRECT QUESTIONS (525):

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

**XLVI.** The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive (527):

Vēreor, ne, dum mīnuere vēlim lāborem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic.

**XLVII.** The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the Oratio Obliqua (529):

Respondit, cur vēnīret, *He replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēno vēniat, *He writes to Labienus to come.* Caes.

### IMPERATIVE.

**XLVIII.** The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties (535):

Justitiam cōle, *Practise justice.* Cic.

INFINITIVE.

**XLIX.** The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative :

*Sentimus cālere ignem, We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Participles are construed as adjectives (575), Gerunds and Supines as nouns (559, 567). But

**L.** The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (569) :

*Venerunt res rēpētum, They came to demand restitution.* Liv.

PARTICLES.

**LI.** Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (582) :

*Sāpientes fēliciter vivunt, The wise live happily.* Cic.

1. For PREPOSITIONS, see Rule XXXII.

2. CONJUNCTIONS are mere connectives. See 587 and 588.

3. INTERJECTIONS are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address. See 589.

---

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

---

SECTION I.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

**592.** The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

## I. GENERAL RULES.

**593.** The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place:

Sol oriens diem conficit, *The sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Anímus aeger semper errat, *A diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiádes Athénas libérávit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

**594.** Emphasis and euphony often affect the arrangement of words:

**I. BEGINNING.**—Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence:

Silent lēges inter arma, *Laws are silent in war.* Cic. Nūmítōri Rēmus dēditur, *Remus is delivered to Numitor.* Liv. Igni āger vastābātur, *The field was ravaged with fire.* Sall.

**II. END.**—Any word, except the predicate, may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence:

Nōbis non sātisfācit ipse Demosthōnes, *Even Demosthenes does not satisfy us.* Cic. Consūlātum pētīvit nunquam, *He never sought the consulship.* Cic. Exsistit quaedam quaestio subdīfīcīlis, *There arises a question somewhat difficult.* Cic.

**III. SEPARATION.**—Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by separation:

Objurgātiōnes nonnunquam incidunt nēcessāriāe, *Sometimes necessary reproofs occur.* Cic. Justītiāe fungātur officiis, *Let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

**595. CONTRASTED GROUPS.**—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second:

Frāgīle corpus ānīmus sempiternus mōvet, *The imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

**596. KINDRED WORDS.**—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other:

Ad sēnem sēnex de sēnectūte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter se āliis ālii prōsunt, *They mutually benefit each other.* Cic.



**597. WORDS WITH A COMMON RELATION.**—A word which has a common relation to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed,

**I. Generally before or after both :**

*Pācis et artes et glōria, both the arts and the glory of peace.* Liv. *Bellī pācisque artes, the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

A Genitive or Adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter :

*Hæc percunctatio ac dēnuntiatio bellī, this inquiry and this declaration of war.* Liv.

**II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction :**

*Hōnōris certāmen et glōriæ, a struggle for honor and glory.* Cic. *Agri omnes et mēria, all lands and seas.* Cic.

## II. SPECIAL RULES.

**598. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.**—The modifiers of a noun generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns :

*Pōpulus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, The Roman people decreed.* Cic. *Hērōdōtus, pāter histōriæ, Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. *Liber de officiis, the book on duties.* Cic.

1. **NOUN.**—A noun as modifier of another noun is generally an appositive, a genitive, or a case with a preposition, as in the examples.

2. **WITH EMPHASIS.**—Modifiers when emphatic are placed before their nouns :

*Tuscus āger Rōmāno adjācet, The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman.* Liv. *Cātōnis orātiōnes, Cato's orations.* Cic.

3. **ADJECTIVE AND GENITIVE.**—When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the order is, *adjective—genitive—noun* :

*Magna civiūm pēnūria, a great scarcity of citizens.* Cic.

**599. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.**—The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it :

*Pācille doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned.* Cic. *Omni ætāti commūnis, common to every age.* Cic. *Avīdus laudis, desirous of praise.* Cic.

**600. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.**—The modifiers of the verb generally precede it :

*Glōria virtūtem sēquitur, Glory follows virtue.* Cic. *Mundus deo pāret, The world is subject to God.* Cic. *Vehēmenter dixit, He spoke vehemently.* Cic. *Glōria dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic.

1. **AFTER THE VERB.**—When the verb is placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow. See first example under 594. I.

2. **EMPHASIS.**—An emphatic modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (594):

*Facillime cognoscuntur adolescentes, Most easily are the young men recognized.* Cic.

3. **TWO OR MORE MODIFIERS.**—Of two or more modifiers belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

*Rex Scythis bellum intulit, The king waged war against the Scythians.*  
*Nep. Mors propter brevitatē vitæ nunquam longe abest, Death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life.* Cic.

601. **MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.**—The modifiers of the adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

*Valde vehementer dixit, He spoke very vehemently.* Cic. *Congruenter naturæ vivit, He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

602. **SPECIAL WORDS.**—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus,

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

*Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city.* Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (450. 5) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

*Mœda illa, that well-known Mœda.* Cic.

2. *Quisque*, the indefinite pronoun, follows some other word:

*Justitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own).* Cic.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tēnus* and *versus* follow their cases:

*In Asiam prœfugit, He fled into Asia.* Cic. *Collo tēnus, up to the neck.* Ov.

1. **AFTER A PRONOUN.**—The preposition frequently follows the relative, rarely other pronouns:

*Res quæ de agitur, the subject of which we are treating.* Cic.

2. **CUM APPENDED.**—See 184. 6 and 187. 2.

3. **INTERVENING WORDS.**—Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case:

*Post Alexandri magni mortem, after the death of Alexander the Great.* Cic.  
*Ad bene vivendum, for living well.* Cic.

III. *Conjunctions and Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *enim*, *quidē*, *quodque*, *verō*, and generally *igitur*, follow some other word:

*Si peccavi, ignosce, If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. *Il qui sup̄iōres sunt, those who are superior.* Cic. *Ipsē autem omnia vidēbat, But he himself saw all things.* Cic.

## 1. EMPHATIC WORDS and RELATIVES often precede the conjunction.

Id ut audivit, *as he heard this*. Nep. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so*. Cic.

## 2. NE—QUIDEM takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:

Ne in oppidis quidem, *not even in the towns*. Cic.

IV. *Non*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word, but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it generally stands at the beginning of the clause:

Hac villa cārere non possunt, *They are not able to do without this villa*.

Cic. Non fuit Jūpiter mētendus, *Jupiter was not to be feared*. Cic.

## SECTION II.

## ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

## I. IN COMPLEX SENTENCES.

603. SUBJECT OR PREDICATE.—A clause used as the subject of a complex sentence (357) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the predicate at the end:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain*.

Cic. Exitus fuit orationis: sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse, *The close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men*. Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence. See 593.

2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as of words. See 594.

604. SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.—Clauses used as the subordinate elements of complex sentences, admit three different arrangements:

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence:

Hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt, *The enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to route*. Caes. Sententia, quae tutissima videbatur, vicit, *The opinion which seemed the safest, prevailed*. Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause:

Quum quiescunt, probant, *While they are quiet, they approve*. Cic. Quis sit animus, animus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is*. Cic. Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, *If this is a state I am a citizen*. Cic.

This arrangement is especially common when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal*, *conditional*, and *concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—qui*, *talis—quidam*, *tantus—quantus*, *tum—quum*, *ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *qui*, *quidam*, *quantus*, *quum*, *ut*, etc., generally precedes.

### III. They sometimes follow the principal clause :

Enītitur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer*. Cic. Sol efficit ut omnia floreant, *The sun causes all things to bloom*. Cic.

This arrangement is common when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence or is explanatory of the principal clause. Hence clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples. See also examples under articles 489–499.

**605. LATIN PERIOD.**—A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause, as under I., is called a Period in the strict sense of the word.

In a freer sense the same term is also applied to any sentence in which the clauses are so arranged as not to make complete sense before the end of the sentence. In this sense the examples under II. are periods.

## II. IN COMPOUND SENTENCES.

**606.** Clauses connected by coördinate conjunctions (587) generally follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded*. Virg. Gyges a nullo vidēbatur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things*. Cic.

## PART FOURTH.

### P R O S O D Y.

607. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

---

#### CHAPTER I.

#### QUANTITY.

608. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity. Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.<sup>1</sup>

609. The quantity of syllables is determined by poetic usage. But this usage conforms in many cases to general laws, while in other cases it seems somewhat arbitrary.

1. Syllables whose quantity conforms to known rules are said to be long or short by *rule*.

2. Syllables whose quantity does not conform to known rules are said to be long or short by *authority*.

3. The rules for quantity are either *general*, i. e., applicable to most syllables, or *special*, i. e., applicable to particular syllables.

#### SECTION I.

##### GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

610. RULE I.—Diphthongs and Contracted syllables are LONG :

Haec, coena, aura ; *ālius* for *āliius*, *cōgo* for *coīgo*, *occīdo* for *occae-do*, *nil* for *nihil*.

1. *Præ* in composition is usually short before a vowel : *præcūsus*, *præstus*.

2. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, are not strictly diphthongs, and accordingly do not come under this rule.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes long and sometimes short.

**611. RULE II.**—A vowel is LONG BY POSITION before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants:<sup>1</sup>

*Mājor, rēxi, gāza, mēnsa, servus.*

1. But one of the consonants at least must belong to the same word as the vowel: *ab rūpe, pēr saza.*

1) A final vowel is not usually affected by consonants at the beginning of the following word, except before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, and *st*, where a short vowel is rare.

2) *H* and *U* must never be treated as consonants under this rule,<sup>2</sup> except in rare instances where *u* is so used by Synaeresis. See 669. II.

2. Before a mute followed by *L* or *R*, a vowel naturally short becomes common: *dūplex, dgri, pātres.*

1) In Greek words a vowel is also common before a mute with *M* or *N*: *Tēcnessa, cŕcŕnus.*

2) A mute at the end of the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part makes the preceding vowel long by position: *ab-rumpo, db-rōgo.*

3) A vowel naturally long, of course, remains long before a Mute and Liquid: *ācer, ācris.*

3. Compounds of *jūgum* retain the short vowel before *j*: *bijūgus, quadrjūgus.*

**612. RULE III.**—A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is SHORT BY POSITION:

*Pīus, pīae, dōcō, trāho.*

No account is taken of the breathing *h*; hence *a* in *traho* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are long before a vowel:

1. **A**,—(1) in the genitive ending *āi* of Dec. I.: *aulāi*,—(2) in proper names in *āius*: *Cāius* (Cajus),—(3) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iu*, in the verb *aio*.

2. **E**,—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel: *dīēi*; but generally short in *fīdēi, rēi, spēi*,—(2) in proper names in *eius*: *Pompēius*,—(3) in *zheu*.

3. **I**,—(1) in the verb *fio*, when not followed by *er*: *fiam, fiēbam*, but *fīeri*,—(2) in the genitive *ālius*. In other genitives *i* in *ius* is common in poetry, though long in prose, but the *i* in *aliūius* is short,—(3) in *dīus, a, um*, for *divus, a, um*,—(4) sometimes in *Dīāna*.

4. **O**,—is common in *ōhe*.

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, the syllable, and not the vowel, is lengthened, but the language of convenience refers the quantity of the syllable to the vowel.

<sup>2</sup> *Qu, gu, and eu*, when *u* has the sound of *w*, are treated as single consonants.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *æer, Aendæ, Briseia, Mênêlæus, Trøes*.

This often occurs in proper names in—*æa, ta, æus, ius, don, ton, dia, dia, dius*: *Mêdæa, Alexandria, Pênæus, Dârîus, Orîon*.

## SECTION II.

### SPECIAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

#### I. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

##### I. Monosyllables.

**613. RULE IV.**—Monosyllables are long:

*a, dâ, tâ, sê, dâ, sî, quî, dô, prô, tû, dôs, pês, sîs, bôs, sûs, pâr, sôl*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are short:

1. Enclitics: *quâ, vâ, nê, cê, tî, pœ, pî*.

2. Monosyllables in *b, d, l, t*: *âb, âd, fêl, mêt, ât, ôt*; except *sâl, sôl*.

3. *An, bis, cis, côr, ês, fâc, fêr, in, is, nêc, ôs* (ossis), *pâr, târ, quâ* (plur. indef.), *quâs, vîr*; probably also *vâs* (vâdis), and sometimes *hêc* and *hêc* as Nom. or Acc. forms.

##### II. Polysyllables.

#### 1. FINAL VOWELS.

**614. RULE V.**—In words of more than one syllable, the endings *a, e, and y* are short; *i* and *u*, long; *o*, common:

*Viâ, mârîâ, mârê, mîsÿ; mârî, auđî, fructû, cornû; âmô, sêrmô*.

**615. A final** is short: *mensâ, templâ, bônâ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A final* is long,

1. In the Ablative: *mensâ, bônâ, illâ*.

2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* (rarely *es*): *Aenâ, Pallâ*.

3. In Verbs and Indeclinable words: *âmâ, cûrâ; circâ, juxtâ, anted, frustrâ*. Except *itâ, quâ, ejâ*, and *pûtâ* used adverbially.

**616. E final** is short: *servê, urbê, rêgê*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E final* is long,

1. In Dec. I. and V.: *êpîtômê, rê, diâ*. Hence in the compounds—*hōdiâ, pridiâ, postridiâ, quârê*.

2. In Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *Tempê, mêtê*.

3. In the Sing. Imperative Act. of Conj. II.: *mōnā, dōā*. But *e* is sometimes short in *cāvā*.

4. In *ferē, fermā, ohā*, and in Adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II.: *dootā, rectā*. Except *bēnā, mālā, infernā, internā, supernā*.

617. **Y** final is short: *mīsy, mōly, cōty*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are, of course, long: *mīsy = mīsyi*.

618. **I** final is long: *servī, bōnī, audī*.

EXCEPTIONS.—**I** final is,

1. COMMON in *mīlī, tībī, sībī, vī, ūbī*. But

Observe compounds *ibidem, ibique, ubique, ubinam, ubivis, ubique, necū-  
bī, sicūbī*.

2. SHORT,—(1) in *nēī, quāī, cūī* (when a dissyllable),—(2) in the Greek ending *ī* of Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *Trōāī*,—(3) in the Dat. and Voc. Sing., which end short in the Greek: *Alexī, Pārīdī*.

*Uī* follows the rule, but not the compounds, *ūbinam, ūbique, sicūī*.

619. **U** final is long: *fructū, cornū, dictū*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Indū* for *in*, and *nēnu* for *non*.

620. **O** final is common: *āmō, sermō, virgō*.

EXCEPTIONS.—**O** final is,

1. LONG,—(1) in Datives and Ablatives: *servō, illō, quō*,—(2) in Greek words, when it represents a long Greek vowel: *āchō, Argō*,—(3) in Adverbs: *falsō, multō, ergō, quāndō, omnīnō*; except those mentioned under 2 below.

2. SHORT in *duō, egō, octō*, and the adverbs *cūō, illīcō, immō, mōlō*, and its compounds, *dummōdō, quōmōdō*, etc.

## 2. FINAL SYLLABLES IN MUTES OR LIQUIDS,—

C, D, L, M, N, R, T.

621. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable,

Final syllables in **c** are long;

Final syllables in **d, l, m, n, r, t**, are short:

*alēc, illūc; illūd, consūl, āmēm, cārmēm, āmōr, cāpūt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following occur,

1. *Dōnēc* and *liēc*.

2. **M** final with the preceding vowel is generally elided before a vowel.  
See 669. I.



3. In Greek words,—(1) **en** is long; often also *an, in, on, yn*: *Hymen, Anchisen, Titian, Delphin, Actaeon, Phorcyn*,—(2) **er** is long in *aër, aether, crater*, and a few other words with long ending in the original.

4. This rule does not, of course, apply to syllables long by previous rules.

### 3. FINAL SYLLABLES IN S.

**622. RULE VII.**—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **as, es, and os** are long; **is, us, ys,** short:

*amās, mensās, mōnēs, nūbēs, hōs, servōs; āvis, urbīs, bōnūs, servūs, chlāmŷs.*

**623. As final** is long: *Aeneās, bōnās, illās.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*As final* is short,

1. In *anūs* and in a few Greek nouns in *ās*: *Arcās, lampās.*

2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcādās, hērōās.*

**624. Es final** is long: *nūbēs, mōnēs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Es final* is short,

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III., which increase short in the Gen.: *mīlēs* (Itis), *obsēs* (Idis), *interpēs* (ētis). Except *ābīs, āriēs, pāriēs, Cērēs*, and compounds of *pēs*; as *bīpēs, trīpēs*, etc.

2. In *pēs* and the compounds of *ēs*; as *ādēs, pōtēs.*

3. In Greek words,—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Gen.: *Arcādēs, Troādēs*,—(2) in a few neuters in **es**: *Hippōmēnēs*,—(3) in a few Vocatives singular: *Demosthēnēs.*

**625. Os final** is long: *custōs, virōs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Os final* is short,

1. In *compōs, impōs, exōs.*

2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Dēlōs, mēlōs.*

**626. Is final** is short: *āvis, cānis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Is final* is long,

1. In Plural Cases: *mensīs, servi, vōbīs.*

Hence *forīs, grātīs, ingrātīs.*

2. In Nominatives of Dec. III., increasing long in the Gen.: *Quīrīs* (Itis), *Sālāmīs* (Inis).

3. In the Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs.*

*Māvis, quīvis, ūtervis* follow the quantity of *vis.*

4. In the Sing. Pres. Subjunct. Act.: *possīs, vėlīs, nōlīs, mālīs.*

5. Sometimes in the Sing. of the Fut. Perf. and of the Perf. Subj.: *āmāvērīs, dōuēvērīs.*

**627. U<sub>s</sub> final** is short: *servūs, bōnūs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U<sub>s</sub> final* is long,

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Gen.: *virtūs* (ūtis), *tellūs* (ūris).

But *pdlūs* (u short) occurs in Horace. Ars P. 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Gen. Sing., and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur.: *fructūs*.

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs, Sapphūs, triplūs*.

But we have *Oedīpūs* and *pōlīypūs*.

**628. Y<sub>s</sub> final** is short: *chlāmīys, chēlīys*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are of course long: *Erynnīs* for *Erynnyes*.

## II. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

**629.** A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the nominative singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermo, sermōnis, sermōnibus*.

*Sermōnis*, having one syllable more than *sermo*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.

**630.** A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *amās, amātis, amābātis*.

*Amātis* has one increment, *amābātis* two.

**631.** If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult, if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second, third, and fourth* increments. Thus

In *ser-mōn-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>2</sup>-<sup>3</sup>-bus*, the first increment is *mon*, the second *i*; and in *mon-<sup>1</sup>-<sup>2</sup>-<sup>3</sup>-u-<sup>4</sup>-rā-mus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *ra*.

### I. Increments of Declension.

**632. RULE VIII.**—In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e, i, u,** and **y**, short:

*aetas, aetātis, aetātibus; sermo, sermōnis; puer, puēri, puērōrum;*

*fulgur, fulgūris; chlāmys, chlamydis; bōnus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; mīser, misēri; supplex, supplicis; sātūr, satūri.*

Vowels long or short by position are of course excepted.

**633. A** in the increments of declension is long: *pax, pācis; bōnus, bonārum; duo, duābūs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment,

1. Of masculines in **al** and **ar**: *Hannibal, Hannibālis; Caesar, Caesāris.*

Except *Car* and *Nar*.

2. Of nouns in **a** preceded by a consonant: *daps, dūpis; Arabs, Arābis.*

3. Of Greek nouns in **a** and **ās**: *poēma, poēmātis; Pullas, Pullādīs.*

4. Of the following:—(1) *baccar, hēpar, jūbar, lar, nectar, par* and its compounds,—(2) *ānas, mas, vas* (vādis),—(3) *sal, fax*, and a few rare Greek words in *ax*.

**634. O** in the increments of declension is long: *hōnor, honōris; bōnus, bonōrum; duo, duōbūs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* is short in the first increment,

1. Of Neuters: *aequor, aequōris; tempus, tempōris.* Except *os* (ōris), *ador* (adōris), and comparatives.

2. Of words in **a** preceded by a consonant; *inops, inōpis.* Except *Cyclops* and *hydrops*.

3. Of *arbor, bos, tēpus*,—*compos, impos, mēmor, immēmor*,—*Allōbrox, Cappādox, praepox.*

4. Of most Patrials: *Mācēdo, Macedōnis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns,—(1) those in **or**: *rhētor, Hector*,—(2) many in **o** and **on** increasing short in Greek: *aēdon, aedōnis*,—(3) in Greek compounds in **pus**: *trīpus* (ōdis), *Oedīpus*.

**635. E** in the increments of declension is short: *puer, puērī; liber, libērī.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is long in the first increment,

1. Of Decl. V., except in the forms *fidēi, rēi*, and *spēi*; as *diēi, diērum, diēbus, rēbus.*

2. Of nouns in **ēn**, mostly Greek: *liēn, liēnis; Sīrēn, Sīrēnis.* So *Anio, Anīenis.*

3. Of *Celtiber, Iber, ver*,—*hēres, ūcūples, merces, quies, inquies, rēquies, plebs*,—*lex, rex, ālex, ālex, vervex.*

4. Of a few Greek words in **es** and **er**, except *aēr* and *aether*; as *lēbes, lebētis; crāter, cratēris.*

**636. I** in the increments of declension is short: *mīles, mīlitis, mīlitibus; anceps, ancīpitis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long in the first increment,

1. Of most words in **ix**: *rādix, radicis; fēlix, felīcis.*

But short in: *appendix, cāllia, Cīllia, fīllia, fornīa, nīa, pīa, sīllia, strīa*, and a few others, chiefly proper names.

2. Of *dis, glis, lis, vis, Qutris, Samnis*.
3. Of *delphin* and a few rare Greek words.
4. For quantity of the ending *ius*, see 612. 3.

637. **U** in the increments of declension is short: *dux, dūcis; arcus, arcūbus; sātūr, satūri*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the first increment,

1. Of nouns in *us* with the genitive in *uris, utis, udis*: *jus, jūris; sālūs, salūtis; pūlus, palūdis*. Except *intercus, Līgus, pēcus*.
2. Of *fur, frux, lux, Pollux*.

638. **Y** in the increments of declension is short: *chlāmys, chlamydis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—This increment occurs only in Greek words, and is long in those in *yn, ynīs*, and in a few others.

## II. Increments of Conjugation.

639. RULE IX.—In the Increments of Conjugation (630), **a, e, and o** are long; **i and u** short:

*āmāmus, amēmus, amātōte, rēgimus, sūmus*.

1. In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *fēro, vōlo*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris, volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *fērēbam* and *vōlēbam*, the increments are *re* and *le*.

2. In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (254), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dēdīmus* has but one increment *dī*.

640. **A** in the increments of conjugation is long: *āmāre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment of *do*: *dāre, dābam, circumdābam*.

641. **E** in the increments of conjugation is long: *mōnēre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is short before **r**,

1. In the tenses in **ram, rim, ro**: *āmāvērā, amavērīm, amavēro; rexerat, rexerit*.

2. In the Present and Imperfect of Conj. III.: *rēgēre, regēris, regērem, regērer*.

3. In the Fut. ending **bēris, bēre**: *āmābēris, or -ēre, mōnēbēris*.

4. Rarely in the Perf. ending **erunt**: *stētērunt* for *steterunt*. See 235, also *Systole*, 669. IV.

642. **O** in the increments of conjugation is long without exception: *mōnētōte, rēgītōte*.

**643. I** in the increments of conjugation is short: *rēgitis, reximus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long, except before a vowel,

1. In the first increment of Cong. IV., except *imus* of the Perf.: *audire, audivi, auditum*; *sentio, sentimus, sensimus* (perf.).

2. In Conj. III. in the first increment of perfects and supines in *ivi* and *itum* (276. III.) and of the parts derived from them (except *imus* of Perf.: *trivimus*): *cūpiōi, cupiōerat, cupitus*; *pētīōi, pētītus*; *cūpessīōi, cupessitūrus*. *Gāvīus* from *gaudeo* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings *imus* and *itis* of Pres. Subj.: *simus, sitis*; *vēlimus, velītis* (289. 8).

4. In *nōlīte, nolīto, nolūtōte*, and in the different persons of *ībam, ībo*, from *eo* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings *rimus* and *ritis* of the Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj.: *amāverīmus, amāverītis*.

**644. U** in the increments of conjugation is short: *vōlūmus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the Supine and the parts formed from it: *vōlūtum, volūtūrus, amātūrus*.

### III. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

**645. RULE X.**—The following derivative endings have the penult long:

I. *ābrum, āorum, ātrum*:

*flābrum, simūlācerum, ārātrum*.

II. *ēdo, īdo, ūdo*; *āgo, igo, ūgo*:

*dulcedo, cūpido, solitūdo*; *vōrāgo, ōrigo, aerūgo*.

III. *āis, ēis, ōis, ōtis, īne, ōne*—*in patronymics*:

*Ptōlēmaīs, Chrýsēis, Minōis, Icāriōtis, Nērīne, Acrisīōne*.

Except *Dānāis, Phōcdāis, Thēbdāis, Nērēis*.

IV. *ēla, ile*; *ālis, ēlis, ūlis*:

*quērēla, ōvile*; *mortālis, fidēlis, cūrālis*.

V. *ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus*; *āna, ēna, ōna, ūna*:

*urbānus, ēgēnus, patrōnus, tribūnus*; *membrāna, hābēna, annōna, lācūna*.

Except *galbōnus*.

VI. *āris, ārus*; *ōrus, ōsus*; *āvus, īvus*:

*sālūtāris, āvārus*; *cānōrus, ānimōsus*; *octāvus, aestīvus*.

VII. *ātus, itus, ūtus; ātim, itim, ūtim; ētum, ēta:*

*alātus, turritus, cornūtus; singulātum, vīritum, tribūtum; quercētum, mōnēta.*

Except (1) *dalēlītus, grātūītus, hālītus, hospītus, servītus, spirītus*, (2) *affātum, etātum*, and adverbs in *ītus*, as *dirinītus*; and (3) participles provided for by 639.

VIII. *ēni, īni, ōni,—in distributives:*

*septēni, quīni, octōni.*

646. RULE XI.—The following derivative endings have the penult short:

I. *ādes, īdes, ūdes,—in patronymics:*

*Aenēādes, Lāertiādes, Tantālides.*

Except (1) those in *ides* from nouns in *eus* and *es*; as, *Pēlides* (Pelens), *Neocides* (Neocles), and (2) *Amphiārēides, Ampholēdes, Bēlides, Cōrōnides, Ljōurgides.*

II. *īacus, ūcus, ūcus:*

*Cōrinthiācus, mōdicus, cāpidus.*

Except *amīcus, antīcus, apīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pūdicus.*

III. *ulus, ūla, ūlum; ūlus, ūla, ūlum; ūlus, ūla, ūlum,—in diminutives:*

*filiūlus, filiūla, atriūlum; hortūlus, virgūla, oppidūlum; floscūlus, particūla, mūnuscūlum.*

IV. *ētas, ūtas,—in nouns; ūter, ūtus,—in adverbs:*

*piētas, vērītas; fortīter, divīnītus.*

V. *ātilis, ūlis, bīlis,—in verbals; īnus,—in adjectives denoting material or time:*

*versātilis, dōcīlis, amābīlis; ādāmantīnus, cedrīnus, crastīnus, diutīnus.*

Except *mātūtīnus, rēpentīnus, vespertīnus.*

1. *īlis* in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long: *civīlis, hostīlis, puērīlis, virīlis.*

2. *īnus* denoting characteristic (325) usually has the penult long: *cānīnus, equīnus, mārīnus.*

647. RULE XII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult long:

I. *āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius:*

*rōsāceus, pannūceus, sūbitāneus, cībārius, cōlumbārium, censōrius.*

II. *ābīlis, ātilis, ātīcus:*

*amābīlis, versātilis, āquātīcus.*

III. āginta, igitī, ēsīmus,—in numerals :

- nōnāginta, vīginti, centēsīmus.

648. RULE XIII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult short :

I. ībīlis, ītūdo, ōlentus, ūlentus.

crēdībīlis, sōlītudo, vīnōlentus, ōpūlentus.

II. ūrio,—in desideratives :

ēsūrio, emptūrio, partūrio.

IV. QUANTITY OF STEM SYLLABLES.

I. In Primitives.

649. The quantity of stem-syllables in primitive words, when not determined by the General Rules (Sec. I.), is in most cases best referred to authority. Thus,

In māter, cēdo, scrībo, dōno, ūtor, the first syllable is *long by authority*, while in pāter, tēgo, mīco, sōno, ūter, it is *short by authority*.

650. RULE XIV.—The quantity of stem-syllables remains unchanged in inflection :

In DECLENSION,—āvis, āvem; nūbes, nūbium.

In COMPARISON,—lēvis, lēvior, lēvissīmus.

In CONJUGATION,—mōneo, mōnēbam, mōnui.

1. Position may however affect the quantity: āger, āgrī (611, 612); possum, pōtui; solvo, sōlūtum; volvo, vōlūtum.

Here *ā* becomes *ā* before *gr*. The *o* in *possum*, *solvo*, and *volvo*, long only by position, becomes short before a single consonant.

2. Gigno gives gēnui, gēnūtum, and pōno, pōsui, pōsūtum.

3. See also 651, 652.

651. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position :

jūvo, jūvi, jūtum; fōveo, fōvi, fōtum.

1. These Perfects and Supines, if formed from Presents with the first syllable short, are exceptions to 650.

2. Seven Perfects have the first syllable short :

bībi, dēdi, fidī, scidi, steti, stiti, tūli.

3. Ten Supines have the first syllable short:

*citum, dātum, itum, litum, quītum, rītum, rūtum, sūtum, sītum, stātum.*<sup>1</sup>

652. In trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects the first two syllables are short:

*cādo, cēcīdi; cāno, cēcīni; disco, dīdīci.*

1. *Caedo* has *cēcidī* in distinction from *cēcidī* from *cādo*.

2. The second syllable may be made long by position: *cūcūrrī, mēmōrdī*.

## II. In Derivatives.

653. RULE XV.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives:

*bōnus, bōnitas; tīmeo, tīmor; ānimus, ānimōsus; cīvis, cīvīcus; cūra, cūro.*

1. Frequentatives in *ito*, have *i* short: *clāmīto*. See 332. I.

2. In a few Derivatives the short vowel of the primitive is lengthened:

<i>hōmo,</i>	<i>hūmānus,</i>	<i>rēgo,</i>	<i>rēx, rēgis, rēgūla,</i>
<i>lāteo,</i>	<i>lāterna,</i>	<i>sēcus,</i>	<i>sēcīus,</i>
<i>lēgo,</i>	<i>lēx, lēgis,</i>	<i>sēdeo,</i>	<i>sēdes, sēdūlus,</i>
<i>mācer,</i>	<i>mācēro,</i>	<i>sēro,</i>	<i>sēmen,</i>
<i>mōveo,</i>	<i>mōbīlis,</i>	<i>suspīcor,</i>	<i>suspīcio,</i>
<i>persōno,</i>	<i>persōna,</i>	<i>tēgo,</i>	<i>tēgūla.</i>

3. In a few Derivatives the long vowel of the primitive is shortened:

<i>ācer,</i>	<i>ācerbus,</i>	<i>nōtum,</i>	<i>nōta,</i>
<i>dīco,</i>	<i>dīcax,</i>	<i>ōdi,</i>	<i>ōdium,</i>
<i>dūco,</i>	<i>dux, dūcis,</i>	<i>sōpio,</i>	<i>sōpor,</i>
<i>fīdo,</i>	<i>fīdes,</i>	<i>vādo,</i>	<i>vādum,</i>
<i>lūceo,</i>	<i>lūcerna,</i>	<i>vōx, vōcis,</i>	<i>vōco.</i>
<i>mōles,</i>	<i>mōlestus,</i>		

This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction: *mōcībīlis*, *mōbīlis*, *mōbīlis*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography: as the verbs *lēgis*, *lēges*, *rēgis*, *rēges*, *sēdes*, from the nouns *lēgis*, *lēges*, *rēgis*, *rēges*, *sēdes*, or the verbs *dūcis*, *dūces*, *fīdes*, from the nouns *dūcis*, *dūces*, *fīdes*.

## III. In Compounds.

654. RULE XVI.—Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements:

*antē-fēro, dē-fēro, dē-dūco, in-aequālis, prū-dūco.*

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity:

*dē-līgo (lēgo), oc-cīdo (cādo), oc-cīdo (caedo).*

<sup>1</sup> From *stato*, but *stātum* from *sto*.



2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Di*, *sē*, and *vē* are long, *rē* short: *ne* sometimes long and sometimes short:

*didūco*, *sēdūco*, *vēcors*, *rēdūco*, *nēdum*, *nēfas*:

1) *Di* is short in *dīstīmo*, *dīsertus*.

2) *Ne* is long in *nēdum*, *nēmo*, *nēquam*, *nēquāquam*, *nēquidquam*, *nēquātīa*, and *nēve*. In other words it is short.

3) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rēligio*, *rēliquiae*, *rēpērit*, *rēpūlit*, *rēvūlit*, etc.

3. CHANGE OF QUANTITY.—In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus

*Dico* gives *-dīcus*; *jūro*, *-jēro*; *nōtus*, *-nītus*; *nūbo*, *nūba*: *mālē-dīcus*, *de-jēro*, *cog-nītus*, *prō-nūba*.

4. PRO.—*Pro* is short in the following words:

*Prōcella*, *prōeul*, *prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfecto*, *prōfestus*, *prōficiscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfūgio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōfundus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōterous*, and most Greek words, as *prōphēta*, generally in *prōfundo*, *prōpāgo*, *prōpīno*, rarely in *prōcūro*, *prōpello*.

5. STEM.—When the first element is the stem of a word (§38. III.), it is often followed by a short connecting vowel:

*cāl-ē-fācio*, *lāb-ē-fācio*, *bell-ī-gēro*, *aad-ī-fīco*, *art-ī-fex*, *ampl-ī-fīco*, *lōc-ū-ple*s.

Before *fācio* in a few compounds *e* is sometimes lengthened: *liquēfācio*, *pātēfācio*, *putrēfācio*, *tēpēfācio*. The first *e* in *vidēlicet* is long.

6. I LONG.—*I* is long,—(1) in the first part of compounds of *dies*: *mēridies*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *quōtīdie*, *trīduum*, and (2) in the contracted forms, *bigae*, *trigae*, *quadrigae*, *ilicet*, *scilicet*, *tībīcen* for *tībīcen*.

But *i* is short in *biduum* and *quātrīduum*.

7. O LONG.—*O* is long in *contrō*, *intrō*, *retrō*, and *quandō* in composition; as: *contrōversia*, *intrōdūco*, *retrōverto*, *quandōque*, but *quandōquīdem*.

8. SPECIAL WORDS.—*Hōdie*, *quāsi*, and *siquīdem* have the first syllable short.

# CHAPTER II.

## VERSIFICATION.

### SECTION I.

#### GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT

655. Latin Versification is based upon Quantity and Accent. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.

#### I. METRICAL FEET.

656. Feet are either simple or compound. For convenience of reference we add the following list :

##### I. Simple Feet.

##### DISSYLLABIC FEET.

Spondee,	<i>two long syllables,</i>	— —	Lēgēs.
Trochee, <sup>1</sup>	<i>a long and a short,</i>	— ∪	Lēgīs.
Iambus,	<i>a short and a long,</i>	∪ —	Pārēs.
Pyrrhic,	<i>two short,</i>	∪ ∪	Pātēr.

##### TRISYLLABIC FEET.

Dactyl,	<i>a long and two short,</i>	— ∪ ∪	cārminā.
Anapaest,	<i>two short and a long,</i>	∪ ∪ —	bōnītās.
Tribrach,	<i>three short,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪	dōmīnūs.
Molossus,	<i>three long,</i>	— — —	libertās.
Amphibrach,	<i>a short, a long, and a short,</i>	∪ — ∪	amicūs.
Amphimacer, <sup>2</sup>	<i>a long, a short, and a long,</i>	— ∪ —	millēs.
Bacchius,	<i>a short and two long,</i>	∪ — —	dolorēs.
Antibacchius,	<i>two long and a short,</i>	— — ∪	pāstōris.

##### II. Compound Feet.

These are only compounds of the dissyllabic feet, and all have four syllables.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes called *Choree*.

<sup>2</sup> Also called *Cretic*.

Dispondee,	<i>double spondee,</i>	— — — —	praesep̄torēs.
Ditrochee,	<i>double trochee,</i>	— — — —	civitatīs.
Diiambus,	<i>double iambus,</i>	— — — —	amoenitās.
Proceleusmatic,	<i>double pyrrhic,</i>	— — — —	mēmoriā.
Greater Ionic,	<i>spondee and pyrrhic,</i>	— — — —	santētiā.
Lesser Ionic,	<i>pyrrhic and spondee,</i>	— — — —	ad̄olescēns.
Choriambus,	<i>trochee (choree), and iambus,</i>	— — — —	imp̄atiēs.
Antispast,	<i>iambus and trochee,</i>	— — — —	verēcundūs.
First Epitrite,	<i>iambus and spondee,</i>	— — — —	am̄av̄erunt.
Second Epitrite,	<i>trochee and spondee,</i>	— — — —	cōnditōrēs.
Third Epitrite,	<i>spondee and iambus,</i>	— — — —	auctōritās.
Fourth Epitrite,	<i>spondee and trochee,</i>	— — — —	orn̄amēntā.
First Paeon,	<i>trochee and pyrrhic,</i>	— — — —	histōriā.
Second Paeon,	<i>iambus and pyrrhic,</i>	— — — —	am̄abilis.
Third Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and trochee,</i>	— — — —	pūerilis.
Fourth Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and iambus,</i>	— — — —	cēlērītās.

1. COMMON FEET.—The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are,

1) The *Dactyl* and *Spondee*, used in the Heroic Hexameter.

2) Less frequently the *Iambus*, *Trochee*, *Tribrach*, *Anapaest*, and *Choriambus*.

2. GROUPS.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Tripod*y, of three; a *Tetrapody*, of four, etc. A *Triemimēris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; *Penthemimēris*, of two and a half; *Hepthēthemimēris*, of three and a half, etc.

657. METRICAL EQUIVALENTS.—A long syllable may often be resolved into two short ones, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short ones may be contracted into a long one. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original forms. Thus,

The *Dactyl* becomes a *Spondee* by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the *Spondee* becomes a *Dactyl* by resolving the second syllable, or an *Anapaest* by resolving the first. Accordingly the *Dactyl*, the *Spondee*, and the *Anapaest* are metrical equivalents. In like manner the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, and the *Tribrach* are metrical equivalents.

658. METRICAL SUBSTITUTES.—In certain kinds of verse, feet are sometimes substituted for those which are not their metrical equivalents. Thus,

The *Spondee* is often substituted for the *Iambus* or the *Trochee*, though not equivalent to either. See 679, 682.

659. ICTUS OR RHYTHMIC ACCENT.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or *Ictus*.

1. **SIMPLE FEET.**—Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used for other feet. Thus,

The Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. **EQUIVALENTS AND SUBSTITUTES.**—These take the ictus of the feet for which they are used. Thus,

The Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl, i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest, i. e., on the last syllable.

1) Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally equivalents or substitutes, and are accented accordingly.

2) When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus rests chiefly on the first of these two. Thus the Dactyl used for the Anapaest takes the ictus on the first short syllable.

3. **COMPOUND FEET.**—These take the ictus of the feet of which they are composed. Thus,

The *Choriambus* (trochee and iambus) takes the ictus of the trochee on the first syllable and that of the iambus on the last.

But *Ionic* feet are generally read with the ictus on the first long syllable.

**660. ARSIS AND THESIS.**—The accented part of each foot is called the *Arsis* (*raising*); and the unaccented part, *Thesis* (*lowering*).

## II. VERSES.

**661.** A verse is a line of poetry, and is either simple or compound.

I. A Simple verse has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse. Thus,

Every Dactylic Verse has the ictus on the first syllable, because the Dactyl, its characteristic foot, has it on that syllable.

II. A Compound verse has a characteristic foot for each member. See 692.

**662. CAESURAL PAUSE.**—Most verses are divided into two nearly equal parts by a pause or rest called the *caesura*<sup>1</sup> or *caesural pause*. See 673, 674.

**663. METRICAL NAMES OF VERSES.**—The metrical name of a verse designates,

I. The Characteristic foot. Thus,

---

<sup>1</sup> *Caesura* (from *caedo*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the verse into parts.

Dactylic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses have respectively the Dactyl, the Trochee, and the Iambus as the characteristic foot.

## II. The Number of Feet or Measures.<sup>1</sup> Thus,

1. Dactylic Hexameter is Dactylic verse of six measures.
2. A verse consisting of one measure is *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

## III. The Completeness or Incompleteness of the measures. Thus,

1. A verse is termed *Acatalectic*, when its last measure is complete; *Catalectic*, when it is incomplete.

1) A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllabam*, *in disyllabum*, or *in trisyllabum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

2) A *Brachycatalectic* verse wants the closing foot of the last Dipody.

3) An *Acephalous* verse wants the first syllable of the first foot.

4) A *Hypercatalectic* verse, also called *Hypermeter*, has an excess of syllables.

2. The full metrical name combines the three particulars enumerated under I. II. and III., as *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, etc.

1) But for the sake of brevity the term *Acatalectic* is often omitted when it can be done without ambiguity.

2) Verses are sometimes known by names which merely designate the number of feet or measures. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

**664. SPECIAL NAMES OF VERSES.**—Many verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets. Thus,

*Alcaic* from Alcaeus, *Archilochian* from Archilochus, *Sapphic* from Sappho, *Glyconic*, from Glycon, etc.

Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Paroemiac*, to proverbs, etc.

**665. FINAL SYLLABLE.**—The final syllable of a verse may generally be either long or short.

**666. STANZA.**—A stanza is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole. See 699, 700.

A stanza of two lines is called a *Distich*; of three, a *Tristich*; of four, a *Tetrastich*.

---

<sup>1</sup> A measure is a single foot, except in Anapaestic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses, where it is a Dipody or Pair of feet.

**667. METRE.**—Metre signifies *measure*, and is used to designate,

1. A Foot or Dipody, as the measure, or metrical element of a verse.

2. A Verse or Stanza, as the measure of a poem.

**668. SCANNING.**—Scanning consists in separating a poem, or verse, into the feet of which it is composed.

### III. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

**669.** The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody. These are,

**I. SYNALOEPHA.**—This is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel:

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, *for* Monstrum horrendum informe ingens. *Virg.*

1. No account is taken of *h*, as it is only a breathing (2. 2). Hence *horrendum* is treated as a word beginning with a vowel.

2. Interjections, *o*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, etc., are not elided, but in other words the elision generally takes place in the best poets.

3. Final *e* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes elided before a consonant: Pyrrh'n' connūbia servas? *for* Pyrrh'ne connūbia servas? *Virg.*

4. The elision of *s* occurs in the early poets:

Ex omnību' rēbus, *for* Ex omnibus rēbus. *Lucr.*

**II. SYNAERESIS.**—This is the contraction of two syllables into one:

aurēa, dēinde, dēinceps, īdem, īsdem.

1. Synaeresis is of frequent application. Thus,

1) Two successive vowels are often thus united, as in the examples above.

2) A vowel and a diphthong: *eūdem*.

3) Two vowels separated by *h*, as only a breathing: *prohibeat*, pronounced *prō-beat*.

2. In the different parts of *dēum*, *ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dēesse*, *dēest*, *dēerat*, *dēerit*, etc.: so *ei* in the verb *anteco*: *antēire*, *antērem*, *antēis*, *antēit*.

3. *I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*: Thus, *ābīlēs* and *ārītēs*, become *ābylēs* and *ārylēs*; *gēnūā* and *tēnūēs* become *gēnwā* and *tēnwēs*.

III. DIAERESIS.—This is the resolution of one syllable into two:

aurāi *for* aurae, Orphēūs *for* Orphēūs, soluendus, *for* solvendus, silua *for* silva.

As a matter of fact the Latin poets seldom, if ever, actually divide any syllable into two, and the examples generally explained by *diaeresis* are only ancient forms, occasionally used by them for effect or convenience.

IV. SYSTOLE.—This is the shortening of a long syllable:

tūlērunt *for* tūlērunt, stētērunt *for* stētērunt (235), vīdē'n *for* vīdesne.

This is a rare poetical license, occurring most frequently in the final vowels and diphthongs, which would otherwise be elided. See 669. II.

V. DIASTOLE.—This is the lengthening of a short syllable:

Prīāmīdes *for* Prīāmīdes.

This is a poetical license, used chiefly in proper names and in final syllables in the arsis of the foot (660).

## SECTION II.

### VARIETIES OF VERSE.

#### I. DACTYLIC VERSE.

670. All Dactylic Verses are measured by single feet (663. II.), and consist of Dactyls and their metrical equivalents, Spondees. The ictus is on the first syllable of every foot.

##### I. Dactylic Hexameter.

671. The Dactylic Hexameter consists of six feet. The first four are either Dactyls or Spondees, the fifth a Dactyl, and the sixth a Spondee (665).

The scale is,<sup>1</sup>

$\begin{array}{c} \text{— — —} \mid \text{— — —} \mid \text{— — —} \mid \text{— — —} \mid \text{— — —} \mid \text{— —} \\ \text{— —} \mid \text{— —} \mid \text{— —} \mid \text{— —} \mid \text{— —} \mid \text{— —} \end{array}$

Quādrupē- | dāntē pū- | trem sōnī- | tū quātīt | ūngulā | cāmpum. *Virg.*

Armā vī- | rūmquē cā- | nō Trō- | jāsē quī | primūs āb | ōris. *Virg.*

Infān- | dām rē- | gīnā jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrem. *Virg.*

Illī<sup>2</sup> In- | tēr sē- | sē mās- | nā vī | brāchīā | tōllūt. *Virg.*

<sup>1</sup> In this scale the sign ' marks the ictus (659).

<sup>2</sup> The final *i* of *illī* is elided by *Synaloepha* (669).

**672. VARIETIES.**—The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

1. ILLUSTRATION.—Thus a verse may contain,
  - 1) Five dactyls and one spondee, as in the first example above.
  - 2) Four dactyls and two spondees. These again admit four different arrangements.
  - 3) Three dactyls and three spondees, as in the second and third examples above. But these again admit six different arrangements.
  - 4) Two dactyls and four spondees. These admit four different arrangements.
  - 5) One dactyl and five spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. EFFECT OF DACTYLS.—Dactyls produce a rapid movement and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

3. SPONDAIC LINE.—The Hexameter sometimes takes a spondee in the fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cĕră dĕ- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mēg- | num Jōvis | Incrē- | mēntum. *Virg.*

**673. CAESURAL PAUSE.**—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:

Armē- | tī tēn- | dānt; || It | clāmōr ēt | āgmīnē | fāctō. *Virg.*

Infān- | dūm, rē- | gīnā, || jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrem. *Virg.*

In the first line the caesural pause, marked ||, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *regina*, in the thesis (*nā jū*) of the third foot.

1. RARE CAESURAL PAUSE.—The caesural pause is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second foot. Sometimes indeed this last becomes the principal pause:

Crēdīdē- | rīm; || vēr | illū ē- | rāt, || vēr | māgnūs ā- | gēbat. *Virg.*

2. BUCOLIC CAESURA.—A pause between the fourth and fifth feet is generally called the *bucolic caesura*, because often used in pastoral poetry:

Ingēn- | tem coe- | lō sōnī- | tūm dēdīt; || Indē sē- | cūtus. *Virg.*

3. FAULTY CAESURA.—A caesural pause at the end of the third foot is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Pulvērū- | lēntūs ē- | quīs fūrīt; || ōmnēs | ārmā rē- | quīrunt. *Virg.*

**674. CAESURA AND CAESURAL PAUSE.**—The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these (sometimes two) is marked by the caesural pause:



*arms and the man*—*Arma vi-* | *rumque cæ-* | *nō,* || *Trō-* | *jaē quī* | *primūs āb* | *ōris.* *Virg.*

1. Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *cāno*, has the caesural pause.

2. In determining which caesura is to be marked by the pause the reader must be guided by the sense, introducing the pause where there is a pause of sense, or where at least it will not interfere with the sense.

3. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

*Rōmaē* | *moēnā* | *tērrūt* | *Impīgōr* | *Hānnībāl* | *ārmis.* *Enn.*

**675. LAST WORD OF THE HEXAMETER.**—The last word of the Hexameter should be either a dissyllable or a trisyllable. See examples above.

1. Two monosyllables are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

*Præcipi-* | *tant cū-* | *rae,* || *tūr-* | *bātāquē* | *fūnērē* | *mēns est.* *Virg.*

*Est* is indeed often used even when not preceded by another monosyllable.

2. A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

*Pārtūr-* | *ūnt mōn-* | *tēs,* || *nas-* | *cētūr* | *ridīcū-* | *lūs mus.* *Hor.*

## II. Dactylic Pentameter.

**676.** The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by the caesural pause. Each part consists of two Dactyls and the arsis of a third. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:

$\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}}$  |  $\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}}$  |  $\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}}$  ||  $\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}}$  |  $\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}}$  |  $\frac{\text{—}}{\text{—}}$

*Admōnī-* | *tū coe-* | *pī* || *fōrtiōr* | *āssē tū-* | *ō.* *Ovid.*

1. **PENTAMETER.**—The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being dactyls or spondees; the third, a spondee; the fourth and fifth, anapaests.

2. **ELEGIAC DISTICH.**—The Dactylic Pentameter is seldom, if ever, used, except in the Elegiac Distich, which consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

*Sēmīssē-* | *pūltā vī-* | *rūm* || *cūr-* | *vīs fērī-* | *ūntūr ā-* | *rātris*

*Ossā,* *rū-* | *īnō-* | *pās* || *decūlīt* | *hērbā dō-* | *mūs.* *Or.*

*The half buried bone of men are struck by the curved plow:  
The grass covers the ruins of homes.*

## III. Other Dactylic Verses.

**677.** The other varieties of dactylic verse are less important, but the following deserve mention:

**I. DACTYLIC TETRAMETER.**—This consists of the last four feet of the Hexameter :

Ibimūs | O.sōcī- | ī, cōmī- | tēsque. *Hor.*

In compound verses, as the Greater Archilochian, the tetrameter in composition with other metres, has a dactyl in the fourth place. See 691. I.

**II. DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.**—This is the Lesser Archilochian, and is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter :

Arbōrī- | būsquē cō- | mae. *Hor.*

**III. DACTYLIC DIMETER.**—This is the Adonic, and consists of a Dactyl and Spondee :

Mōntis ī- | māgō. *Hor.*

## II. ANAPAESTIC VERSE.

678. Anapaestic verses consist of Anapaestic dipodies.

An Anapaestic dipody consists of two Anapaests, but admits Spondees or Dactyls as equivalents.

**I. ANAPAESTIC DIMETER** consists of two dipodies :

Vēnīēnt : annīs || saeculā : sēria.<sup>1</sup> *Sen.*

This is sometimes catalectic (668. III. 1), and has only a long syllable in place of the last foot. It is then called *Paroemiac*.

**II. ANAPAESTIC MONOMETER** consists of one dipody :

Dātā rēs : pātriāe. *Auson.*

1. In Anapaestic verse Dactyls are used sparingly, and are generally followed by Spondees. Each dipody generally ends with a word.

2. The last syllable is not common, as in most kinds of verse (665), but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity.

3. Anapaestic verse does not occur in the best Latin Poets.

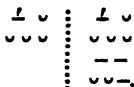
## III. TROCHAIC VERSE.

679. Trochaic verses consist of Trochaic dipodies.

A Trochaic dipody consists of two Trochees, or of a Trochee and a Spondee; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Trochee, and the Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second :

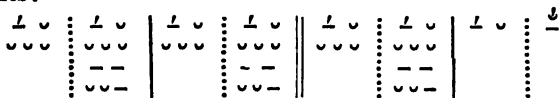
---

<sup>1</sup> In verses measured by dipodies, a dotted line is placed between the feet, a single line between the dipodies, and a double line in the place of the caesural pause.



### *I. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.*

**680.** This consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. The caesural pause is at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:

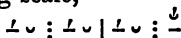


Nállă : vōx hā- | mǎnă : cōnstăt || Ābsquē : sēptēm | lītē- : ris,  
Rītē : vōcā- | lēs vō- : cāvīt || quās mǎ- : gīstrǎ | Graēcl- : a. *Ter. Mau.*

1. In *Proper Names*, a dactyl may be introduced in any foot except the fourth and seventh.
2. The *Proceleusmatic* for the Spondee sometimes occurs.
3. In *Comedy* the Spondee and its equivalents occur in the odd feet, as well as in the even, except in the last dipody.
4. The *Trochaic Tetrameter* also occurs in the earlier poets in its complete form, i. e., with eight full feet:

## II. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

**681.** This consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents and has the following scale,



**Aulă** : dīvī- | tēm mă- : net. *Hor.*

1. This is sometimes called *Iambic Dimeter Acephalous*, i. e., an Iambic Dimeter with the first syllable wanting.
2. A *Trochaic Tripody*,—three Trochees—technically called a *Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic*, or an *Ithyphallicus*, occurs in the Greater Archilochian. See 691. I.
3. For *Sapphic Verse*, see 691. IV.
4. For *Phalæctan*, see 691. V.

#### IV. LAMBIC VERSE.

**682. Iambic verses consist of Iambic dipodies.**

An Iambic dipody consists of two Iambi, or of a Spondee and an Iambus; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Iambus, and sometimes the Dactyl or the

**Anapaest, of the Spondee.** The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

In its full form it has the following scale:

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60	61	62	63	64	65	66	67	68	69	70	71	72	73	74	75	76	77	78	79	80	81	82	83	84	85	86	87	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95	96	97	98	99	100
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

### *I. Iambic Trimeter.*

**683.** This verse, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies.

**I. The first dipody has the full form.**

II. The second admits no Anapaest.

III. The third admits no Anapaest or Dactyl, and in its second foot, no equivalent whatever.

IV. The Caesural Pause is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth.

The scale is,

[illegible]

Quid ōb- : sērā- | tīs || au- : rībūs | fūndīs : prēces? *Hor.* •

Nēptū- : nūs ēl- | tō || tūn- : dīt hī- | bērnūs : sālo. *Hor.*

Hās in- : tēr ēpū- | lās || ūt : jūvāt | pāstās : ōves. *Hor.*

1. **PROPER NAMES.**—In proper names an Anapaest is admissible in any foot, except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. HORACE.—In Horace the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl and Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. COMEDY.—In Comedy great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

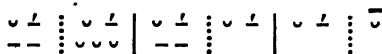
4. CHOLIAMBUS.—This is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Spondee in the sixth foot and an Iambus in the fifth :

**Mîsăr : Cătul- | lă dă- : sînās | Înēp- : tîre. Catul.**

*Choliambus* means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is sometimes called *Scazon* for the same reason, and sometimes *Hipponactian*, from Hipponax, its reputed inventor.

**684. IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.**—This is the Iambic Trimeter with the last foot incomplete. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tri-

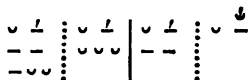
brach in the second foot and the Spondee in the first and third:



Vócã- : tũs át- | quẽ nõn : vócã- | tũs au- : dít. *Hor.*

## II. Iambic Dimeter.

685. This verse consists of two Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tribrach in the second place, the Spondee in the first and third, and the Dactyl in the first:

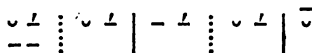


Quẽrũn- : tũr in | sũlvĩs : ăves. *Hor.*

Imbrẽs : nĩvẽs- | quẽ cõm- : pãrat. *Hor.*

Āst ăgõ : vĩcĩs- | sũm rĩ- : sãro. *Hor.*

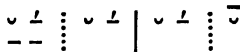
1. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER occurs in Horace with the following scale:



Pũer | quĩs ẽx | aulã | cãpĩl- | lis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called the Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse and forms the third line in the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

2. IAMBIC DIMETER CATALECTIC does not occur in the pure Latin poets. Its scale is,



Mãnũ : pũer | lõquẽ- : ci. *Pet. Arb.*

3. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALOUS.—This name is sometimes given to the Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (681), which is then treated as Iambic Dimeter without the first syllable. Thus

Au- : lã dĩ- | vĩtẽm : mãnẽt. *Hor.*

## III. Iambic Tetrameter.

686. The Iambic Tetrameter is little used in Latin except in Comedy. It consists of four Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. The caesural pause is usually after the fourth foot:

Quãntum in- : tẽllẽx- | ĩ mõdõ : sãnĩs || sãnĩtẽn- : tĩãm | dẽ nũp- : tĩĩs. *Ter.*

The *Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic* belongs mostly to comedy, but occurs also in Catullus:

Quôt côm- : môdâs | rês ât- : tâlî ? || quôt au- : tem âdô- | mî cû- : râs. *Ter.*

## V. IONIC VERSE.

687. The Ionic a Minore consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Tetrameter or Dimeter:

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \cup & \text{—} \\ & & & & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & & \cup & \cup & \text{—} \end{array}$

Sîmul ûnctûs | Tîbêrinîs | hûmêrûs lē- | vît in ûndîs. *Hor.*

Nêquē sêgnî | pêdê victus. *Hor.*

1. Horace has this metre only in one short ode (III. 12). In some editions this ode consists entirely of Tetrameters; but in others it is arranged in stanzas of three lines; the first two, Tetrameters, and the third, a Dimeter.

2. In this verse the last syllable is not common, but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity, as in the Anapaestic verse. See 678. 2.

3. The Ionic a Majore, *Sotadæan Verse*, scarcely occurs in Latin, except in Comedy. In its pure state it consists of three Greater Ionic feet and a Spondee, but in Martial the third foot is a Ditrochee:

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & | & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ & & & & & & & \cup & \cup & & \cup & \cup & & \cup & \cup & & \cup & \cup \end{array}$

Hâs cûm gêmî- | nâ côm-pêdê | dēdicât cā- | tēnēs. *Mart.*

## VI. CHORIAMBIC VERSE.

688. Choriambic verses begin with a Spondee followed by one, two, or three Choriambi, and end with an Iambus.

In Horace the Choriambic verse uniformly begins with the Spondee, but in some of the other poets the Trochee, the Anapaest, or the Iambus occasionally takes the place of the Spondee.

689. A Choriambic verse with one Choriambus is called the *Glyconic*; or, if catalectic, the *Pherecratean*; with two, the *Asclepiadæan*; with three, the Greater *Asclepiadæan*.

I. The GLYCONIC has the following scale:

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \cup & \text{—} \end{array}$

Dônêc | grātûs êrām | tîbî. *Hor.*

II. The PHERECRATEAN is catalectic, but otherwise identical with the Glyconic. Its scale is,

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \cup & \cup & \text{—} & | & \text{—} \end{array}$

Vîx dū- | rârê cārî- | nâe. *Hor.*

### III. The ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

┌ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡

Maecō- | nās ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg- | ūbus. *Hor.*

### IV. The GREATER ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

┌ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡

Seu plū- | rēs hīēmēs, || seu trībūt || Jūpītēr ūl- | ūmam. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called *Choriambic Pentameter* and sometimes *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

### *Epichoriambic Verse.*

690. When a verse begins with a Second Epitrite followed by one or two Choriambi, and ends with a Bacchius, it is called Epichoriambic. Of this there are two important varieties:

I. THE SAPPHIC VERSE.—This consists of a Second Epitrite, a Choriambus and a Bacchius:

┌ ◡ ◡ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡

Nāmquē mē sīl- | vā || lūpūs īn | Sābīna. *Hor.*

1. But the Sapphic verse may also be measured as a Trochaic Dipody followed by an Aristophanic verse, i. e., as composed of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees. See 691. IV.

2. The Caesural Pause usually occurs after the fifth syllable, as in the example, but sometimes after the sixth.

3. Catullus admits two Trochees in place of the Epitrite.

II. THE GREATER SAPPHIC VERSE.—This differs from the Sapphic proper only in introducing a second Choriambus before the Bacchius:

┌ ◡ ◡ — | ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ || ┌ ◡ ◡ ◡ ◡ | ◡ ◡ ◡

Intēr aequā- | lēs ōquātāt, || Gāllīcā nēc | lūpātīs. *Hor.*

This is sometimes improperly called *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

### VII. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

691. Logaoedic verses consist of Dactyls, or their equivalents, followed by Trochees.

I. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.—This consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (677. I.) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees; the fourth, a Dactyl; and the last three, Trochees:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & || & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & || & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & | & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$$

Vītaē | sūmmā brē- | vīs spēm | nōs vētāt, || Inchō- : ārē | lōngam. *Hor.*

The caesural pause is between the two members.

II. **ALCAIC VERSE.**—This consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees:

$$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$$

Purpūrē- | ō vāri- | ūs cō- : lōre. *Hor.*

III. **ARISTOPHANIC VERSE.**—This consists of a Dactyl followed by two Trochees:

$$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$$

Cūr nēquē | mīll- : tāris. *Hor.*

This verse is variously named, *Aristophanic*, *Choriambic Dimeter*, and *Choriambic Dimeter Catalectia*.

IV. **SAPPHIC VERSE.**—This prefixes to the Aristophanic a Trochaic Dipody consisting of a Trochee and a Spondee (690. I.). The scale is,

$$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$$

Nāmquē : mē sīl- | vā lūpūs | In Sā- : bīna. *Hor.*

*Sapphic* verse may be classed at pleasure either with the *Logaoedic* verses, as here, or with the *Epichoriambic* verses, as in article 690. I.

V. **PHALAECIAN VERSE.**—This consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees:

$$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$$

Nōn ēst | vīvērē, īt sēd vā- : lērē | vīta. *Mart.*

This verse is sometimes called, from the number of its syllables, *Hendecasyllabic*, of eleven syllables. It does not occur in Horace. In Catullus it sometimes has a Trochee, or an Iambus, in the first place.

## VIII. MISCELLANEOUS VERSES.

692. **GREATER ALCAIC VERSE.**—This consists of an *Iambic Penthemimeris* and a pure *Dactylic Dimeter*, i. e., an Iambic Dipody, a long syllable and two Dactyls:

$$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$$

Vīdēs : ūt ēl- | tē || stēt nīvō | cāndīdum

Sōrāc- : tē nēc | jēm || sūstīnē- | ēnt ōnūs. *Hor.*

1. The Caesural Pause is usually between the two members.
2. In Horace the first foot is generally a Spondee.
3. This verse forms the first and second lines of the *Alcaic Stanza*. See



**693. DACTYLICO-IAMBIC VERSE.**—This consists of a pure *Dactylic Penthemimeris* (656. 2) and an *Iambic Dimeter* (685):

$\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|c} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

Jussūs āb- | Irē dō- | mūm, || fērē- : bār in- | cērtō ! pāde. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Elegiambus*.

2. This verse and the following compounds—the *Iambico-Dactylic* and the *Priapeian*—have the peculiarity that the two members of each may be treated as separate lines, as the last syllable of the first member is common, as at the end of a line.

**694. IAMBICO-DACTYLIC VERSE.**—This consists of an *Iambic Dimeter* and a *Dactylic Penthemimeris*, i. e., of the same parts as the preceding, but in an inverted order:

$\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|c} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

Nīvēs- : quē dē- | dūcūt : Jōvēm : || nūnc mārē, | nūnc sīlū- | ae. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Iambelegus*.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

**695. PRIAPEIAN VERSE.**—This consists of a *Glyconic* and a *Pherecratēan* (689. I. II.):

$\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|cccc|c} \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \\ \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} & \text{—} \end{array}$

Quērcūs | āridā rūs- | tīcā || cōnfūr- | mātā sēcū- | ri. *Catul.*

1. In this verse, as it appears in Catullus, the Glyconic and the Pherecratēan appear with such variations as are allowed in that poet (688). Hence the Trochee *quercūs* for the Spondee, in the example.

2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

### SECTION III.

#### THE VERSIFICATION OF VIRGIL, HORACE, OVID, AND JUVENAL.

**696. VIRGIL AND JUVENAL.**—Virgil in his Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid, and Juvenal in his Satires use only the *Dactylic Hexameter*. See 671.

**697. OVID.**—Ovid uses the Hexameter in his Metamorphoses, but the Elegiac Distich in his Epistles and other works. See 676. 2.

**698. HORACE.**—Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires, but in his Lyrics, i. e., in his Odes and Epodes, he uses a great variety of Metre.





**XII. HEXAMETER AND IAMBICO-DACTYLIC (671, 694).**

1. See VIII. 1.

2.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \downarrow & & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow \\ - & - & & - & - & - & - \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow \\ - & - & - & - & - & - & - \end{array}$

In Epode 13.

**XIII. IAMBIC TRIMETER AND DACTYLICO-IAMBIC (683, 693).**

1. See VI. 1.

2.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow \\ - & - & - & - & - & - & - \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \downarrow & & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow \\ - & - & & - & - & - & - \end{array}$

In Epode 11.

**XIV. TROCHAIC DIMETER CATALECTIC AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (681, 684).**

1.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & \cup & & \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow & \\ - & - & & - & - & - & \end{array}$

2.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \downarrow & & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow \\ - & - & & - & - & - & - \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \cup & \downarrow & & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow \\ - & - & & - & - & - & - \end{array}$

In Ode II. 18.

**XV. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN AND IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (691. I.; 684).**

1.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow \\ - & - & - & - & - & - & - \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & \cup & & \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow & \\ - & - & & - & - & - & \end{array}$

2. See XIV. 2.

In Ode I. 4.

**XVI. ARISTOPHANIC AND GREATER SAPPHIC (691. III.; 690. II).**

1.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow & \\ - & - & - & - & - & - & \end{array}$

2.  $\begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow & - & \downarrow & \cup & \cup \\ - & - & - & - & - & - & - \end{array} \parallel \begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow & \cup & \downarrow & \\ - & - & - & - & - & - & \end{array}$

In Ode I. 8.

**D. Verses used Singly.****XVII. ASCLEPIADEAN (689. III.).**

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & - & \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow & \\ - & - & - & - & - & - & \end{array}$

In three Odes: I. 1; III. 30; IV. 8.

**XVIII. GREATER ASCLEPIADEAN (689. IV.).**

$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \downarrow & - & \downarrow & \cup & \cup & \downarrow & \\ - & - & - & - & - & - & \end{array}$

In three Odes: I. 11, 18; IV. 10.

**XIX. IAMBIC TRIMETER (683). See VI. 1.**

In Epode 17.



# APPENDIX.

## I. FIGURES OF SPEECH.

**702.** A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form*, *construction*, or *signification* of words.

Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology*, from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax*, and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric*.

### 1. *Figures of Etymology.*

**703.** The Figures of Etymology are the following:

1. **APHAERESIS** takes a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word: *'st* for *est*.

2. **SYNCOPE** takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word: *vīrum* for *virōrum*, *dize* for *dixisse*.

3. **APOCOPE** takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word: *tūn'* for *tūne*.

4. **PROTHESIS** prefixes a letter or syllable to a word: *tētūli* for *tūli*.

5. **EPENTHESIS** inserts a letter or syllable in a word: *Alcūmēna* for *Alcmēna*, *ālītuum* for *ālītum*.

6. **PARAGOGE** adds a letter or syllable to a word: *dicier* for *dici*.

7. **METATHESIS** transposes letters or syllables: *pistris* for *pristis*.

8. **ANTITHESIS** substitutes one letter for another: *volnus* for *vulnus*, *olli* for *illi*.

See also Figures of Prosody, 669.

### 2. *Figures of Syntax.*

**704.** The Figures of Syntax are the following:

**I. ELLIPSIS.**—This is the omission of one or more words of a sentence:

*Hābītābat ad Jōvis (sc. templum), He dwelt near the temple of Jupiter.*  
*Liv. Abiit, ēvāsīt (et), He has gone, has escaped.* *Cic.*

1. **ASYNDETON** is an ellipsis of a conjunction, as in the last example.

2. **ZEUGMA** is an ellipsis which employs a single verb with two subjects or objects, though strictly applicable to only one:

*Pācem an bellum gērent, whether at peace (āgens) or waging war.* *Sall.*

3. **APOSIOPIESIS**, also called *Reticentia*, used for rhetorical effect, is an ellipsis which leaves the sentence unfinished:

*Quos ego — sed mōtos praestat compōndere fluctus. Whom I — but it is better to calm the troubled waves.* *Virg.*

## II. PLEONASM.—This is the use of superfluous words:

Erant itinēra duo, quibus itinēribus exire possent, *There were two ways by which ways they might depart.* Caes. Emōri pōtius quam servīre praestat, *It is better to die, rather than to be a slave.* Cic. Eurisque Nōtusque ruunt, *Both Eurus and Notus rush forth.* Virg.

1. POLTSYNDETON is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.
2. HENDIADYS is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:  
Armīs virisque, *for virīs armātis, with armed men.* Tac.
3. ANAPHORA is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses:  
Me cuncta Itālia, me ūniversa civitas consūlem declāravit, *Me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul.* Cic.
4. EPIPHORA is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses:  
Laellus nāvus erat, doctus erat, *Laellus was diligent, was learned.* Cic.

## III. ENALLAGE.—This is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another:

Pōpulus lāte rex (for *regnans*), *a people of extensive sway* (ruling extensively). Virg. Sērus (*sēro*) in coelum rēdeas, *May you return late to heaven.* Hor. Vīna cādīs (*vīnis cādōs*) ōnērāre, *to fill the flasks with wine.* Virg.

1. ANTIMERIA is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.
2. HYPALLAGE is the use of one case for another, as in the last example.
3. SYNESIS is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. See 438. 6 and 461.
4. ANACOLUTHON is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence:  
Sī, ut dicunt, omnes Graecos esse (*Graeci sunt*), *if, as they say, all are Greeks.* Cic.

## IV. HYPERBATON.—This is a transposition of words or clauses:

Praeter arma nihil erat sup̄er (*sūpererat*), *Nothing remained, except their arms.* Nep. Vālet atque vivit (*vivit atque vālet*), *He is alive and well.* Ter.

1. ANASTROPHE is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.
2. HYSTERON PROTERON is a transposition of clauses, as in the second example.
3. THESIS is the separation of the parts of a compound word. See 523. 2. 2).

### 3. Figures of Rhetoric.

705. Figures of Rhetoric, also called Tropes, comprise several varieties. The following are the most important.

I. METAPHOR.—This is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet or action of another:

*Rei publicae vulnus* (for *damnum*), *the wound of the republic*. Cic. *Naufragium fortunae*, *the wreck of fortune*. Cic. *Silent leges*, *The laws are silent*. Cic.

**II. METONYMY.**—This is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it:

*Aequo Marte* (for *praelio*) *pugnatum est*, *They fought in an equal contest*. Liv. *Furit Vulcanus* (*ignis*), *The fire rages*. Virg.

By this figure the cause is often put for the effect and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, etc.: *Mars* for *bellum*, *Vulcanus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vinum*, *nobilitas* for *nobiles*, *Graecia* for *Graeci*, *laurea* for *victoria*, etc.

**III. SYNECDOCHE.**—This is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

*In vestra tecta* (*vestras domos*) *discēdite*, *Depart to your homes*. Cic. *Statio male fida carinis* (*navibus*), *a station unsafe for ships*. Virg. *Fontem ferebant*, *They were bringing water*. Virg.

**IV. IRONY.**—This is the use of a word for its opposite:

*Legatos bonus* (for *malus*) *impērator vester non admisit*, *Your good commander did not admit the ambassadors*. Liv.

**V. HYPERBOLE.**—This is an exaggeration:

*Ventis et fulminibus celerior alis*, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning*. Virg.

## II. LATIN AUTHORS.

**706.** The history of Roman literature embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B.C. to 550 A.D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods:

**I. The ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD.**—From 250 to 81 B.C. The principal authors of this period are:

Ennius,	Plautus,	Terence,	Lucretius.
---------	----------	----------	------------

**II. The CLASSICAL PERIOD.**—This embraces the Golden and the Silver Age:

**1. The Golden Age.**—From 81 B.C. to 14 A.D. The principal authors are:

Cicero,	Nepos,	Horace,	Tibullus,
Caesar,	Livy,	Ovid,	Propertius.
Sallust,	Virgil,	Catullus,	

**2. The Silver Age.**—From 14 to 180 A.D. The principal authors are:



Phaedrus,	The Plinics,	Quintilian,	Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suctonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial.

III. THE POST-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Brazen and the Iron Age:

1. The *Brazen Age*.—From 180 to 476 A.D. The principal authors are:

Justin,	Eutropius,	Lactantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age*.—From 476 to 550 A.D. The principal authors are:

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priscian.
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------

### III. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

707. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

708. PECULIARITIES.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month;
2. The Nones, the *fifth*,—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October;
3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*,—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Hence after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *pridie Calendas*, *Nonas*, etc.; the second before each by *die tertio* (not *secundo*; third, not second) *ante Calendas*, etc., the third, by *die quarto*, etc., and so on through the month.

1. NUMERALS.—This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *pridie ante Calendas* becomes the second before the Calends, *die tertio ante Calendas*, the third, etc.

2. NAME OF MONTH.—In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Calendas*, *Nonas*, etc., as, *die quarto ante Nonas Januarias*, often shortened to, *quarto ante Nonas Jan.* or *IV. ante Nonas Jan.* or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nonas Jan.*, the second of January.

3. ANTE DIEM.—Instead of *die*—*ante*, *ante diem* is common, as, *ante diem quartum Nonas Jan.* for *die quarto ante Nonas Jan.*

4. AS INDECLINABLE NOUNS.—The expressions *ante diem*—*Cal.*, etc., *pridie Cal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Idus Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Lir. Ad pridie Nonas Maias*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

## 709. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, Oct.	Jan. Aug. December.	April, June, Sept. Nov.	February.
1	CALENDIS. <sup>1</sup>	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.
2	VI. Nonas. <sup>1</sup>	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	III. "	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	NONIS.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III. "	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX. Calend. <sup>2</sup>	XVIII. Calend. <sup>2</sup>	XVI. Calend. <sup>2</sup>
15	IDIBUS.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Calend. <sup>2</sup>	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.) <sup>3</sup> "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prid. Cal. (III. Cal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prid. Cal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Calend.	
31	Pridie Calend.	Pridie Calend.		

710. ENGLISH AND LATIN DATES.—The table (709) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but in translating Latin, it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

<sup>1</sup> To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nonas, Idus, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (709. III. 2).

<sup>2</sup> The Calends of the following month are of course meant, as the 16th of March for instance is, *XVII. Calendas Apriles*.

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed forms apply to *leap-year*.

VIII. ante Idus Jan. =  $13 - (8 - 1) = 13 - 7 = 6$ th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Cal. Feb. =  $31 - (18 - 2) = 31 - 16 = 15$ th of January.

In Leap-year the 24th and 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Cal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered precisely as if the month contained as usual only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V., IV., III. Cal. Mart., and pridie Cal. Mart.*

711. DIVISIONS OF DAY AND NIGHT.—The Roman day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night from sun-set to sun-rise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. NIGHT WATCHES.—The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. LENGTH OF ROMAN HOUR.—The hour, being uniformly  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the day or of the night, of course varied in length, with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

#### IV. ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

712. COINS.—The principal Roman coins were the *as*, of copper, the *sestertius*, *quinarius*, *dēnarius*, of silver, and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period was as follows:

As, . . . . .	1 to 2 cents.
Sestertius, . . . . .	4 "
Quinarius, . . . . .	8 "
Dēnarius, . . . . .	16 "
Aureus = 25 dēnarii, . . . . .	\$4.00.

1. AS—THE UNIT OF MONEY.—The *As* was originally the unit of the Roman currency, and contained a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time in weight and value till at last it contained only  $\frac{1}{24}$  of a pound.

But whatever its weight,  $\frac{1}{12}$  of the *as* is always called an *uncia*,  $\frac{1}{6}$  a *sextans*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  a *quadrans*,  $\frac{1}{3}$  a *triens*,  $\frac{2}{3}$  a *quincunx*,  $\frac{1}{2}$  a *semis*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  a *septunx*,  $\frac{5}{8}$  a *bes*,  $\frac{7}{8}$  a *do-drans*,  $\frac{11}{12}$  a *dextans*,  $\frac{11}{12}$  a *deunx*.

2. SESTERTIUS, QUINARIUS, AND DENARIUS.—The *sestertius* contained originally 2½ asses, the *quinarius* 5, and the *dēnarius* 10; but as the *as* depreciated in value, the number of *asses* in these coins was increased.

3. AS—THE GENERAL UNIT OF COMPUTATION.—The *as* is also used as the unit in other things as well as in money. Thus

1) *In Weight*.—The *as* is then a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) *In Measure*.—The *as* is then a foot or a jugerum (718), and the *uncia* is  $\frac{1}{12}$  of a foot or of a jugerum.

3) *In Interest*.—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent. a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is  $\frac{1}{12}$  per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *semita* is  $\frac{1}{6}$  per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance*.—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia*  $\frac{1}{12}$  of it: *hæres ex uncæ*, heir of the whole estate; *hæres ex dodrante*, heir of  $\frac{3}{4}$ .

**713. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.**—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque sestertii, 5 *sesterces*, viginti sestertii, 20 *sesterces*, dūcenti sestertii, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia*:

Duo millia sestertium, or duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces*; quinque millia sestertium, or quinque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces*.

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *bina sestertia*, for *duo sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, *décies*, *vicies*, etc. Thus

Décies sestertium, 1,000,000 ( $10 \times 100,000$ ) sesterces; Vicies sestertium, 2,000,000 ( $20 \times 100,000$ ) sesterces.

1. **SESTERTIUM.**—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Décies centēna millia sestertium*. *Centēna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension.

2. **SESTERTIUM OMITTED.**—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *décies*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. **SIGN HS.**—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium*:

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = *sestertii*). Dena HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = *sestertia*). Décies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = *sestertium*).

**714. WEIGHT.**—The basis of Roman weights is the *Libra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about  $11\frac{1}{2}$  ounces avoirdupois.

1. **OUNCES.**—The *Libra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. **FRACTIONS OF OUNCES.**—Parts of ounces also have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = *semita*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  = *duella*,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = *stillicus*,  $\frac{1}{16}$  = *sextula*,  $\frac{1}{32}$  = *drachma*,  $\frac{1}{64}$  = *scrupulum*,  $\frac{1}{128}$  = *obolus*.

**715. DRY MEASURE.**—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. **SEXTARIUS.**—This is  $\frac{1}{8}$  of a modius.

2. **PARTS OF THE SEXTARIUS.**—These have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = *hēmina*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  = *ācētābūlum*,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = *cyāthus*.

**716. LIQUID MEASURE.**—The *Amphōra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. **CULEUS.**—Twenty *amphōrae* make one *Culeus*.

2. **PARTS OF AMPHORA.**—These have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = *urna*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  = *congius*,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = *sextārius*,  $\frac{1}{16}$  = *hēmina*,  $\frac{1}{32}$  = *quartārius*,  $\frac{1}{64}$  = *ācētābūlum*,  $\frac{1}{128}$  = *cyāthus*.

**717. LONG MEASURE.**—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. **COMBINATIONS OF FEET.**—*Palmipes* =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Roman feet; *cūbitus* =  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ; *passus* = 5; *stādium* = 625.

2. **PARTS OF FOOT.**—*Palmus* =  $\frac{1}{4}$  foot; *uncia* =  $\frac{1}{16}$ ; *dīgītus* =  $\frac{1}{32}$ .

**718. SQUARE MEASURE.**—The basis of this measure is the *Jūgērūm*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *jūgērūm* have the same name as those of the *As*: *uncia* =  $\frac{1}{16}$ , *sextans* =  $\frac{1}{24}$ , etc. See 712. 1.

## V. ABBREVIATIONS.

### 719. Names.

A. = Aulus.	L. = Lūcius.	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.
Ap. = Appius.	M. = Marcus.	S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
C. (G.) = Caius (Gaius).	M'. = Mānius.	Ser. = Servius.
Cn. (Gn.) = Cnaeus	Mam. = Māmercus.	Sp. Spūrius.
(Gnaeus).	N. = Nūmērius.	T. = Titus.
D. = Dēcimus.	P. = Publius.	Ti. (Tib.) = Tibērius.

### 720. Other Abbreviations.

A. D. = ante diem.	F. C. = faciendum cū-	Proc. = prōconsul.
Acđ. = aedilis.	rāvit.	Q. B. F. F. Q. S. =
A. U. C. = anno urbis	Id. = Idus.	quod bōnum, fēlix,
conditac.	Imp. = impērātor.	faustumque sit.
Cal. (Kal.) = Calēndae.	Leg. = lēgātus.	Quir. = Quīrites.
Cos. = consul.	Non. = Nōnae.	Resp. = res publicā.
Coss. = consūles.	O. M. = optimus max-	S. = sēnātus.
D. = dīvus.	imus.	S. C. = sēnātus con-
D. D. = dōno dēdit.	P. C. = patres conscrip-	sultum.
Des. = designātus.	ti.	S. D. P. = sālūtem di-
D. M. = diis mānibus.	Pont. Max. = pontifex	cit plūrīmam.
D. S. = de suo.	maxīmus.	S. P. Q. R. = sēnātus
D. S. P. P. = de sua	P. R. = pōpūlus Rō-	pōpūlusque Rōmā-
pēcūnia pōsuit.	mānus.	nus.
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rō-	Pr. = praetor.	Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plē-
mānus.	Praef. = praefectus.	bis.
F. = filius.		

3) *In Interest*.—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent. a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is  $\frac{1}{12}$  per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *semiss* is  $\frac{1}{6}$  per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance*.—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia*  $\frac{1}{12}$  of it: *hæres ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hæres ex dodrante*, heir of  $\frac{1}{4}$ .

**713. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.**—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque sestertii, 5 *sesterces*, viginti sestertii, 20 *sesterces*, ducenti sestertii, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sestertiū* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia*:

Duo millia sestertium, or duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces*; quinque millia sestertium, or quinque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces*

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *biua sestertia*, for duo *sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, *decies*, *vicies*, etc. Thus

*Decies sestertium*, 1,000,000 ( $10 \times 100,000$ ) sesterces; *Vicies sestertium*, 2,000,000 ( $20 \times 100,000$ ) sesterces.

1. **SESTERTIUM.**—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Decies centēna millia sestertium*. *Centēna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension

2. **SESTERTIUM OMITTED.**—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *decies*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. **SIGN HS.**—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium*:

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = sestertii). Dena HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertia). Decies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertium).

**714. WEIGHT.**—The basis of Roman weights is the *Libra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about  $11\frac{1}{2}$  ounces avoirdupois.

1. **OUNCES.**—The *Libra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. **FRACTIONS OF OUNCES.**—Parts of ounces also have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = *semiss*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  = *quadrans*,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = *as*,  $\frac{1}{16}$  = *sextulus*,  $\frac{1}{32}$  = *scripulum*,  $\frac{1}{64}$  = *obolus*.

**715. DRY MEASURE.**—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. **SEXTARIUS.**—This is  $\frac{1}{8}$  of a modius.

2. **PARTS OF THE SEXTARIUS.**—These have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = *hēmīna*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  = *ācūtūbūlum*,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = *cyāthus*.

**716. LIQUID MEASURE.**—The *Amphōra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. **CULEUS.**—Twenty *amphōrae* make one *Culeus*.

2. **PARTS OF AMPHORA.**—These have special names:  $\frac{1}{2}$  = *urna*,  $\frac{1}{4}$  = *congius*,  $\frac{1}{8}$  = *sextarius*,  $\frac{1}{16}$  = *hēmīna*,  $\frac{1}{32}$  = *quartarius*,  $\frac{1}{64}$  = *ācūtūbūlum*,  $\frac{1}{128}$  = *cyāthus*.

**717. LONG MEASURE.**—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. **COMBINATIONS OF FEET.**—*Palmipes* =  $1\frac{1}{2}$  Roman feet; *cūbitus* =  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ; *passus* = 5; *stādium* = 625.

2. **PARTS OF FOOT.**—*Palmus* =  $\frac{1}{4}$  foot; *uncia* =  $\frac{1}{16}$ ; *dīgītus* =  $\frac{1}{8}$ .

**718. SQUARE MEASURE.**—The basis of this measure is the *Jūgērūm*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *jūgērūm* have the same name as those of the *As*: *uncia* =  $\frac{1}{16}$ , *sextans* =  $\frac{1}{24}$ , etc. See 712. 1.

## V. ABBREVIATIONS.

### 719. Names.

A. = Aulus.  
Ap. = Appius.  
C. (G.) = Gaius (Gaius).  
Cn. (Gn.) = Cnaeus (Gnaeus).  
D. = Dēcimus.

L. = Lūcius.  
M. = Marcus.  
M'. = Mānius.  
Mam. = Māmercus.  
N. = Nūmērius.  
P. = Publius.

Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.  
S. (Sex.) = Sextus.  
Ser. = Servius.  
Sp. Spūrius.  
T. = Titus.  
Ti. (Tib.) = Tībērius.

### 720. Other Abbreviations.

A. D. = ante diem.  
Aed. = aedilis.  
A. U. C. = anno urbis conditae.  
Cal. (Kal.) = Calēndae.  
Cos. = consul.  
Coss. = consules.  
D. = dīvus.  
D. D. = dōno dedit.  
Des. = dēsīgnātus.  
D. M. = diis mānibus.  
D. S. = de suo.  
D. S. P. P. = de sua pecūnia pōsuit.  
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rōmānus.  
F. = filius.

F. C. = faciendum cū-rāvit.  
Id. = Idus.  
Imp. = impērātor.  
Leg. = lēgātus.  
Non. = Nōnae.  
O. M. = optimus maximus.  
P. C. = patres conscripti.  
Pont. Max. = pontifex maximus.  
P. R. = pōpulus Rōmānus.  
Pr. = praetor.  
Praef. = praefectus.

Proc. = prōconsul.  
Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bōnum, felix, faustumque sit.  
Quir. = Quirites.  
Resp. = res publica.  
S. = sēnātus.  
S. C. = sēnātus consultum.  
S. D. P. = sālūtem dicit plūrīmam.  
S. P. Q. R. = sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus.  
Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plēbis.

## INDEX OF VERBS.

**721.** This Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention.

But in regard to compounds of prepositions, two important facts must be borne in mind :

1. That the elements,—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form. See 338. 1 and 341. 3.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine. See 260.

### A.

Abdo, ēre, dīdi, dītum, 280.  
 Ab-īgo. See *āgo*, 279.  
 Ab-jīcio. See *jūcio*, 279.  
 Ab-luo. See *luo*, 274.  
 Ab-nuo. See *annuo*, 274.  
 Abōleo, ēre, ēvi, ītum, 266. 1.  
 Abōlesco, ēre, ōlēvi, ōlītum, 276. II.  
 Ab-rīpio. See *rāpio*, 276.  
 Abs-con-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
 Ac-cendo, ēre, i, censum, 273. III.  
 Ac-cido. See *cādo*, 280.  
 Ac-cīno. See *cāno*, 280.  
 Ac-cīpio. See *cāpio*, 279.  
 Ac-cōlo. See *cōlo*, 276.  
 Ac-cumbo, ēre, cūbui, cūbītum, 276.

### II.

Acco, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Accesco, ēre, acui, —, 281.  
 Ac-qui-ro. See *quaero*, 276. III.  
 Acuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.  
 Ad-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
 Ad-īmo. See *ēmo*, 279.  
 Adīpiscor, i, adeptus sum, 282.  
 Ad-ōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 276. II.  
 Ad-ōrior. See *ōrior*, 286.  
 Ad-spīcio. See *aspīcio*, 273. I. 2.  
 Ad-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Aegresco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Af-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.  
 Age, *def.*, 297.  
 Ag-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.  
 Ag-grēdior. See *grādior*, 282.  
 Ago, ēre, ēgi, actum, 279.  
 Aio, *def.*, 297.  
 Albeo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Algeo, ēre, alsi, —, 269.

Al-līcio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.

### II. 1.

Al-luo. See *luo*, 274.  
 Alo, ēre, ālui, ālītum, altum, 276. II.  
 Amb-īgo. See *āgo*, 279.  
 Ambio, 295. 3.  
 Amīcio, ire (ui), tum, 284.  
 Amo, *parad.*, 205.  
 Amplector, i, amplexus sum, 282.  
 An-go, ēre, anxi, —, 274.  
 Annuo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
 Apāge, *def.*, 297.  
 Apērio, ire, ui, tum, 284.  
 Apiscor, i, aptus sum, 282.  
 Ap-pāreo. See *pāreo*, 266.  
 Ap-pēto. See *pēto*, 276. III.  
 Applīco. See *pīco*, 262.  
 Ap-pōno. See *pōno*, 276.  
 Arcesso, ēre, īvi, ītum, 276. III.  
 Ardeo, ēre, arsi, arsum, 269.  
 Aresco, ēre, ārui, —, 281.  
 Arguo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.  
 Ar-rīpio. See *rāpio*, 276.  
 A-scendo. See *scando*, 273. III.  
 A-spergo. See *spargo*, 273.  
 A-spīcio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, 273.  
 As-sentior, īri, sensus sum, 286.  
 As-sīdeo. See *sēdeo*, 270.  
 At-texo. See *texo*, 276.  
 At-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 266.  
 At-tingo. See *tango*, 280.  
 At-tollo. See *tollo*, 280.  
 Audeo, ēre, ausus sum, 272.  
 Audio, *parad.*, 211.  
 Au-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.  
 Augeo, ēre, auxi, auctum, 269.  
 Ave, *def.*, 297.  
 Aveo, ēre, —, 268.



B.

Balbütio, ire, —, 283.  
Bätuo, ère, i, —, 274.  
Bíbo, ère, i, —, 274.  
Blandior, iri, itus sum, 226.

C.

Cădo, ère, cēcīdi, cāsum, 280.  
Caecütio, ire, —, 283.  
Caedo, ère, cēcīdi, caesum, 280.  
Călesco, ère, cālui, —, 281.  
Calleo, ère, ui, —, 267.  
Calveo, ère, —, 268.  
Candeo, ère, ui, —, 267.  
Căneo, ère, —, 268.  
Căno, ère, cēcīni, cantum, 280.  
Căpeaso, ère, ivi, itum, 276. III.  
Căpio, ère, cēpi, captum, 214, 279.  
Carpo, ère, si, tum, 273.  
Căveo, ère, cāvi, cautum, 270.  
Cădo, ère, cessi, cessum, 273. III.  
Cădo, def., 297.  
Cello, obs. See *excello*, 276. II.  
Censeo, ère, ui, censum, 266. III.  
Cerno, ère, crēvi, crētum, 276. II.  
Cieo, ère, civi, citum, 269. I.  
Cingo, ère, cinxi, cinctum, 273.  
Circum-sisto. See *sisto*, 280.  
Clango, ère, —, 275.  
Claudo, ère, clausi, clausum, 273. III.  
Claudo, ère (*to be lame*), —, 275.  
Co-ălesco, ère, ālui, ālitum, 281.  
Co-arguo. See *arguo*, 273.  
Coeno, 262. 2.  
Coepi, def., 297.  
Cognosco. See *nosco*, 277.  
Cōgo, ère, coēgi, coactum. See *āgo*, 279.  
Col-lido. See *laedo*, 273. III.  
Col-ligo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
Col-lūceo. See *lūceo*, 269.  
Cōlo, ère, ui, cultum, 276. II.  
Com-ădo. See *ădo*, 291.  
Commīniscor, i, commentus sum, 282.  
Com-mōveo. See *mōveo*, 270.  
Cōmo, ère, compsi, comptum, 273.  
Com-parco (perco). See *parco*, 280.  
Compērio, ire, pēri, pertum, 284.  
Compesco, ère, pescui, —, 276. II.  
Com-pingo. See *pango*, 280.

Com-plector, i, plexus sum, 282.  
Com-pleo, ère, ēvi, ētum, 266.  
Com-primo. See *primo*, 273. III.  
Com-pungo, ère, punxi, punctum.  
See *pungo*, 280.  
Con-cīdo. See *cădo*, 280.  
Con-cido. See *caedo*, 280.  
Con-cīno. See *căno*, 280.  
Con-clădo. See *clădo*, 273. III.  
Con-cūpisco, ère, cūpīvi, cūpitum, 281.  
Con-cütio. See *quătio*, 273. III.  
Con-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
Con-fercio. See *farcio*, 284.  
Con-ficio. See *făcio*, 279.  
Confit, def., 297.  
Con-fiteor. See *fūteor*, 272.  
Con-fringo. See *frango*, 279.  
Congruo, ère, i, —, 274.  
Conniveo, ère, nīvi, nixi, —, 269.  
Con-sēro. See *sēro*, 276. II.  
Con-sisto. See *sisto*, 280.  
Con-spicio, ère, spexi, spectrum, 249.  
Con-stītuo. See *stătuo*, 273. II.  
Con-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
Consūlo, ère, ui, tum, 276. II.  
Con-temno. See *temno*, 275.  
Con-texo. See *texo*, 276.  
Con-tingo. See *tango*, 280.  
Con-vălesco, ère, vālui, vālitum, 281.  
Cōquo, ère, coxi, coctum, 273. II.  
Cor-rīpio. See *răpio*, 276.  
Cor-ruo. See *ruo*, 273.  
Crăbresco, ère, crăbrui, —, 281.  
Crădo, ère, credidi, creditum, 280.  
Crăpo, ère, ui, itum, 262.  
Cresco, ère, crēvi, crētum, 276. II.  
Cūbo, ère, ui, itum, 262.  
Cădo, ère, cădi, cūsum, 273. III.  
Cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.  
Cūpio, ère, ivi, itum, 249, 276.  
Curro, ère, cūcurri, cursum, 280.

D.

Dă-cerpo, ère, si, tum, 273. I. 1.  
Dăcet, *impers.*, 299.  
Dă-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
Dă-fendo, ère, i, fensum, 273. III.  
Dă-fētiscor. See *fătiscor*, 282.  
Dăfit, def., 297.  
Dăgo, ère, dăgi. See *āgo*, 279.  
Dăleo, ère, ēvi, ētum, 266.

Dē-līgo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Dē-mīco. See *mīco*, 262.  
 Dēmo, ēre, dempsi, demptum, 273.  
 Dē-pango. See *pango*, 280.  
 Dē-prīmo. See *prīmo*, 273. III.  
 Depso, ēre, ui, itum, tum, 276. II.  
 De-scendo. See *scando*, 273. III.  
 Dē-sīlio. See *sīlio*, 284.  
 Dē-sīpio. See *sīpio*, 276. III.  
 Dē-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.  
 Dē-tīneo. See *tīneo*, 266.  
 Dē-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.  
 Dico, ēre, dixi, dictum, 273, 237.  
 Dif-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.  
 Dig-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.  
 Di-līgo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Dimīco. See *mīco*, 262.  
 Dī-rīgo, ēre, rexi, rectum, 273. I. 1.  
 Disco, ēre, didīci, —, 280.  
 Dis-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 262.  
 Dis-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.  
 Dis-pertior. See *partior*, 286.  
 Dis-plīceo. See *plīceo*, 266.  
 Dis-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270.  
 Di-stīnguo. See *stīnguo*, 275.  
 Dī-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Dītesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Divīdo, ēre, visi, visum, 273. III.  
 Do, dāre, dēdi, dātum, 264.  
 Dōceo, ēre, ui, tum, 266. III.  
 Dōmo, āre, ui, itum, 262.  
 Dūco, ēre, duxi, ctum, 273, 237.  
 Dulcesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Dūresco, ēre, dūrui, —, 281.

## E.

Edo, ēre, ēdi, esum, 279, 291.  
 E-do, ēre, ēdīdi, editum, 280.  
 Egeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Elicio, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.  
 E-līgo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Emīco. See *mīco*, 262.  
 Emīneo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Emo, ēre, ēmi, emptum, 279.  
 Enēco, āre, ui, tum, 262.  
 Eo, ire, ivi, itum, 295.  
 Esūrio, ire, —, itum, 283.  
 E-vādo, ēre, vāsī, vāsum, 273. III.  
 Evānesco, ēre, evānui, —, 281.  
 Ex-ardesco, ēre, arsi, arsum, 281.  
 Excello, ēre, ui (rare), —, 276. II.  
 Ex-clūdo. See *clūdo*, 273. III.

Ex-curro. See *curro*, 280.  
 Ex-ōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 273. II.  
 Expēdit, *impers.*, 301.  
 Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, 282.  
 Ex-pērior, iri, pertus sum, 286.  
 Ex-plēo. See *compleo*, 266.  
 Ex-plīco. See *plīco*, 262.  
 Ex-plōdo. See *plādo*, 273. III.  
 Ex-stīnguo, ēre, stīnxi, stīnctum, 276.  
 Ex-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Ex-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.  
 Ex-tollo. See *tollo*, 280.

## F.

Fācesso, ēre, ivi, i, itum, 276. III.  
 Fācio, ēre, fēcī, factum, 249, 279, 237.  
 Fallo, ēre, fēfelli, falsum, 280.  
 Farcio, ire, farsī, fartum, farctum, 284. II.  
 Fārī, *def.*, 297.  
 Fāteor, ēri, fassus sum, 272.  
 Fātisco, ēre, —, 281. 3.  
 Fātiscor, i, —, 282.  
 Fāvco, ēre, fāvī, fautum, 270.  
 Fendo, *obs.* See *dēfendo*, 273.  
 Fērio, ire, —, 283.  
 Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, 292.  
 Fērōcio, ire, —, 283.  
 Ferveo, ēre, fervī, ferbui, —, 269.  
 Fīdo, ēre, fīsus sum, 282.  
 Fīgo, ēre, fīxi, fixum, 273. III.  
 Fīndo, ēre, fīdī, fīssum, 273. III.  
 Fīngo, ēre, fīnxi, fictum, 273.  
 Fīo, fīeri, factus sum, 294.  
 Flāveo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Flecto, ēre, xi, xum, 273. III.  
 Fleo, ēre, ēvi, etum, 266.  
 Flōreo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Flōresco, ēre, flōrui, —, 281.  
 Fluo, ēre, fluxī, fluxum, 273. III.  
 Fōdio, ēre, fōdī, fossum, 249, 279.  
 Foetēo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Fōrem, *def.*, 297. III. 2.  
 Fōveo, ēre, fōvī, fōtum, 270.  
 Frango, ēre, frēgi, fractum, 279.  
 Frēmo, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.  
 Frendo, ēre, —, fressum, frēsum, 273. III.  
 Frīco, āre, ui, ātum, tum, 262.  
 Frīgēo, ēre, frīxi (rare), —, 269.  
 Frondeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.

Fruor, i, fructus, frūtus sum, 282.  
Fūgio, ēre, fūgi, fugitum, 249, 279.  
Fulcio, ire, fulsi, fultum, 284.  
Fulgeo, ēre, fulsi, —, 269.  
Fulminat, *impers.*, 300.  
Fundo, ēre, fūdi, fūsum, 279.  
Fungor, i, functus sum, 282.  
Fūro, ēre, ui, —, 276. II.

G.

Gannio, ire, —, 283.  
Gaudeo, ēre, gāvīsus sum, 272.  
Gēmo, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.  
Gēro, ēre, gessi, gestum, 273.  
Gigno, ēre, gēnui, gēnitum, 276. II.  
Glisco, ēre, —, 275.  
Grādiōr, i, gressus sum, 249, 282.  
Grandesco, ēre, —, 281.  
Grandinat, *impers.*, 300.  
Grāvesco, ēre, —, 281.

H.

Haereo, ēre, haesi, haesum, 269.  
Haurio, ire, hausi, haustum, haustū-  
rus, hausūrus, 284.  
Hēbco, ēre, —, 268.  
Hisco, ēre, —, 275.  
Horreo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
Hortor, 222.  
Hūmeo, ēre, —, 268.

I.

Ico, ēre, ici, ictum, 273. II.  
Illicio, ēre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.  
I. 1.  
Il-lido. See *laedo*, 273. III.  
Imbuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.  
Immīneo, ēre, —, 268.  
Im-parco. See *parco*, 280.  
Im-pertior. See *partior*, 286.  
Im-pingo. See *pango*, 280.  
In-cendo. See *accendo*, 273.  
Incesso, ēre, ivi, i, —, 276. III.  
In-cīdo. See *cīdo*, 280.  
In-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.  
In-crēpo. See *crēpo*, 262.  
In-cresco. See *cresco*, 276. II.  
In-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 276.

In-cūtio. See *quātio*, 273. III.  
Ind-īgeo, ēre, ui, —. See *īgeo*, 267.  
Ind-īpiscor. See *āpiscor*, 282.  
In-do. See *abdo*, 280.  
Indulgeo, ēre, dulsi, dultum, 269.  
Ineptio, ire, —, 283.  
Infat, *def.*, 297.  
Ingruo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
In-nōtesco, ēre, nōtui, 281.  
In-ōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 276.  
Inquam, *def.*, 297.  
In-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270.  
In-spīcio, ēre, spexi, spectrum, 249.  
In-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
Intel-īgo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
Intērest, *impers.*, 301.  
Inter-nosco. See *nosco*, 277.  
Invētārasco, ēre, rāvi, rātum, 276.  
Irascor, i, —, 282.  
Ir-ruo. See *ruo*, 273.

J.

Jācio, ēre, jāci, jactum, 249, 279.  
Jūbeo, ēre, jussi, jussum, 269.  
Jūro, 262. 2.  
Jūvēnsco, ēre, —, 281.  
Jūvo, āre, jāvi, jātum, 263.

L.

Lābor, i, lapsus sum, 282.  
Lācesso, ēre, ivi, itum, 276. III.  
Lācio, *obs.* See *allicio*, 273. I. 2.  
Lacteo, ēre, —, 268.  
Laedo, ēre, laesi, laesum, 273. III.  
Lambo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
Langueo, ēre, i, —, 269.  
Lāpidat, *impers.*, 300.  
Largior, īri, itus sum, 286.  
Lāteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
Lāvo, ēre, lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavā-  
tum, 263.  
Lēgo, ēre, lēgi, lectum, 279.  
Libet, *impers.*, 299.  
Liceor, āri, itus sum, 272.  
Licet, *impers.*, 299.  
Lino, ēre, livi, lavi, litum, 276. II.  
Linquo, ēre, liqui, —, 279.  
Liqueo, ēre, liqui (licui), 269.  
Līquet, *impers.*, 299.  
Līquor, i, —, 282.

Līveo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Lōquor, i, lōcūtus sum, 282.  
 Lūceo, ēre, luxi, —, 269.  
 Lūcescit, *impers.*, 300.  
 Lūdo, ēre, lūsi, lūsum, 273. III.  
 Lūgeo, ēre, luxi, —, 269.  
 Luo, ēre, lui, —, 274.

## M.

Macresco, ēre, macrui, —, 281.  
 Mādeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Mādesco, ēre, mādui, —, 281.  
 Maerco, ēre, —, 268.  
 Mālo, malle, mālui, —, 293.  
 Mando, ēre, i, mansum, 273. III.  
 Māneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 269.  
 Mātūresco, ēre, mātūrui, —, 281.  
 Mēdeor, ēri, —, 272.  
 Mēmīni, *def.*, 297.  
 Mentior, iri, itus sum, 286.  
 Mēreor, ēri, itus sum, 272.  
 Mergo, ēre, mersi, mersum, 273. III.  
 Mētor, iri, mensus sum, 286.  
 Mēto, ēre, messui, messum, 276. II.  
 Mētuo, ēre, ui, —, 274.  
 Mico, ēre, ui, —, 262.  
 Miniscor, *obs.* See *commīniscor*, 282.  
 Minuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.  
 Misceo, ēre, miscui, mistum, mixtum, 266. III.  
 Misēreor, ēri, itus or tus sum, 272.  
 Misēret, *impers.*, 299.  
 Mitesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Mitto, ēre, misi, missum, 273. III.  
 Mōlior, iri, itus sum, 286.  
 Mollesco, ēre, —, 281.  
 Mōlo, ēre, ui, itum, 276. II.  
 Mōneo, ēre, ui, itum, *parad.*, 207.  
 Mordeo, ēre, mōmordi, morsum, 271.  
 Mōrior, i (iri), mortuus sum, 249, 282.  
 Mōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 270.  
 Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269.  
 Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269.

## N.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum, 282.  
 Nascor, i, nātus sum, 282.  
 Necto, ēre, nexi, nexui, nexum, 273.  
 III.

Neg-ligo, ēre, lexi, lectum. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Neo, ēre, nēvi, nētum, 266.  
 Nēqueo, ire, ivi, itum, 296.  
 Nigresco, ēre, nigrui, —, 281.  
 Ningō, ēre, ninxi, —, 274.  
 Niteo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Nitor, i, nīsus, nīxus sum, 282.  
 Nōlo, nolle, nōlui, —, 293.  
 Nosco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, 277.  
 Nūbo, ēre, nupsi, nuptum, 273.  
 Nuo, *obs.* See *annuo*, 274.  
 Nuptūrio, ire, ivi, —, 283. 2.

## O.

Ob-do. See *abdo* 280.  
 Ob-dormisco, ēre, dormīvi, dormītum, 281.  
 Obliviscor, i, oblitus sum, 282.  
 Ob-mūtesco, ēre, mūtui, —, 281.  
 Ob-sīdeo. See *sīdeo*, 270.  
 Ob-sōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 276.  
 Ob-sto. See *sto*, 264.  
 Ob-surdesco, ēre, surdui, —, 281.  
 Ob-tīneo. See *tīneo*, 266.  
 Oc-cīdo. See *cādo*, 280.  
 Oc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.  
 Oc-cīno. See *cāno*, 280.  
 Oc-cīpio. See *cāpio*, 279.  
 Occūlo, ēre, ui, tum, 276. II.  
 Odi, *def.*, 297.  
 Of-fendo. See *dēfendo*, 273. III.  
 Oleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Olesco, *obsolete*. See *abōlesco*, 276.  
 II.  
 Op-erio, ire, ui, tum, 284.  
 Op-ortet, *impers.*, 299.  
 Op-p-erior, iri, pertus, perītus sum, 286.  
 Ordior, iri, orsus sum, 286.  
 Orior, iri, ortus sum, 286.  
 Os-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.  
 Ovat, *def.*, 297.

## P.

Pāciscor, i, pactus sum, 282.  
 Palleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Pando, ēre, i, pansum, passum, 273.  
 III.  
 Pango, ēre, pēpigi, pactum, 280.  
 Pango, ēre, panxi, pēgi, panctum, pactum, 280.

Parco, ěre, pĕperci (parsi), parsum, 280.

Pārio, ěre, pĕpĕri, partum, 249, 280.

Partior, iri, itus sum, 286.

Partūrio, ire, Ivi, —, 283. 2.

Pasco, ěre, pāvi, pastum, 276.

Pāteo, ěre, ui, —, 267.

Pātor, i, passus sum, 225, 249, 282.

Pāveo, ěre, pāvi, —, 270.

Pecto, ěre, xi, xum, 273. III.

Pel-licio, ěre, lexi, lectum, 249, 273.

I. 2.

Pello, ěre, pĕpŭli, pulsum, 280.

Pendeo, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, 271.

Pendo, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, 280.

Per-cello. See *excello*, 276. II.

Per-censéo. See *censeo*, 266.

Per-do, ěre, didi, ditum. See *abdo*, 280.

Pergo (*for per-rĭgo*), ěre, per-rexi, per-rectum. See *rĕgo*, 273.

Per-pĕtior. See *pātor*, 282.

Per-sto. See *sto*, 264.

Per-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 266.

Pessum-do. See *do*, 264.

Pĕto, ěre, Ivi, itum, 276. III.

Pĭget, *impers.*, 299.

Pingo, ěre, pinxi, pictum, 273.

Pinguesco, ěre, —, 281.

Pinso (piso), ěre, i, ui, pinsĭtum, pis-tum, pinsum, 273. III.

Plaudo, ěre, si, sum, 273. III.

Plecto, ěre, xi, xum, 273. III.

Plector, *not used as Dep.* See *am-plector*, 282.

Pleo, *obsolete*. See *compleo*, 266.

Plico, ěre, āvi, ui, ātum, itum, 262.

Pluo, ěre, i *or* vi, —, 274.

Poenĭtet, *impers.*, 299.

Polleo, ěre, —, 268.

Polliceor, ěri, itus sum, 272.

Pōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsitum, 276. II.

Posco, ěre, pōposci, —, 280.

Pos-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.

Possum, posse, pōtui, —, 289.

Pōtior, iri, itus sum, 286.

Pōto, ěre, āvi, ātum, um, 262. 1, 2.

Prae-cĭno. See *cĭno*, 280.

Prae-curro. See *curro*, 280.

Prae-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.

Prae-sto. See *sto*, 264.

Prae-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.

Prandeo, ěre, i, pransum, 269.

Prehendo, ěre, i, hensum, 273. III.

Prĕmo, ěre, pressi, pressum, 273. III.

Prōd-igo. See *āgo*, 279.

Prō-do. See *abdo*, 280.

Prōfĭciscor, i, prōfectus sum, 282.

Prō-fiteor. See *fūteor*, 272.

Prōmo, ěre, prompsi, promptum, 273.

Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, —, 290.

Prō-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.

Psallo, ěre, i, —, 274.

Pūdet, *impers.*, 299.

Puĕrasco, ěre, —, 281.

Pungo, ěre, pūpūgi, punctum, 280.

## Q.

Quaero, ěre, quaesĭvi, quaesĭtum, 276. III.

Quaesō, *def.*, 297.

Quātio, ěre, quassi, quassum, 249, 273. III.

Queo, ire, Ivi, itum, 296.

Quĕror, i, questus sum, 282.

Quiesco, ěre, quĭĕvi, quĭĕtum, 276. II.

## R.

Rādo, ěre, rāsi, rāsum, 273. III.

Rāpio, ěre, rāpui, raptum, 249, 276.

Raucio, ire, rausi, rausum, 284.

Rĕ-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.

Re-crūdesco, ěre, crūdui, 281.

Rĕd-arguo. See *arguo*, 273.

Red do. See *abdo*, 280.

Rĕ-fello. See *fallo*, 280.

Rĕfĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.

Rĕfert, *impers.*, 301.

Rĕgo, ěre, rexi, rectum, *parad.*, 209, 273.

Rĕ-linguo. See *linguo*, 279.

Rĕmĭniscor, i, —, 282.

Rĕnĭdeo, ěre, —, 268.

Reor, rĕri, rĕtus sum, 272.

Rĕ-pango. See *pango*, 280.

Rĕ-parco. See *parco*, 280.

Rĕ-pĕrio, ire, pĕri, pertum, 284.

Rĕ-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270.

Rĕ-sĭpio. See *sĕpio*, 276. III.

Rĕ-sōno. See *sōno*, 262.

Re-spergo. See *spargo*, 273. III.

Rĕ-tendo. See *tendo*, 280.

Rē-tīneo. See *tīneo*, 266.  
 Rē-vertor. See *verto*, 273. III.  
 Rē-vīvisco, ēre, vixi, victum, 281.  
 Rīdeo, ēre, risi, risum, 269.  
 Rīgeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Ringor, i, —, 282.  
 Rōdo, ēre, rōsi, rōsum, 273. III.  
 Rōrat, *impers.*, 300.  
 Rūbeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Rūdo, ēre, īvi, ītum, 276. III.  
 Rumpo, ēre, rūpi, ruptum, 279.  
 Ruo, ēre, rui, rūtum, rūtūrus, 273.

## II.

## S.

Sāgio, Ire, —, 283.  
 Sālio, Ire, ui (ii), tum, 284.  
 Salve, *def.*, 297.  
 Sancio, Ire, sanxi, sancitum, sanc-  
 tum, 284.  
 Sāpio, ēre, īvi, ui, —, 249, 276.  
 Sarcio, Ire, sarsi, sartum, 284.  
 Sāt-āgo. See *āgo*, 279.  
 Scābo, ēre, scābi, —, 279.  
 Scalpo, ēre, psi, ptum, 273.  
 Scando, ēre, di, sum, 273. III.  
 Scāteo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Scindo, ēre, scidi, scissum, 273. III.  
 Scisco, ēre, scīvi, scitum, 281.  
 Sēco, āre, ui, tum, 262.  
 Sēdeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, 270.  
 Sē-ligo. See *lēgo*, 279.  
 Sentio, Ire, sensi, sensum, 284.  
 Sēpēlio, Ire, īvi, sepultum, 283.  
 Sēpio, Ire, psi, ptum, 284.  
 Sēquor, i, sēcūtus sum, 224.  
 Sēro, ēre, sēvi, sātum, 276. II.  
 Sēro, ēre, serui, sertum, 276. II.  
 Sido, ēre, i, —, 274.  
 Sīleo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Singultio, Ire, —, 283.  
 Sīno, ēre, sīvi, sītum, 276. III.  
 Sisto, ēre, stīti, stītum, 280.  
 Sītio, Ire, īvi, —, 283.  
 Sōleo, ēre, solītus sum, 272.  
 Solvo, ēre, solvi, solūtum, 273. II.  
 Sōno, āre, ui, ītum, 262.  
 Sorbeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Sordeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Sortior, īri, ītus sum, 286.  
 Spargo, ēre, sparsi, sparsum, 273.

## III.

Spēcio, *obs.* See *aspicio*.  
 Sperno, ēre, sprēvi, sprētum, 276.

## II.

Splendo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Spondeo, ēre, spōpondi, sponsum, 271.  
 Squāleo, ēre, —, 268.  
 Stātuo, ēre, ui, tītum, 273. II.  
 Sterno, ēre, strāvi, strātum, 276.  
 Sternuo, ēre, i, —, 274.  
 Sterto, ēre, ui, —, 276. II.  
 Stinguo, ēre, —, 275.  
 Sto, āre, stēti, stātum, 264.  
 Strēpo, ēre, ui, ītum, 276. II.  
 Strideo, ēre, stridi, —, 269.  
 Strido, ēre, i, —, 274.  
 Struo, ēre, struxi, structum, 273. II.  
 Stūdeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Stūpeo, ēre, ui, —, 267.  
 Suādeo, ēre, si, sum, 269.  
 Sub-do, ēre, dīdi, dītum, 280.  
 Sūb-īgo. See *āgo*, 279.  
 Sub-silio. See *sālio*, 284.  
 Sūc-cēdo. See *cēdo*, 273.  
 Sūc-cendo. See *accendo*, 273.  
 Sūc-censeo. See *censeo*, 266.  
 Sūc-cido. See *cādo*, 280.  
 Sūc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 280.  
 Sūc-cresco. See *creasco*, 276. II.  
 Suesco, ēre, suēvi, suētum, 276. II.  
 Suf-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.  
 Suf-fīcio. See *fūcio*, 279.  
 Suf-fōdio. See *fōdio*, 279.  
 Sug-gēro. See *gēro*, 273.  
 Sum, esse, fui, —, 204.  
 Sūmo, ēre, psi, ptum, 273.  
 Sūperbio, Ire, —, 283.  
 Sup-pōno. See *pōno*, 276.  
 Surgo (*for* sur-rīgo), ēre, sur-rexi,  
 sur-rectum. See *rēgo*, 273.

## T.

Taedet, *impers.*, 299.  
 Tango, ēre, tēgi, tactum, 280.  
 Temno, ēre, —, 275.  
 Tendo, ēre, tētendi, tentum, tensum, 280.  
 Tēneo, ēre, ui, tum, 266. III.  
 Tēpeasco, ēre, tēpui, —, 281.  
 Tergeo, ēre, tersi, tersum, 269.  
 Tergo, ēre, tersi, tersum, 273. III.  
 Tēro, ēre, trīvi, trītum, 276. III.

Texo, ěre, ui, tum, 276. II.  
 Timeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Tollo, ěre, sustūli, sublātum, 280.  
 Tondeo, ěre, tōtondi, tonsum, 271.  
 Tōno, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 262.  
 Torpeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Torqueo, ěre, torsi, tortum, 269.  
 Torreo, ěre, torrui, tostum, 266. III.  
 Trādo. See *abdo*, 280.  
 Traho, ěre, traxi, tractum, 273.  
 Trēmo, ěre, ui, —, 276. II.  
 Tribuo, ěre, ui, ūtum, 273. II.  
 Trūdo, ěre, trūsi, trūsum, 273. III.  
 Tueor, ěri, tuitus sum, 272.  
 Túmeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Tundo, ěre, tūtūdi, tunsum, tūsum, 280.  
 Tuor, for *tueor*, 272.  
 Turgeo, ěre, tursi (*rare*), —, 269.  
 Tussio, ěre, —, 283.

## U.

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, 282.  
 Urgeo, ěre, ursi, —, 269.  
 Uro, ěre, ussi, ustum, 273.  
 Utor, i, ūsus sum, 282.

## V.

Vado, ěre, —, 275.  
 Vāgio, ěre, ivi, —, 282.

Vāgeo, ěre, —, 268.  
 Veho, ěre, vexi, vectum, 273.  
 Vello, ěre, velli (*vulsi*), vulsum, 273. III.  
 Vendo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, 280.  
 Vēn-eo. See *eo*, 295.  
 Vēnio, ěre, vēni, ventum, 285.  
 Vēnum-do. See *do*, 264.  
 Vēreor, ěri, veritus sum, 223, 272.  
 Vergo, ěre, —, 275.  
 Verro, ěre, verri, versum, 273. III.  
 Verto, ěre, ti, sum, 273. III.  
 Vertor. See *dēvertor*, 273. III.  
 Vescor, i, —, 282.  
 Vespērascit, *impers.*, 300.  
 Vētērasco, ěre, rāvi, —, 276.  
 Vēto, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 262.  
 Video, ěre, vīdi, vīsum, 270.  
 Vieo, ěre, —, ētum, 266. I. 2.  
 Vīgeo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Vīlesco, ěre, vīlui, —, 281.  
 Vincio, ěre, vīxi, vīctum, 284.  
 Vinco, ěre, vīci, vīctum, 279.  
 Vīreo, ěre, ui, —, 267.  
 Vīresco, ěre, vīrui, —, 281.  
 Vīso, ěre, i, um, 273. III.  
 Vīvo, ěre, vīxi, vīctum, 273.  
 Vōlo, velle, vōlui, —, 293.  
 Volvo, ěre, volvi, vōlūtum, 273. II.  
 Vōmo, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 276. II.  
 Vōveo, ěre, vōvi, vōtum, 270.

# INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to *pages*. *Constr.* = construction, *w.* = with, *f.* = and the following, *compds.* = compounds, *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive, *gend.* = gender, *acc.* or *accusa.* = accusative, *acca.* = accusatives, *adjs.* = adjectives, *preps.* = prepositions, etc.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this index, with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly the numerous exceptions in Dec. III. in the formation of the genitive and in gender, are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 55-115.

- A, SOUND** of, 6 ff., 14. Nouns in *A*, *a*,—of 1st dec., 42; of 8d dec., 48; genitive of, 58; gender, 111; derivatives in *a*, 320, 6. *A*, in nom., accus., voc. plur., 88; in acc. sing., 93; changed in compds., 341, 3. *A*, quantity of,—final, 615; in increments of dec., 633; of conj., 640.
- A, ab, abs*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds., w. dat., 386, 2. *A, ab, abs*, w. abl., 434, of agent, 388, 1, in personification, 414, 6.
- Abbreviations, 719.
- Abhinc*, 427.
- Ablative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 8d dec., 87, 90, 97; in 4th dec., 116, 4; in adjs., 156.
- Ablative, syntax of, 412-437. Of cause, manner, means, 414; agent, accompaniment, 414, 5 and 7. Of price, 416. W. comparatives, 417. Of difference, 418. In special constructions, 419. Of place, 420 ff. Of source and separation, 425. Of time, 426. Of characteristic, 428. Of specification, 429. Abl. absolute, 431. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds and gerundives, 566. Of supine, 570.
- Absolute, ablative, 430 ff.; infinitive or clause, 431, 4.
- Absque*, w. abl., 434.
- Abstineo*, w. acc. and abl., 425, 2; w. gen., 409, 4.
- Abstract nouns, 31; from adjs., 319; from verbs, 321, 2.
- Abunde*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- abus*, for *is*, in 1st dec., 42, 3.
- Ac*, for *quam*, 417, 4. *Ac si*, w. subj., 503, 506.
- Acatalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
- Accedit*, constr., 556, II. 1.
- Accentuation, 25 ff.
- Accedit*, constr., 556, II.
- Accingo*, constr., 374, 7.
- Accompaniment, abl. of, 414, 7.
- Accomplishing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
- Accusative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; 46, 3; in 3d dec., 85, 88, 98; in adjectives, 157.
- Accusative, syntax of, 370-381.—Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate, 371, 1, 3; w. other cases, 371, 2; w. compds., 371, 4; w. verbal adjs. and nouns, 371, 7. Two accs., 373 ff.; other constrs. for, 374, 3; infin. or clause, 374, 4; poetic acc., 374, 7. Subj. of infin., 375. Agreement, 376. Adverbial acc., 377 ff. Acc. of time and space, 378. Of limit, 379,



- poetic dat. for, 379, 5. Of specification, 380. In exclam., 381. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds and gerundives, 565. Of supine, 569.
- Accusing and acquitting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Acephalous verse, 663, III.
- acens*, adjs. in, 324.
- Active voice, 195. Act. and pass. constr., 465.
- Ad*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386.
- Ad*, w. acc., 433.
- ades*, in patronymics, 316; quantity, 646, 1.
- Adhuc locorum*, 396, 2, 4) (4).
- Adipiscor*, w. gen., 409, 3.
- Adjective,—Decl. of, 147 ff. Formation of cases, 154 ff., irreg., 159. Comparison, 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Derivation, 322 ff. Comp., 340. W. dat., 391. W. gen. 396, III. 2; 399. W. abl., 414, 419. Agreement, 438 ff. W. the force of nouns, clauses, adverbs, 441 ff. Use of comparison, 444.
- Admisceo*, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Admoneo*, constr., 410, 3.
- Admonishing, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Adolescens*, compared, 168, 3.
- Adonic verse, 677, III.
- Adulor*, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
- Advantage, dat. of, 385.
- Adverbial acc., 377.
- Adverbs,—Numeral, 181. Classes of, 304. Compar., 305. Derivation, 333 ff. Composition, 342. For adjs., 352, 4. W. dat., 392. W. gen., 396, III. 4). As preps., 437. Use, 582; w. nouns, 583. Negatives, *non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584, two negatives, 585.
- Adversative conjcs., 310; 587, III.
- Adversative sentence, 360.
- Adversus*, w. accus., 433.
- Advising, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
- Æ*, sound of, 9, 15; changed to *z*, 341, 3.
- Aedes*, sing. and plur., 132.
- Aeger*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Aemulus*, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
- Aeneas*, decl. of, 43.
- Aequi boni facere*, 402, 3.
- Ær*, *aether*, acc. of, 93, 1, quantity of, 621, 3.
- æus*, adjs. in, 326.
- Affatim*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- Affinis*, w. gen., 399, (8).
- Age, expression of, 417, 3.
- Agent,—Abl. of, w. *a* or *ab*, 388, 1. Apparent agent, 388. Agent in poets, 388, 3.
- Agreement,—Of Pred. Noun, 362; in gend. and numb., 362, 1. Of Appositive, 363, in gend. and numb., 363, 1. Of Adject., 438; w. clause, 438, 3; constr. accord. to sense, 438, 6; w. pred. noun or appositive, 438, 7; w. two nouns, 439; of different genders, 439, 2. Of Pronouns, 445; w. two antecedents, 445, 3; w. pred. noun or appositive, 445, 4; constr. accord. to sense, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of Verb, 460; constr. accord. to sense, 461; agreement w. Appos. or Pred. noun, 462; w. comp. subject, 463.
- ai*, for *ae*, 42, 3; quant. of, 612, 1.
- al*, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 64, 87, 89.
- Alcaic verse, 664; 691, II.; greater, 692; stanza, 700, I.
- Alienus*, w. dat., 391, 1; w. atl., 391, 2, 3); w. gen., 399, 3.
- Aliquantus*, *aliquis*, *aliquot*, 191; use of *aliquis*, 455.
- alis*, adjs. in, 325.
- Alius*,—Decl. 149. Indef. 191, 2; w. abl., 417, 5; w. *atque*, *ac*, or *et*, 459, 2. *Alius—alius*, 459; *alius—alium*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
- Alphabet, 2 ff.
- Alter*,—Decl. 149. Indef., 191, 2; *alteruter*, 191, 2; *alter—alter*, 459; *alter—alterum*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
- Altercor*, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Alvus*, gender of, 47.
- Ambi*, *amb.*, 338, 2.
- Ambo*, decl. of, 176, 2.
- Amphora, 716.
- Amplius* without *quam*, 417, 3.

- An*, *annon*, 346, II. 2; 526, 2, 2).  
*Anacoluthon*, 704, III. 4.  
*Anapaestic verse*, 678..  
*Anaphora*, 704, II. 3.  
*Anastrophe*, 704, IV. 1.  
*Animi*, constr., 399, 3. 4).  
*Ante*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Ante*, in expressions of time, 427; w. acc., 433.  
*Antecedent*, use of term, 445, 1; omitted, 445, 6; attracted, 445, 9. Clause as antecedent, 445, 7.  
*Antequam*, w. indic. or subj., 523.  
*Antimeria*, 704, III. 1.  
*Antithesis*, 703, 8.  
*-anus*, adjs. in, 325 ff.  
*Anxius*, w. gen., 399, 3.  
*Aphaeresis*, 703, 1.  
*Apocope*, 703, 3.  
*Aposiopesis*, 704, I. 3.  
*Appendix*, 702-720.  
*Appositive*,—Agreement of, 363; in gen. and numb., 363, 1. Subject omitted, 363, 2. Force of, 363, 3.  
*Aptus*, w. dat., 391, 1; *aptus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.  
*Apud*, w. accus., 433.  
*-ar*, gen. and abl. of nouns in, 66, 87, 89.  
*Arcco*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
*Archilochian verse*, 664; 677, II.; greater, 691, I.  
*Arenae*, gen. of place, 424, 3.  
*-aris*, adjs. in, 325.  
*Aristophanic*, 691, III.  
*-arium*, nouns in, 317.  
*-arius*, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 325.  
*Arrangement*,—Of Words, 592-602. —General rules, 593 ff. Effect of emphasis and euphony, 594. Contrasted groups, 595. Kindred words, 596. Words with common relation, 597. Special rules, 598 ff. Modifiers of nouns, 598; of adjs., 599; of verbs, 600; of adverbs, 601; of special words, —Demon. Prep. Conjunct. Rel. *Non*, 602. Of Clauses, 603-606. —Clause as Subj. or Pred., 603; as Subord. element, 604; in Latin Period, 605; in compd. sentence, 606.  
*Arsis and thesis*, 660.  
*As* and its divisions, 712.  
*-as*, nouns in, 1st dec., 43; 3d dec., 50; genit. of, 68; gen. of, 105.  
*-as*, for *ae* in gen., 42, 3; in Greek acc. plur., 98; in patronymics, 316; in adjs., 326; quantity of, 623.  
*Asclepiadæan verse*, 689, III.; greater, IV.  
*-asco*, inceptives in, 332, II.  
*Asking*, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.  
*Aspergo*, constr., 384, 1.  
*Aspirated letters*, 4, 3.  
*-asso*, *assim*, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 239, 4.  
*Asyndeton*, 704, I. 1.  
*-atim*, adverbs in, 334, 2.  
*Atque*, for *quam*, 417, 4.  
*Attraction*, of pronoun, 445, 4; of antecedent, 445, 9; of pred. noun or adj. after an infin., 547. Subj. by attraction, 527.  
*Attributive adj.*, 438, 2.  
*-atus*, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.  
*Au*, sound of, 9, 15; changed in compds., 341, 3.  
*Audiens*, w. two datives, 390, 3.  
*Aureus*, the coin, 712.  
*Autem*, place of, 602, III.  
*Authority*, long or short by, 609, 2.  
*Authors*, Latin, 706.  
*Avidus*, w. gen., 399, 2; w. dat., 399, 5; w. acc. and prep., 399, 5.  
*-ax*, genit. of nouns in, 77; verbals in, 328; w. gen., 399, 2.
- B**, CHANGED to *p*, 248.  
*Being angry*, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Being distant*, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.  
*Believing*, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Belli*, constr., 424, 2.  
*Bene*, compared, 305, 2; w. verbs of buying, 416, 3.  
*Benefiting*, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Bibi*, quantity of, 651, 2.  
*-bilis*, verbals in, 328.  
*Bonus*, decl., 148; compar., 165; *boni consulo*, 402, 3.  
*Bos*, gen. of, 72, 6; gen. plur., 89, III.; dat., abl., 90, 2.  
*Brachycatalectic*, 663, III.  
*Brazen age*, 706, III.

**-brum**, nouns in, 320.

**-bs**, genit. of nouns in, 75.

Bucolic caesura, 673, 2.

**-bulum**, nouns in, 320.

**-bundus**, verbals in, 328.

**C**, SOUND of, 11 ff. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 63; gend., 111.

*C*, quantity of final syllables in, 621.

Caesura, caesural pause, 662; in hexam., 673 ff.; in anapaestic verse, 678; in trochaic, 680; in iambic, 683, IV., 866.

Calendar, Roman, 707.

Calends, 708, I. 1.

Calling, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.

**-cannus**, adjs. in, 326, 2.

*Caput*, genit. of, 67; w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.

*Carbasus*, gend. of, 47.

Cardinals, 172, 174; decl. of, 175 ff.

Cases, etymology of,—Endings of, 38, 2; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45; in 3d dec., 52; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; comparative view of, 121; general endings, 123. Formation of, in 3d dec.,—nom. sing., 55; gen., 56 ff.; dat., 84; acc., 85; voc., 86; abl., 87; nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88; gen., 89; dat. and abl., 90. Greek cases,—gen. sing., 92; acc., 93; voc., 94; nom. and voc. plur., 95; gen., 96; dat. and abl., 97; acc., 98. Cases of adjs. of 3d dec., 154–158.

Cases, syntax of, 364–435,—characterized, 364; kindred, 365; nom., 364 ff.; voc., 369; accus., 370–381; dat., 382–392; gen., 393–411; abl., 412–431; w. prepositions, 432–437.

Catalectic verse, 663, III. 1.

*Causa, gratia*, 414, 2, 3).

Causal conjunctions, 310, 311; 587, V.; 588, VII.

Causal sentences, 360.

Cause, abl. of, 414.

Cause, Subj. of, 517–523,—Rule, 517, 521; w. *quum*, 518; *qui*, 519; *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando*, 520; *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, 522; *antequam*, *priusquam*, 523.

Cause, denoted by part., 578, II.

Causing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.

*Cave*, w. subj. for imperat., 535, 1.

*Caveo*, constr., 385, 3.

**-ce**, appended, 186, 1.

*Celo*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.

**-cen**, compounds in, 339, 2.

**-ceps**, genit. of nouns and adjs. in, 75, 1; 155, 3.

*Certo*, w. dat., 385, 5.

*Certus*, w. gen., 399, (2).

*Ch*, 4, 3; sound of, 11, 1.

Characteristic, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428; gen. and abl. distinguished, 428, 4.

Choliambus, 683, 4.

Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.

Choriambic verse, 689 ff.

*Cingo*, constr. of, 374, 7.

**-cio**, derivatives in, 315, 5.

*Circa, circiter*, w. acc., 433.

*Circum*, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Circumdo, circumfundo*, constr., 384, 1. *Circum*, w. acc., 433.

*Cis, citra*, w. acc., 433.

*Citerior*, compared, 166.

*Citum*, quantity of, 651, 3.

*Clam*, w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.

Clauses, as nouns, gender of, 35.

Prin. and sub. clauses, 345, 1 and 2. Clause as object, 371, 5; as abl. absol., 431, 4; as antecedent, 445, 7. Indirect questions, clauses w. infin., subj., and w. *quod*, compared, 554. Arrangement of, 603 ff.

*Coelum*, plur. *coeli*, 143, 1.

Cognate accus., 371, 1.

Coins, Roman, 712.

**-cola**, compounds in, 339, 2.

Collective nouns, 31.

*Colus*, gender of, 47.

*Com, con* for *cum*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386.

Combined objects, 354, 3.

*Comitor*, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.

Command, subj. of, 487 ff. Constr. of verbs of, 385; 558, VI.

Common nouns, 31; com. quantity, 23.

*Commoneo, commonefacio*, constr., 410, 3.

*Communis*, constr., 391, 2, 4; 399, 3.

- Commodo*, constr. of, 416, 2.  
 Comparative conj., 311; 588, II.  
 Comparative degree, 160; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparatives w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2); w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1; w. force of too, 444, 1; before and after *quam*, 444, 2; w. *quam* and the subj., 501, IV.  
 Comparative view,—of decl., 121–123; of conjugation, 243 ff.  
 Comparison,—of adja., 160; modes of, 161; terminational, 162 ff.; irreg., 163 ff.; defect., 166 ff.; adverbial, 170. Use of, 444; in adverbs, 444, 4.  
*Compleo*, constr., 410, 7.  
 Complex sentences, 345, 357; abridged, 358 ff. Comp. elements, 350; subject, 352; predicate, 354.  
*Compos*, genit. of, 155; w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.  
 Composition of words, 313, 338 ff.  
 Compound nouns,—decl. of, 125 ff.; composition of, 339; comp. adjectives, 340; verbs, 341; prin. parts of, 259 ff.: comp. adverbs, 342. Comp. sentences, 345, 360; abridged, 361. Comp. subject, predicate, modifier, 361, 1–3. Compounds of preps. w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6.  
 Computation of money, 713.  
*Con*, see *com*.  
 Concealing, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.  
*Concedo*, constr., 551, II. 2.  
 Concession, subj. of, 514 ff.; participle, 578, IV.  
 Concessive conjunctions, 311; 588, IV.  
 Condemning, constr. of verbs of, 410, 5.  
 Condition,—conjunctions of, 311, 588. Subj. of, 502; force of tenses, 504; w. *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, 505; *ac si*, *ut si*, etc., 506; *si*, *nisi*, etc., 507 ff.; *si* omitted, 503, 1; condition supplied, 503, 2; first form, 508; second, 509; third, 510; mixed forms, 511, 512. Condition in relative clauses, 513; in oratio obliqua, 533, 2 and 3; denoted by participle, 578, III.  
 Conditional sentences, 502 ff.  
*Confido*, w. dat., 385, 1; w. abl., 419.  
 Conjugation, 201 ff.; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff., 261 ff.; second, 207 ff., 266 ff.; third, 209 ff., 273 ff.; fourth, 211 ff., 283 ff.; of verbs in *to* of the 3d conj., 213. Periphrastic, 227 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234 ff. Comparative view of conj., 243 ff.; one general system, 244. Vowel conj., 278. Conj. of irreg. verba, 287 ff.; of defect., 297; of impersonal, 298 ff.  
 Conjunctions, 308; coördinate, use of, 587; subordinate, use of, 588. Place of, in sentence, 602, III.  
*Consciūs*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5; w. gen. and dat., 399, 6.  
*Consciūs mihi sum*, constr., 551, 3.  
 Consecutive conjunctions, 311, 588.  
 Consonants, 3, I.; double, 4, 2; sounds of, 10 ff., 16.  
*Consors*, w. gen., 399, (3).  
*Constituo*, constr., 558, II.  
*Consuetudo*, *consuetudinis est*, constr., 556, I. 1.  
*Consulo*, constr., 385, 3.  
*Consultus*, w. gen., 399, (2).  
*Contentus*, w. abl., 419, IV.  
*Contingit*, constr., 556, II.  
*Contra*, w. accus., 433.  
 Contracted syllables, quantity of, 610.  
 Contractions, in conj., 234 ff.  
*Contrarius*, constr., 391, 2, 4).  
 Convicting, constr. of verbs of, 410.  
 Coördinate conjunctions, 309.  
 Copulative conjunctions, 310, 587. Copul. sentences, 360.  
*Coram*, w. abl., 434.  
 Countries, gender of names of, 35.  
 -*crum*, nouns in, 320.  
*Cuicuiusmodi*, 187, 7.  
*Cujas*, 185, 3; 188, 4.  
*Cujus*, 185, 3; 187, 3; 188, 4; *cujusmodi*, *cujuscemodi*, *cujuscumquemodi*, 187, 7; *cujusdumodi*, 191, 4.  
 -*culum*, nouns in, 320.  
 -*culus*, *cula*, *culum*, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.  
*Cum*, appended, 184, 6; 187, 2;

- cum, com*, in compds., 338, 1.  
*Cum*, w. abl., 434.  
**-cundus**, verbals in, 328.  
*Cuncti, omnes*, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).  
*Cupidus*, w. gen., 399, 2.  
*Cupiens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.  
*Cupio*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- D**, DROPPED before *s*, 55, 3; quantity of final syllables in, 621.  
 Dactylic verse, 670 ff. Dactylico-iambic, 693.  
*Dama*, gen. of, 44.  
 Dates, Lat. and Eng., 710.  
 Dative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 42, 3; in 3d dec., 84, 90, 97; in 4th dec., 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119, 4.  
 Dative, syntax of, 382–392,—with verbs, 384 ff. Of advant. and dis-advant., 385. W. compds., 386. Of possessor, 387. Of apparent agent, 388. Ethical dat., 389. Two dat., 390. W. adjs., 391. W. nouns and adverbs, 392. Of gerunds and gerundives, 564.  
*Datum*, quantity of, 651, 3.  
*De*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *De* w. abl., 434.  
*Decerno*, constr., 558, II.  
*Decipio*, w. gen., 409, 4; 410, 7.  
 Declarative sentence, 346.  
 Declaring, constr. of verbs of, 551.  
 Declension, 39; first, 42; second, 45; third, 48; fourth, 116; second and fourth, 117; fifth, 119. Comparative view of decl., 121; one general system of decl., 122. Decl. of compds., 125.  
*Dedi*, quantity of, 651, 2.  
*Dedoco*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.  
 Defective nouns, 119, 5; 129; def. adjs., 159; def. comparison, 166; def. verbs, 297.  
 Deliberative questions, w. the subj., 486, II.  
 Demanding, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.  
 Demonstratives, 186; use of, 450.  
*Denarius*, 712.  
 Deponent verbs, 221; 465, 2.
- Derivation, 313; of nouns, 314 ff.; of adjs., 322 ff.; of verbs, 380 ff.; of adverbs, 333 ff.  
 Derivatives, quantity of, 653; quantity of deriv. endings, 645 ff.  
 Desideratives, 332, III.  
*Desino*, w. gen., 409, 4.  
 Desire, subj. of, 487 ff.; in asseverations, 488, 4; in relat. clauses, 488, 5.  
 Desiring, constr. of verbs of, 551.  
*Desisto*, w. gen., 409, 4.  
*Despero*, w. acc., 371, 3.  
*Deterior*, compared, 166.  
*Deterreo*, constr., 499, 1–2.  
*Deus*, 45, 6.  
 Diaeresis, 669, III.  
*Diana*, quantity of, 612, 3.  
 Diastole, 669, IV.  
*Dic* for *dice*, 237.  
**-dicus**, compds. in compared, 164.  
 Difference, abl. of, 418.  
 Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4.  
*Differo*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
*Dignor*, constr., 419, 2.  
*Dignus*, constr., 419; *dignus, qui*, w. subj., 501, III.  
 Dimeter, 663, 2.  
 Diminutive, nouns, 315; dim. adjs., 327; dim. verbs, 332, IV.  
 Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quantity of, 610.  
 Dipody, 656, 2.  
 Direct object, 354, 1; 371.  
*Dis, di*, 338, 2.  
 Disadvantage, dat. of, 385.  
*Discrepo*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
 Disjunctive conjs., 310; 587; sentences, 360.  
*Dispar*, constr., 391, 2, 4).  
 Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.  
*Dissentio*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
*Dissimilis*, constr., 391, 2, 4).  
 Dissyllabic perfects and supines, quantity of, 651.  
 Distance, abl. of, 378, 2.  
 Distich, 666.  
*Disto*, w. dat., 385, 4.  
 Distributives, 172; 174; decl. of, 179.  
*Div*, compared, 305, 4.  
*Dius*, quantity of, 612, 3.  
*Diversus*, compared, 167.  
*Dives*, compared, 165, 2.

*Doceo*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.  
*Doleo*, w. accus., 371, 3; w. clause, 558, V.  
*Domus*, decl. of, 117; gen., 118; constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.  
*Donec*, w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.  
*Dono*, constr., 384, 1.  
 Double constr. of a few verbs, 384, 1.  
 Double consonants, 3.  
*Duc* for *duce*, 377.  
*Dum*, *dummodo*, w. subj., 503 ff.; w. ind. or subj., 521 ff.  
*Duo*, decl. of, 176.

**E**, SOUND of, 6, 14. Nouns in *e*,—1st dec., 43 ff.; 3d dec., 48, 50; genit. of, 59; 89, 1; abl. of, 87, 1; gend., 111. *E* in abl., 87; in Greek acc. plur., 98; for *ei* in gen. and dat., 119, 4; *E* in adverbs, 335; changed to *i*, 341, 3.  
*E*, quantity of—in *ei*, 119, 1; final, 616; in increments of decl., 635; of conjugation, 641.

*E* or *ex*, see *ex*.

*Ecce* with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.

*Ecquis*, 188, 3.

*Edoceo*, constr., 374, 2 and 3.

*Egenus*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419, III.

*Egeo*, constr., 409, 1.

*Ego*, decl. of, 184.

*Eheu*, quantity of, 612, 2.

*Ei*, sound of, 9. *Ei*, quantity of, 612, 2.

*-eia*, in patronymics, 316.

*-eius*, quantity of, 612, 2.

*Ejusmodi*, 186, 4.

*-ela*, nouns in, 320, 7.

Elegiac distich, 678, 2.

Elegiambus, 693, 1.

Elements of sentences, 347 ff.

Ellipsis, 704.

*-ellus*, *ella*, *ellum*, nouns in, 315; adjs. in, 327.

*-em*, in accus., 85, 119.

Emotion, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.

Emphasis and euphony in the arrangement of words, 594.

*-en*, nouns in, 51; *en* in Greek acc., 93; with demonstratives, 186, 3; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.

Enallage, 704, III.

Enclitics, accent of, 26, (a); quantity of, 613, 1.

Endeavoring, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.

Endings, 41; in 1st dec., 42; in 2d dec., 45, 1; in 3d dec., 52, 2; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 119; in the five decls., 121, 123; in comparison, 162; in conjugation, 242.

English pronunciation of Latin, 6 ff.

*Enim*, place of, 602, III.

*-ensis*, adjs. in, 325 ff.

*-entior*, *entissimus*, in comparison, 164.

Envyng, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

*Eo*, w. gen., 396, 2, 4).

Epenthesis, 703, 5.

Epicene nouns, 36.

Epichoriambic verse, 690.

Epiphora, 704, II, 4.

*Epitome*, decl. of, 43.

*Epulum*, plur., *epulae*, 143.

*-er*, gend. of nouns in, 47, 103. Adjs. in, 151; comparison of, 163, 1. Adverbs in, 335.

*-ere*, for *erunt*, 235.

*Erga*, w. acc., 433.

*Ergo*, w. gen., 411.

*-ernus*, adjs. in, 325, 2.

*-es*, nouns in, 50, 119; genitive of, 69; gender of, 104, 109, 119. *es*, in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.

*-es*, final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity of, 624.

*-esco*, inceptives in, 332, II.

*-esso*, *essim*, in fut., perf., and perf. subj., 239, 4. *esso*, verbs in, 332.

*-ester*, adjs. in, 325, 2.

*-estus*, adjs. in, 323, 3.

Ethical dative, 389.

*Etiamsi*, *etsi*, w. subj., 515, 516, III.

*-etum*, nouns in, 317.

Etymology 29-342.

*Eu*, sound of, 9.

Euphonic changes, 55, 3; before *si*, *sum*, *tum*, 248; 257, 1; in prepositions, 338, 1.

Euphony, see *Emphasis*.

*-eus*, adjs. in, 324, 326.

*Evenit*, constr., 556, II.

*-ex*, genit. of nouns in, 78.

*Ex, e*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *Ex*, w. abl., 434.  
 Exchanging, constr. of verbs of, 416, 2.  
 Exclamatory sentences, 346, IV.; accus. in, 381; voc., nom., dat. in, 381, 3; infinitive in, 553, III.  
*Exoro*, constr., 374, 2.  
*Expers, exsors*, w. gen., 399, (3).  
*Exterus*, compared, 163, 3.  
*Extra*, w. acc., 433.  
*Extremum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.  
*Exuo*, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.  
**F**AC, for *face*, 237.  
*Facio*, w. pred. gen., 403.  
*Falsum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.  
*Falsus*, compared, 167.  
*Fames*, abl. *fama*, 137, 2.  
*Familia*, genitive of, 42, 3.  
 Fearing, constr. of verbs of, 492, 4.  
 Feeling, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.  
 Feet, metrical, 656 ff.  
 Feminine, 33.  
*Fer*, for *fere*, 237.  
*Fertilis*, w. gen., abl., or acc., 399, (2) and 5.  
*-fex*, compds. in, 339, 2.  
*-ficus*, adja. in, compared, 164.  
*Fido*, w. dat., 385; w. abl., 419.  
 Figures—of prosody, 669; of etymology, 703; of syntax, 704; of Rhetoric, 705.  
 Filling, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.  
 Final conj., 311; 588, V.  
 Final syllables, quantity of, 618 ff.; final syllable of the verse, 665.  
 Finite, or definite moods, 196; finite verb, 196.  
*Flo*, quantity of, 612, 3.  
*Flo*, constr., 556, II.  
*Flagito*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.  
*Foci*, gen. of place, 424, 3.  
 Following, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.  
 Formation,—of cases, 55–98; of parts of verbs, 240–260; of words, 313–342.  
 Fractions, 174, 1.  
 Freeing, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.  
*Frenum*, pl., *freni*, *frena*, 143.  
 Frequentatives, 332.

*Fretus*, w. abl., 419, IV.  
*Frugt*, in decl., 159; compared, 165.  
*Fruor*, constr., 419.  
*Fungor*, constr., 419.  
 Future, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 470; w. force of imperat., 470, 1; for Eng. pres., 470, 2; w. *melius*, 470, 3. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 1. In imperat., 534, 537; fut. for pres., and pres. for fut., 534, 1 and 2. In infin., 543 ff.; circumlocution for, 544. In part., 573.  
 Future Perfect, 197; 241, II.; in indic., 473; to denote certainty, 473, 1; for Eng. pres., 473, 2. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 2.  
*Futurum esse, fuisse, fore, ut*, 544, 1–3.  
*Futurum sit ut*, 481, III. 1 and 2.

**G**, SOUND of, 11 ff.; changed, 248.  
*Gaudeo*, constr., 371, 3; 551, III.; 558, V.  
*Gemo*, w. accus., 371, 3.  
 Gems, gender of names of, 47.  
 Gender, 33 ff.; in 1st dec., 44; in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 99–115; in 4th dec., 118; in 5th dec., 119; general table of, 124.  
 Genitive, formation of,—endings, 40; in 1st dec., 42; as for *ae*, *um* for *arum*, 42, 3; in 2d dec., 45; *i* for *ii*, *um* for *orum*, 45, 5; *o* or *on*, 46, 3; in 3d dec., 56–83, 89, 96; in 4th dec., 116; *uis* for *us*, 116, 4; in 5th dec., 119; *e* or *i* for *ei*, 119, 4. In adjectives, 155.  
 Genitive, syntax of, 393–411,—with nouns, 395; varieties, 396; peculiarities, 397; other constrs. for gen., 398. W. adja., 399. W. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; other constrs. for, 404. Of place, 404; 421, II. In special constrs., 405 ff. Acc. and gen., 410. W. adverbs, 411. Gen. of gerunds and gerundives, 563.  
*Genitus*, w. abl., 425, 3.  
 Gentle nouns, 326, 3.  
 Gerund,—Nature of, 559. Cases of, 560. Ger. and Infin., 560, 2. W.

direct object, 561. Gerundive, 562; of *utor*, *fruor*, etc., 562, 4. Pass. sense of Ger., 562, 5. Genitive of ger. and gerundive, 563; ger. when preferred, 563, 2; gerundive with *mei*, *nostri*, etc., 563, 4; of purpose, 563, 5; infin. for ger., 563, 6. Dat. of, 564; of purpose, with official names, 564, 2 and 3. Accus. of, 565; w. object, 565, 2; of purpose, 565, 3. Abl. of, 566.

*Gloriosum est*, 556, I. 2.

Glyconic verse, 664, 689.

*Gnarus*, w. gen., 399, (2).

Golden age, 706.

Greek nouns,—in 1st dec., 43; in 2d dec., 46; in 3d dec., 91–98.

## II. A BREATHING, 2.

*Hadria*, gender of, 44.

Happening, constr. of verbs of, 556, II.

*Haud, ne, non*, 584.

Hendecasyllabic verse, 691, V.

Hendiadya, 704, II. 2.

Hephthemimeris, 656, 2.

Heroic verse, 664.

Heteroclitics, 135 ff.

Heterogeneous nouns, 141 ff.

Hexameter verse, 663, 2. Dactylic, 671.

*Hic, iste, ille*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

*Hic* (adv.), w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Hipponactean, 683, 4.

Historical tenses, 198, 2; hist. present, 467, III.; hist. perfect, 471, II.

*Hodie*, quantity of, 654, 8.

Horace, versification of, 698 ff. Lyric metres of, 700. Index, 701.

*Horreo*, w. accus., 371, 3.

*Huc*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

*Hujusmodi*, 186, 4.

*Humus*, gender of, 47; constr. of *humi*, 424, 2.

Hypallage, 704, III. 2.

Hyperbaton, 704, IV.

Hyperbole, 705, V.

Hypercatalectic verse, 663, III.

Hypermeter, 663, III.

Hypothetical sentences, see *Conditional* ditto.

Hysteron proteron, 704, IV. 2.

**I** SUPPLIES the place of *j*, 2, 3; sound of, 6 ff.; 14 ff.; with the sound of *y*, 9; *i* for *ii*, *ie*, 45, 5. Nouns in, 48; genit. of, 60; gender of, 111; *i*, final in dat., 84; in abl., 87; for *is*, 92; for *ei*, 119, 4; in perfect, 247, 2. *I*, quantity of,—final, 618; in increments of decl., 636; of conjugation, 643. *-ia*, nouns in, 319; in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 88.

*-iacus*, adja. in, 326.

*-iades*, in patronymics, 316.

Iambelegus, 694, 1.

Iambic verse,—Dipody, 682. Tri-meter, 683; choliambus, 683, 4; catalectic, 684. Dimeter, 685; hypermeter, 685, 1; catalectic, 685, 2; acephalous, 685, 3. Tetrameter, 686.

Iambico-dactylic verse, 694.

*-ianns*, adjs. in, 326.

*-ias*, in patronymics, 316.

*-ibam*, for *iebam*, 239, 1.

*-ibo, ibor*, for *iam, iar*, 239, 2.

*-ibus*, in dat. and abl. plur., 90.

*-icius*, adjs. in, 324, 328.

Ictus, 659.

*-icus*, adjs. in, 325 ff.

*Idem*, decl., 186; w. dat., 391, 3; use of, 451. *Idem—qui, ac* or *atque*, 451, 5.

Ides, of the calendar, 706, I. 3.

*-ides*, in patronymics, 316.

*-ido*, nouns in, 320, 7.

*Idoneus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.

*-idus*, verbals in, 328.

*-iensis*, adjs. in, 326.

*-ier*, for *i* in infin., 239, 6.

*Igitur*, place in the clause, 602, III.

*Ignarus*, w. gen., 399, (2).

*-igo*, nouns in, 320, 7.

*-ile*, nouns in, 317.

*-ilis*, adjs. in, 325, 328; compared, 163, 2.

Illative conj., 310; 587, IV.; sentences, 360.

*Ille*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

*Illic* for *ille*, 186, 2.

*Illiusmodi*, 186, 4.

*-illo*, verbs in, 332, IV.

*-illus, illa, illum*, in nouns, 315, 3; in adjs., 327.



- im**, in acc., 85, 93; for *am*, or *em* in pres. subj., 289, 3.
- Immemor*, genit. of, 155, 4; gen. plur., 158, 3; w. gen., 399, 2.
- imonia**, nouns in, 319.
- Impedio*, constr., 499, 1-2.
- Imperative, 196. Tenses, 534. Use, 535 ff.; pres., 536; fut., 537; in prohibitions, 538.
- Imperative sentences, 346, III.
- Imperfect tense, 197; 241, I.; in indic., 468 ff.; in lively description, of customary or repeated action, 469; of attempted action, in letters, 469, 1 and 2. In Subj., 477; of present time, 481, V.; after Perf. Def., 482, 1; for Pluperf., 486, 4; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2.
- Imperitus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Impero*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; subjects of, 556, I.-III.
- Impertio*, constr., 384, 1.
- Impleo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Impos*, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).
- Impotens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Imprudens*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- in**, in Greek accs., 93.
- In*, in compds., 338, 1; w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *In*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Inceptives, inchoatives, 332, II.
- Incertus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inclination, subj. of, 486, 3.
- Inclutus*, compared, 167.
- Increments, 629 ff.; quantity of, 632 ff., 639 ff.
- Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 35; examples, 128. Indecl. adjs., 159.
- Indefinite moods, 196.
- Indefinite pronouns, 189; use of, 455 ff.
- Index of verbs, 721.
- Indicative, 196; use of, 474 ff.; special uses, 475.
- Indigeo*, constr., 409, 1.
- Indignus*, w. abl., 419, IV. *indignus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
- Indirect discourse, distinguished from direct, 528. Subj. in, 529. Moods in prin. clause, 530; in sub. clause, 531. Tenses, general use, 532; special, 533.
- Indirect object, 354, 2. Rule, 384; indirect w. direct, 384, II.
- Indirect questions, 524 ff.—Subj. in, 525. Indic. in, 525, 6; in orat. obliqua, 530, II. 2; sing. and double, 526.
- Induco*, constr., 374, 7.
- Indulging, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Induo*, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.
- ine**, in patronymics, 316, 4.
- Inferus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Infinitive, 196, II. Tenses of, 540 ff. Subject of, 545; of Hist. infin., 545, 1. Predicate after, 546; attracted, 547. Construction of, 548 ff.; as Nom., 549; as Accus., 550 ff.; w. another acc., 552, 2; in relative clauses, 551, 1; after conjunctions, 551, 2; after adjs., 552, 3; after preps., 552, 4; in special constrs., 553; as pred., 553, I.; as appos., 553, II.; in exclam., 553, III.; as abl. abs., 553, IV.; of Purpose, 553, V.; for Gerund, 553, VI.
- Infra*, w. acc., 433.
- Ingenii*, w. adjs., 399, 3.
- Injuring, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Innitor*, constr., 419.
- Inops*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
- Inscius*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inseparable preps., 307; 654, 2.
- Inspargo*, constr., 384, 1.
- Instrument, abl. of, 414, 4.
- Insuctus*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. other constrs., 399, 5.
- Integer*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Inter*, in compds., 338, 1; w. dat., 386. *Inter*, w. acc., 433.
- Intercludo*, constr., 384, 1.
- Interest*, w. gen., 406, III.
- Interior*, compared, 166.
- Interjections, 312; w. voc., 369, 1; w. nom., acc., or dat., 381, 3; use of, 589 ff.
- Interrogative conjunctions, 311, 588.
- Interrogative pronouns, 188; use of, 454.
- Interrogative sentences.—Form, 346, II. Interrog. words, 346, II. 1. Double questions, 346, II. 2. Deliberative questions, 486, II. In-

- direct questions, 525; w. indic., 525, 6; single and double, 526. In indirect discourse, 529 ff.; rhetorical ques., 530, 2.
- Interrogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. acc. and abl., 374, 2-3.
- Intra*, w. accus., 433.
- Intransitive verbs, 193; 371, 3; impersonal pass., 465, 1.
- inus*, adjs. in, 324 ff.
- Invidus*, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
- Invitus*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
- io*, verbs of 3d conj. in, 213 ff.; nouns in, 318, 321.
- Ionic verse, 687.
- ior*, in comparatives, 162.
- Ipsē*, decl. of, 186; use of, 452.
- Ipsus*, for *ipse*, 186, 3.
- Iron age, 706.
- Irony, 705, IV.
- Irregular nouns, 127 ff.; irreg. adjs., 159; irreg. comparison, 163 ff.
- Irregular principal parts of verbs, 249-258; irreg. verbs, 287 ff.
- Is*, decl. of, 186; use of, 451; reflexive, 449, 1. *Is—qui*, 451, 4.
- is*, in dat. and abl. of the 1st and 2d decls., 42, 45; in genit. of 3d dec., 52; in acc., dat., and abl. plur., 88, III.; 90. Nouns in *is*, 50; genitive of, 71; gender of, 106.
- is*, in patronymics, 316; quantity of *is* final, 626.
- isco*, inceptives in, 332, II.
- Islands, genit. of names of, 35; constr. of names of, 424.
- issimus*, in superlatives, 162.
- isso*, verbs in, 332.
- Iste*, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.
- Istic*, *isthic*, for *iste*, 186, 2.
- Istiusmodi*, 186, 4.
- itas*, nouns in, 319.
- iter*, adverbs in, 335.
- Ithyphalicus, 681, 2.
- itia*, nouns in, 319.
- itimus*, adjs. in, 325, 2.
- itium*, nouns in, 318.
- ito*, frequentatives in, 332.
- itudo*, nouns in, 319.
- Itum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- itus*, nouns in, 318; adverbs in, 335, 3.
- ium*, in genit. plur., 89; nouns in, 318 ff.
- ius*, adjs. in, 326; quantity of, 612, 3.
- ivus*, adjs. in, 328, 5.
- ix*, genitive of nouns in, 79.
- J**, PLACE supplied by *i*, 2; length-ens preceding vowel, 611.
- Jecur*, genitive of, 66, 5.
- Jesus*, decl. of, 128, 1, 3).
- Jocus*, pl., *joci*, *joca*, 141.
- Jubeo*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- Jugerum*, decl. of, 136; use of, 718.
- Jugum*, quantity of compds. of, 611, 3.
- Jungo*, w. dat., 385, 5.
- Jupiter*, genitive of, 66, 3.
- Jusjurandum*, decl. of, 126.
- Juvenal, versification of, 696.
- Juvenalis*, abl. of, 87, 2.
- Juvenis*, abl. of, 87, 2; compared, 168, 3.
- Juvo*, w. accus., 385, 2.
- Juxta*, w. accus., 433.
- K**, RARE, 2.
- Knowing*, constr. of verbs of, 551, I. 1.
- L**, NOUNS in, 48, 51; genit. of, 64; gender, 112; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
- Labials, 3.
- Lacrimo*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Lacdo*, w. accus., 385, 1.
- Lar*, quantity of genit., 633, 4.
- Lassus*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Latin authors, 706.
- Latin grammar, 1.
- Latin period, 605.
- lentus*, adjs. in, 323.
- Letters, classes of, 3; combinations of, 4; sounds of, 5-16.
- Libero*, w. abl. or gen., 425, 3.
- Libra*, 714.
- Licet*, w. subj., 515.
- Linguals, 3.
- Liquids, 3.
- Litum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Logaoedic verse, 691.
- Longius*, without *quam*, 417, 3.
- ls*, genit. of nouns in, 76.
- M**, EUPHONIC changes of, 248, 338, 1; quantity of final syllables in, 621; elided, 669, I.

**-ma**, dat. and abl. plur. of nouns in, 90, 1.  
*Magis*, *maxime*, in adverbial comparison, 170.  
*Magnus*, compared, 165.  
*Major*, in expressions of age, 417, 3.  
**Making**, verbs of, w. two accs., 373; w. subj., 558, IV.  
*Malo*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.  
*Malus*, compared, 165.  
*Manifestus*, w. gen., 399, 3.  
**Manner**, means, abl. of, 414; principle for, 578, II.  
**Masculine**, 33.  
**Material nouns**, 31.  
*Me*, for *mihi*, 184, 5.  
**Measure of difference**, abl. of, 418; measure in prosody, 663, II.; Roman measure, 715 ff.  
*Med*, *mehe*, for *me*, 184, 5.  
*Medeor*, w. dat., 385, 2.  
*Medius*, designating part, 441, 6.  
*Melius*, w. indic. for subj., 475, 2-4.  
*Melos*, plur. of, 95, 1.  
*Meme*, 184, 6.  
*Memini*, w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, 1.  
*Memor*, w. gen., 399, 2).  
**-men, mentum**, nouns in, 320.  
*Mensa*, decl. of, 42.  
*Mepte*, 184, 5.  
**-met**, forms in, 184, 3; 185, 1.  
**Metaphor**, 705, I.  
**Metathesis**, 703, 7.  
**Metonymy**, 705, II.  
**Metre**, 667.  
**Metrical equivalents and substitutes**, 657, 658.  
**-metros**, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.  
*Metuo*, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.  
*Meus*, decl., 185.  
*Mi* for *mihi*, 184, 5.  
*Militia*, constr., 424, 2.  
*Mille*, decl. and use of, 178.  
**Million**, cardinal for, 174; symbol for, 180.  
**Million sesterces**, Latin for, 713, 4.  
**-mino**, in imperatives, 239, 5.  
*Minor*, *minus*, without *quam*, 417, 3.  
*Mirror*, w. accus., 371, 3; w. gen., 409, 4. •  
*Mirum est*, constr. of, 556, I. 2.

*Mis* for *mei*, 184, 5.  
*Misceo*, w. dat., 385, 5.  
*Misereor*, *misereasco*, w. gen., 406.  
*Miseret*, constr., 410. *Misereciti*, *miseretur*, 410, 6.  
**Mobile nouns**, 36.  
*Moderor*, constr., 385, 3.  
**Modifier**, 348 ff.  
*Modius*, 715.  
*Modo*, w. subj., 503, 505.  
*Moereo*, w. accus., 371, 3.  
*Moneo*, constr., 410, 3.  
**Money**, Roman, 712 ff.  
**Monometer**, 663, 2.  
**Monosyllables**, quantity of, 613.  
**Months**, Roman, 707; division of, 708; gender of names of, 35.  
**Moods**, 196,—Indic., 474 ff. Subj., 483-533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infinitive, 539-553. Gerund, 559 ff. Supine, 567 ff. Part., 571 ff.  
*Mos*, *moris* est, constr., 556, I. 1.  
**-ms**, gen. of nouns in, 75.  
**Multiplicatives**, 173.  
*Multus*, comparison of, 165.  
**Mutes**, 3.  
*Muto*, constr., 416, 2.

**N**, **NOUNS** in, 48; genit. of, 65;gend. of, 113; quantity of final syllables in, 621.  
**Name**, dat. of, 387, 1; gen. of, 387, 2.  
**Names of towns**, constr., 423.  
*Natus*, w. abl., 425, 3.  
*Ne*, *num*, *nonne*, interrog. particles, 311, 8; in single questions, 346, II. 1; in double, 346, II. 2; in indirect questions, 526.  
*Ne*, w. subj. of desire, 488, 3; of purpose, 489 ff.; of concession, 515.  
*Ne*, *non*, *haud*, 584.  
*Necne*, 346, II. 2, 3); 526, 2, 1).  
*Nedum*, w. subj., 493, 4.  
**Negatives**, 584; force of two negatives, 585.  
*Nemo*, indef., 191, 2; use of, 457, 1.  
*Nequam*, indecl., 159; compared, 165, 2.  
*Ne—quidem*, 585; 602, III. 2.  
*Nescio an*, w. subj., 526, II. 2, 2).  
*Nescio quis*, *quomodo*, etc., w. indic., 525, 4.  
*Nescius*, w. gen., 399, (2).

**-neus**, adja. in, 324.  
*Neuter*, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2.  
 Neuter adjectives, as adverbs, 335, 4; as cognate accus., 371, 1, 3) (2); as a second accus., 374, 5; w. partitive genit., 396, III. 2, 3) (3); as predicate, 438, 4.  
 Neuter nouns, nom., acc., and voc. of, 38, 3; neuter by signification, 35; by ending, in 2d dec., 47; in 3d dec., 111 ff.; in 4th dec., 118.  
*Ni*, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.  
*Nimis*, w. gen., 316, III. 4).  
*Nisi*, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.  
*Nitor*, constr., 419.  
*Nolo*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2; *noli*, -*ilo*, in prohibitions, 535, 1, 3).  
*Nomen est*, constr., 387, 1.  
 Nominative, formation of, in 3d dec., 55, 88, 95; neut. plur. in adjs., 157.  
 Nominative, syntax of, 366 ff.; as subject, 367; agreement of, 368; for voc., 369, 2.  
*Non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584; place of *non* in the clause, 602, IV.  
*Non*, w. *quo*, *quod*, *quin*, *quia*, w. subj., 520, 3.  
 Nones in the Roman month, 708, I. 2.  
*Nonne*, 346, II. 1.  
*Nos*, for *ego*, 446, 2.  
*Noster*, for *meus*, 446, 2.  
*Nostras*, 185, 2.  
*Nostri*, *nostrum*, 396, 1; 446, 3.  
 Nouns, etymology of,—gender of, 33 ff.; pers. and numb., 37; cases, 38; declensions, 39–126; indecl., 128; defect., 129; heteroclites, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141.  
 Nouns, syntax of, 362–437,—Agreement, 362 ff. Nom., 364 ff.; Voc., 369; Accus., 370–381; Dat., 382–392; Gen., 393–411; Abl., 412–431; w. preps., 432–437.  
*Novus*, compared, 167.  
*Noxius*, w. gen., 399, 3.  
**-ns**, genit. of nouns in, 76.  
*Nubo*, w. dat., 385, 2.  
*Nullus*, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457; for *non*, 457, 3.  
*Num*, 346, II. 1 and 2.  
 Number, 37; in verbs, 199.

Numerals, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff.; symbols, 180; adverbs, 181.

**-nus**, adjectives in, 324.

*Nusquam*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

**O**, SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 61; gend., 100; derivatives in, 320, 6.

*O*, quantity of,—final, 620; in increments, 634, 642; in compds., 654, 7.

*Ob*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Ob*, w. acc., 433.

*Obediens*, w. two datives, 390, 3.

Obeys, verbs of, w. dat., 386.

Object, direct, indirect, combined, 354; direct, rule for, 371; clause as object, 371, 5; 557 ff. See also *Subject and object clauses*.

Objective genitive, 396, II.

Oblique cases, 38; use of, 370–437.

*Obliviscor*, w. gen., 406, II.; other constrs., 407.

*Obsto*, *obsto*, constr., 499, 1–2.

*Oci*, compared, 166.

**-odos**, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.

*Oe*, sound of, 9, 14.

*Officio*, constr., 499, 1–2.

*Ôhe*, quantity, 612, 4.

*Oleo* and *redoleo*, w. acc., 371, 3.

*Ollus*, for *ille*, 186, 3.

**-olus**, *ola*, *olum*, in diminutives,—in nouns, 315, 2; in adjs., 327.

*Omnes*, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).

**-on**, in Greek gen. plur., 96.

**-one**, in patronymics, 316.

*Operam* do, w. subj., 492, 1.

*Optimum* est, constr., 556, I. 2.

*Opus*, constr., 419.

**-or**, gender of nouns in, 101; derivation of, 320 ff.

Oratio obliqua, see *Indirect discourse*.

Ordinal numbers, 172, 174; decl. of, 179.

*Oro*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj. or infin., 558, VI. 3.

Orthography, 2–28.

*Ortus*, w. abl., 425, 3.

**-os**, nouns in, 50; genit. of, 72; gend., 102.

**-os**, for *is* in the genitive, 92.

**-os** final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity, 625.

-osus, adjs. in, 323.

Ovid, versification of, 697.

-ox, genit. of nouns in, 80.

**PALAM**, w. abl., 437, 2.

Palatals, 3, II.

*Pan*, gen. and acc. of, 65, 2; 93, 1.

*Panthus*, voc. of, 46, 3, 5).

*Par* and *dispar*, constr., 391, 2, 4).

Paragoge, 703, 6.

Pardoning, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Paroemiac verse, 664.

*Pars*, in fractions, 174, 1.

*Particeps*, genit. of, 155; w. gen., 399, (3).

Participles, 196, II. 4. Tenses, relative time, 571. Agreement and use, 438 and 575 ff. For rel. clause, 577. For sub. clause,—time, cause, manner, means, condition, concession, purpose, 578. For prin. clause, 579. For verbal noun, 580. W. negative, 581.

Particles, etymology of,—Adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 306 ff.; conjuncts., 308 ff.; interjects., 312.

Particles, syntax of, 582–590,—Adverbs, 582 ff.; preps., 586, 432–437; conjuncts., 587 ff.; interjects., 589 ff.

*Partim*, w. gen., 396, III. 4). *Partim*—*partim*, for *pars*—*pars*, 461, 5.

Partitive genitive, 396, III.

Parts of speech, 30.

*Parum*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

*Parvus*, compared, 165.

Passive voice, 195; passive constr., 371, 6.

*Paterfamilias*, decl. of, 126.

*Pator*, constr., 551, II. 1–2.

Patrials, 326, 3.

Patronymics, 316.

Pause, caesural, 662.

Peculiarities in conjug., 234 ff.

*Pelagus*, plur. and gend. of, 46, 5; 47, II.

*Penes*, w. accus., 433.

Pentameter, 663, 2.

Penthemimeris, 656, 2.

Penults, quantity of, 645 ff.

*Per*, in compds., 338, 1; 371, 4; *per*, w. acc., 433. *Per me stat*, 499, 1.

Perceiving, constr. of verbs of, 551.

*Perconior*, w. two accs., 374, 2.

Perfect system, 241.

Perfect and supine, formation of, 258.

Perfect, 197; 241, II.; pres. and hist., or definita and indef., 198; wanting, 268, 275, 281, 283.

Perfect, syntax of,—in indic., 471; def. and indef., or pres. and hist., 471; of what has ceased to be, 471, 1; w. *paene*, *prope*, 471, 2; for Eng. pres., 471, 3. In subj., 478; in sequence, 480; after hist. tense, 482, 2; 533, 1; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 509; in orat. obl., 532 ff.; in infin., 542; for pres., 542, 2. In part., 574; for verbal noun, 580.

Period, Latin, arrangement of, 605.

Periphrastic conjugation, 227 ff.

*Peritus*, w. gen., 399, (2).

*Permisceo*, w. dat., 385, 5.

*Permitto*, constr., 551, II. 2.

Person, of nouns, 37; of verbs, 200.

Personal pronouns, 184; use of, 446; reflex. use of, 448.

Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

*Pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*, 410, 6.

*Peto*, constr., 374, 3, 4).

*Ph*, 4.

Phalaeccian verse, 691, V.

Pherecratean verse, 689, II.

*Piget*, constr., 410.

Place, abl. or gen. of, 421 ff.; locative, 423, 2.

Placing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.

Plenty, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419, III.

*Plenus*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.

Pleonasm, 704, II.

Pluperfect, 197; 241, II.—in indic., 472; in letters, 472, 1; for Eng. imp., 472, 2. In subj., 478; sequence, 480; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2; in orat. obl., 532; 533, 2–4.

Plural, 37; wanting, 180; with change of meaning, 132.

*Plus*, without *quam*, 417, 3.

*Poenitet*, constr., 410.

Polysyndeton, 704, II. 1.

*Pone*, w. accus., 433.

- Posco*, w. two accs. or acc. and abl., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.  
 Position, long by, 611; short, 612.  
 Positive, 160; wanting, 166.  
 Possessives, 185; w. gen., 397, 3; for gen., 398, 3; w. *refert* and *interest*, 408, 1, 2; use of, 447; reflexive, 448.  
 Possessor, dat. of, 387.  
*Post*, sound of, 8, 1.  
*Post*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Post*, in expressions of time, 427; *post*, w. acc., 433.  
*Posterus*, compared, 163, 3.  
*Postremus*, force of, 442.  
*Postridie*, w. gen., 411; w. accus., 437, 1.  
*Postulo*, constr., 374, 3, 4).  
*Potens*, w. gen., 399, (3).  
 Potential subjunctive, 485 ff.; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in deliberative questions, 486, II.; in sub. clauses, 486, III.; of repeated action, 486, 5.  
*Potior*, w. gen., 409, 3; w. abl., 419, 4.  
*Prae*, in compds. w. dat., 386; *prae*, w. abl., 434.  
*Praeditus*, w. abl., 419, 3.  
*Praeter*, in compds., w. accus., 371, 4; *praeter*, w. accus., 433.  
 Predicate, 347; simple, 353; complex, 354; compound, 361. Pred. nouns, 355, 362. Pred. adjs., 356; 438, 2. Pred. gen., 401; varieties of, 402; verbs with, 403; other constrs. for, 404. Pred. abl., 428, 1.  
 Prepositions, 306; inseparable, 307; in compds., 338, 1. In expressions of time and space, 378, 1 and 2. W. names of places, 379, 1, 2 and 4. *Pro* with abl., 384, 2, 2). Compds. w. dat., 386. *A* or *ab* w. abl. of agent, 388, 1; 414, 5. Case w. prep. for the dat., 391, 2; for the gen., 398, 4; 399, 5; 407, 2; 410, 4. *Cum* w. abl. of accompaniment, 414, 7. *Quam pro*, 417, 6. W. abl. of place, 421; of source and separation, 425; of time, 426. Preps. w. cases, Rule, 432, 434 ff.; preps. as adverbs, 436.  
 Present, 197; 241, I.,—in indic., 466 ff.; of general truths, customs, hist. praes., 467. In subj., 477. In imperat., 536. In infin., 541. Part., 572.  
 Present perfect, 471, I.  
 Present system of forms, 241.  
 Priapeian verse, 695.  
 Price, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 416.  
*Pridie*, w. gen., 411; w. acc., 437, 1.  
 Primitives and derivatives, 313.  
 Principal parts of verbs, 240, 246–260. Prin. clauses, 345, 2; in oratio obliqua, 530. Prin. elements, 349; tenses, 198, 2.  
*Prior*, *primus*, 166; force of, 442, 1.  
*Priusquam*, w. indic. or subj., 521, 523.  
*Pro*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2; *pro*, w. abl. in defence of, 384, 2, 2); *pro*, w. abl., 434.  
*Pro*, quantity of, in compds., 654, 4.  
*Procul*, w. abl., 437, 2.  
*Prohibeo*, constr., 499, 1; 551, II. 1.  
 Pronouns, 182 ff.; pers., 184; possess., 185; demon., 186; relat., 187; interrog., 188; indef., 189.  
 Pronouns, syntax of, 445–459,—Agreement, 445. Pers. and Posses., 446 ff. Reflex. use of, 448 ff. Demon., 450 ff. Rel., 453. Interrog., 454. Indef., 455.  
 Pronunciation of Latin, 5–28.  
*Prope*, w. accus., 433.  
 Proper nouns, 31.  
*Propior*, *proximus*, 166; w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.  
*Propius*, w. accus., 437, 1.  
*Proprius*, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.  
*Propter*, w. accus., 433.  
 Prosody, 607–701,—Quantity, 608–654. Versification, 655–701.  
*Prospicio*, constr., 385, 3.  
 Prosthesis, 703, 4.  
*Provideo*, constr., 385, 3.  
*Providus*, w. gen., 399, (2).  
*Proxime*, w. accus., 437, 1.  
*Proximum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.  
*Proximus*, w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.  
*Prudens*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.  
 -ps, genit. of nouns in, 75.  
*Pudet*, constr., 410.  
 Punishment, w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.

*Purgo*, constr., 410, 7.

Purpose, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490; pure purpose, 491; mixed, 492; peculiarities, 493; in rel. clauses, 500 ff. Inf. of purpose, 553, V.; gerund, 563, 5; 564, 2; supine, 569; participle, 578, V.

*Pyrites*, decl. of, 48.

**Q**U, changed, 248.

*Quaero*, constr., 374, 3, 4).

*Qualis*, *qualiscunque*, *qualisqualis*, 187, 7; *qualis*, interrog., 188, 4; *qualislibet*, indef., 191, 4.

Quality, characteristic, genit. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428.

*Quam*, w. comparatives, 417, 1; w. superlatives, 170, 2. *Quam pro*, w. abl., 417, 6. *Quam ut*, w. subj., 496, 2. *Quam si*, w. subj., 503, 506. *Quam quod*, w. subj., 520, 3.

*Quamquam*, w. indic. or subj., 516, I.

*Quamvis*, *quantumvis*, w. subj., 515 ff.

*Quando*, w. indic. or subj., 520.

Quantity, 20 ff.; signs of, 24. General rules for, 610 ff. Special, 613-654; final syllables, 613 ff.; increments, 629 ff.; deriv. endings, 645 ff.; stem syllables, 649 ff.

*Quantus*, *quantuscunque*, *quantus-quantus*, 187, 7; indefinite, 188, 4.

*Quasi*, w. subj., 503, 506.

*Qui*, rel., interrog., indef., 187 ff.; for *quo*, *qua*, 187, 1; 188, 2. Use of as rel., interrog., indef., 453 ff. *Qui*, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489, 500 ff. *Qui dicitur*, *vocatur*, 453, 7. *Quicunque*, 187, 4.

*Quia*, w. indic. or subj., 520.

*Quidam*, indef., 191, 455.

*Quidem*, place in clause, 602, III.

*Quilibet*, 191; use of, 458.

*Quin*, w. subj., 489, 498.

*Quinam*, 188, 3.

*Quinarius*, 712.

*Quippe*, w. relative, 519, 3.

*Quis*, interrog., 188; indef., 189 ff.; use of, 454 ff.

*Quis*, for *quibus*, 187, 1.

*Quisnam*, 188, 3.

*Quispiam*, 191; use of, 455.

*Quisquam*, 191; use of, 457.

*Quisque*, 191; use of, 458; w. plur. verb, 461, 3.

*Quisquis*, 187, 4.

*Quitum*, quantity of, 651, 3.

*Quivis*, 191; use of, 458.

*Quo*, w. gen. 396, III. 4); w. subj. of purpose, 489, 497.

*Quoad*, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.

*Quod*, expletive, 453, 6; w. subj., 520; clause w. *quod* unconnected, 554, IV.

*Quojus*, *quoi*, for *cujus*, *cui*, 187, 1.

*Quominus*, w. subj., 499.

*Quoniam*, w. indic. or subj., 520.

*Quoque*, place in the clause, 602, III.

*Quot*, *quotcunque*, *quotquot*, *quotus*, *quotuscunque*, 187, 7; 188, 4.

*Quum*, w. subj., 515, 517 ff.; w. indic., 518, 3.

**R**, DROPPED, 55, 3; changed, 248; nouns in, 48, 51; genit. of, 66; gender, 101, 103, 111, 114.

*R*, quantity of final syllables in, 621.

*Rastrum*, plur. *rastri*, *rastra*, 148.

*Ratum*, quantity of, 651, 3.

*Re*, *red*, 338, 2.

*-re*, for *ris*, 236.

Reason, subj. of, 517 ff. See *Cause*.

*Recordor*, w. gen., 406, II.; w. accus., 407, 1; w. abl. with *de*, 407, 2.

*Recuso*, constr., 499, 1-2.

Reduplicated perfects, 254; quantity of, 652.

*Refert*, constr., 406, III.; 408.

*Refertus*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (2) and 5.

Reflexive use of pronouns, 448 ff.

Regarding, verbs of, w. two accus., 373.

*Regno*, w. gen., 409, 3.

Relative, 187: as adj., 445, 8; use of, 453.

Relative clause, w. potential subj., 486, 1; w. subj. of desire, 488, 5; of purpose, result, 500; of result after indefinite or general antecedents, after *unus*, *solus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, and compar. w. *quam*, 501, I-IV.; w. subj. of condition, 513; of conces-

- sion, 515; of cause, reason, 517, 519; w. infin., 531, 1.
- Reliquum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Remaining, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
- Reminding, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Reminiscor*, w. gen., 406, II.
- Repeated action, subj. of, 486, 5.
- Reposco*, with two accs., 374, 2.
- Resisting, verbs of, w. the dat., 385.
- Respublica*, decl. of, 126.
- Restat ut*, 495, 2.
- Result, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts, 490 ff.; of pure result, 494; mixed, 495; peculiarities, 496. With relatives, 500. See *Relative clause*.
- Reticentia*, 704, I. 3.
- Rhetorical questions, 530, 2.
- Rhythmic accent, 659.
- Rideo*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Rivers, gender of names of, 35.
- Rogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
- rs, genit. of nouns in, 76.
- Rudis*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
- Rules of Syntax, 591.
- Rus*, constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
- Rutum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- S** SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48 ff.; genit. of, 68-76; genit., 110.
- Sacer*, compared, 167; w. dat. or gen., 391; 399, 3, 8).
- Sacpe*, compared, 305, 4.
- Sapio*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Sapphic verse, 664; 690, I.; 691, IV.; greater sapphic, 690, II.
- Satago*, *satagilo*, w. gen., 409, 5.
- Satis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- Satisfacio*, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Satum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Scanning, 668.
- Seazon, 683, 4.
- Scidi*, quantity of, 651, 2.
- Secundum*, w. accus., 433.
- Semi-deponents, 272, 3; 282; use of, 465, 3.
- Senex*, compared, 168, 3.
- Sentences, syntax of, 343-361; classification of, 345 ff.; simple, 347 ff.; complex, 357 ff.; compound, 360. See also *Declarative*, *Exclamatory*, *Imperative*, *Interrogative*.
- Separation, abl. of, 425.
- Sequence of tenses, 480 ff. Rule, 480. Application, 481; after hist. pres., 481, IV.; after imp. subj., 481, V.; after infin. or part., 481, VI. Exceptions, 482; after perf. def., 482, 1; hist. tense, 482, 2; in orat. obliqua, 482, 3.
- Sequitur*, w. subj. or infin., 495, 2; 549, 1.
- Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Servus*, decl. of, 45.
- Sese*, 184, 4.
- Sestertius*, *sestertia*, *sestertium*, 712 ff.
- Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
- si, *sin*, in Greek datives, 90, 97.
- Silver age, 706.
- sim, in perfect subj., 239, 4.
- Similis* and its compds., constr., 391, 2, 4).
- Simple,—sentence, 347 ff.; elements, 350; subject, 351; predicate, 353; words, 313, 1.
- Simul*, w. abl., 437, 2.
- Sin*, w. subjunctive, 503, 507 ff.
- Sine*, w. abl., 434.
- Singular, 37; wanting, 131.
- Sino*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- Sitio*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Situm*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- so, in fut. perfect, 239, 4.
- Sokus*, decl. of, 149; *sokus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
- Source, abl. of, 425.
- Space, abl. of, 378.
- Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Specification, acc. of, 380; genit. of, 396, V.; abl. of, 429.
- Spirants, 3.
- Stanza, 666; stanzas of Horace, 699 ff.
- Stitum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Statuo*, constr., 558, II.
- Stem, 41; in the five decls., 123.
- Stem-syllables, quantity in primitives, 649 ff.; in derivats., 653; in compds., 654.
- Steti*, *stiti*, quantity of, 651, 2.
- Striving, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
- Studiosus*, w. gen., 399.
- Sub*, in compds., 338, 1; compds. w. dat., 386. *Sub* w. acc. or abl., 435.



- Subject,—Simple subject, 351; complex, 352; compound, 361. Subj. nom., 367; omitted, 367, 2. Subj. acc., 375, 545; omitted, 545, 2. Infin. as subj., 549. Clause as subj., 555 ff.
- Subject and object clauses, 554 ff. Indirect questions, infin. clauses, subjunctive clauses, and clauses with *quod*, compared, 554. Subject clauses, 555 ff.; interrog., 555; not interrog., 556. Object clauses, 557 ff.; interrog., 557; not interrog., 558.
- Subjective genitive, 396, I.
- Subjunctive, 196; syntax of, 483–533.—Potential Subj., 485 ff. Subj. of desire, 487 ff. Of purpose or result, 489–501; w. conjuncts, 489 ff.; w. relatives, 500 ff. Of condition, 502 ff. Of concession, 515 ff. Of cause and time, 517 ff. In indirect questions, 524 ff. By attraction, 527. In indirect discourse—*oratio obliqua*, 528.
- Subordinate,—clauses, 345, 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 531. Sub. conjuncts., 311, 588; elements, 349.
- Substantives, see *Nouns*.
- Subter*, in compds. w. acc., 371, 4.
- Subter*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Sui*, decl. of, 184; use of, 448 ff.
- Sum*, w. dat., 387; w. pred. gen., 403.
- Super*, in compds. w. accus., 371, 4.; in compds. with dat., 386. *Super*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- Superlative, 160; irreg., 163; wanting, 168 ff.; formed by *maxime*, 170; w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2).
- Superus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Supine, 196, II.; wanting, 267 ff., 274, 281, 283. Use of, 567 ff.
- Supine system, 241.
- Supplico*, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Supra*, w. accus., 433.
- Suspensus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Suus*, decl. of, 185; use of, 448 ff.
- Syllables, 17 ff.
- Synaeresis, 669, II.
- Synaloepha, 669, I.
- Synecdoche, 705, III.
- Synesis, 704, III. 3.
- Synopsis of conjugation, 216–226.
- Syntax, 343–606,—of sentences, 343–361; of nouns, 362–437; of adjectives, 438–444; of pronouns, 445–459; of verbs, 460–581; of particles, 582–590. Rules of syntax, 591. Arrangement of words and clauses, 592–606.
- Systole, 669, IV.
- T**, SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48; genit. of, 67; gender, 111.
- T* dropped, 55, 3; 248.
- T*, quantity of final syllables in, 621
- Taedet*, constr., 410.
- Talis*, 186, 4.
- Talpa*, gender of, 44.
- Tametsi*, w. subj., 515; 516, III.
- Tanquam*, *tanquam si*, w. subj., 503; 506.
- Tantus*, 186, 4; *tantum abest*, 496, 3.
- Teaching, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
- Ted for te*, 184, 5.
- Tempero*, constr., 385, 3.
- Templum*, decl. of, 45.
- Temporal conjunctions, 311; 588, I.
- Tenses, 197; prin. and hist., 198; wanting, 198, 3. Use of, in indic., 466 ff.; in subj., 476 ff.; sequence of, 480 ff.; in imperat., 534; in infin., 540; in part., 571.
- Tenus*, w. gen., 411; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, 2.
- Terrae*, genit. of place, 424, 3.
- Testis sum*, constr., 551, 3.
- Tete*, 184, 4.
- Tetrameter verse, 663, 2.
- Tetrapody, 656, 2.
- Tetrastich, 666.
- Th, 4.
- Thesis, 660.
- thongos, Greek nouns in, 47, 2.
- Threatening, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- tim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
- Time, accus. of, 378; abl. of, 378, 2; 426; w. the prep. *in*, 426, 2; w. *abhinc*, 427. Time denoted by acc. or abl. w. *ante* or *post*, 427; by participle, 578, I.
- Time, with cause or purpose, subj. of, 521 ff.
- Timeo*, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
- Tis*, for *tui*, 184, 5.
- to, for *tor*, in imperative, 239, 5.

*Tot, totus*, 186, 4. *Totus*, decl. of, 149.

Towns, gender of names of, 35; constr.,—*accus.*, 379; with *urbs* or *oppidum*, 379, 2; genit. or abl., 421, II.

*Trans*, in compds., 338, 1; in compds. w. *acc.*, 371, 4; w. two *accs.*, 374, 6. *Trans*, w. *acc.*, 433.

Transitive verbs, 193; 371, 3.

Trees, gender of names of, 35.

Trimeter, 663, 2.

Tripody, 656, 2.

Tristich, 666.

Trochaic verse, 679 ff.

-*trum*, nouns in, 320.

*Tu*, decl. of, 184.

*Tuli*, quantity of, 651, 2.

-*tus*, nouns in, 318.

*Tuus*, decl. of, 185.

**U** SOUND of, 6 ff., 14; w. sound of *v*, 9. Nouns in *u*, 116; gender of, 118.

*U*, quantity of,—final, 619; in increments, 637, 644.

-*u*, for *ui* in dat., 116, 4.

*Ubi*, w. genit., 396, 2, 4).

-*ubus*, in dat. and abl., 90; 116, 4.

*Ui*, as diphthong, 9.

-*uis*, for *us*, in genit., 116, 4.

-*ula*, nouns in, 320, 5.

-*uleus*, in derivatives, 315, 5.

*Ullus*, decl. of, 149; indef., 191, 2; use of, 457.

*Ullerior, ultimus*, 166; force of, 442, 1.

*Ultra*, w. *accus.*, 433.

-*ulus, ula, ulum*, in nouns, 315; 320, 5; in *ads.*, 327 ff.

-*um*, for *arum*, 42, 3; for *orum*, 45, 5, 4; in gen. plur. of 3d dec., 89.

-*undus, undi*, for *endus, endi*, 238.

*Unus*, decl. of, 149, 176; *unus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.

*Unusquisque*, 191, 1.

-*ur*, genit. of nouns in, 114.

-*ura*, nouns in, 321.

-*urio*, desideratives in, 332, III.

-*us*, for *e* in voc. sing., 45, 5; nouns in, 50 ff., 116; genitive of, 73, 116; gender, 115, 118. Derivatives in, 320, 6; 321; *us*, final, quantity of, 627.

*Usque*, w. *accus.*, 437, 1.

-*ustus*, *ads.* in, 323.

*Uvus*, constr., 419.

-*ut*, nouns in, 51; genit. of, 67; genit., 111.

*Ui*, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489 ff.; omitted, 493, 2; w. *qui*, 519, 3.

*Ui si*, w. subj., 503, 506.

*Ui quisque—ita*, 458, 2.

*Uter, uterunque*, 149; 187, 6; 188, 4; 191, 2.

*Uterlibet, uterque, utervis*, 191, 3.

*Uterque*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.

*Utinam*, w. subj. of desire, 488, 1.

*Utor*, constr., 419; 419, 4.

*Utpote*, w. *qui*, 519, 3.

*Utrum*, 346, II. 2.

-*utus*, *ads.* in, 323.

-*uus*, verbal *ads.* in, 328, 5.

-*ux*, genitive of nouns in, 81.

**V** PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.

*Vacuu*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3) and 5.

Value, genit. of, 396, IV.

*Vannus*, gender of, 47.

*Velut, velut si*, w. subj., 503, 506.

Verbal inflections, table of, 242.

Verbs, etymology of—Classes, voices, moods, tenses, etc., 192–203. Paradigma, 204–215. Synopsis, 216–226. Periphrastic conj., 227–232. Contractions and peculiarities, 234–239. Formation of parts, 240 ff. Table of inflections, 242. Comparative view of conjs., 243 ff. Principal parts of verbs, 246–260. Classification of verbs, 261–286. Irreg. verbs, 287–296. Defect., 297. Impers., 298–301. Deriv., 330 ff. Compound, 341. Irregularities of special verbs, 721. See also *Transitive, Intrans., Finite, Deponent, Semi-depon., Impersonal, Frequent., Incept., Desiderat., Diminutive.*

Verbs, syntax of, 460, 581,—Agreement, 460 ff. Omitted, 367, 3; 460, 3. Voices, 464 ff. Tenses of Indic., 466 ff. Use of Indic., 474. Tenses of Subj., 476 ff. Use of Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Inf., 539–553. Subject and

object clauses, 554 ff. Gerund, 559-566. Supine, 567 ff. Participles, 571-581.  
 Verb-stem, 203.  
*Vereor*, constr., 492, 4.  
*Verisimile est, verum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.  
*Vere*, place in clause, 602, III.  
*Verses*, 661; names of, 663 ff.  
 Versification, 655,—Feet, 656 ff.  
     Verses, 661 ff. Figures of prosody, 669. Varieties of verse, 670 ff.  
*Versus*, w. accus., 433.  
*Vescor*, constr., 419; 419, 4.  
*Vestras*, 185, 2.  
*Vestri, vestrum*, 396, I.; 446, 3.  
*Veto*, constr., 551, II. 1.  
*Vetus*, compared, 167.  
*Vicinus*, w. dat. or gen., 391, 1; 399, 3.  
*Vir*, decl. of, 45, 4.  
*Virgil*, versification of, 696.  
 Vocative, formation of, 86, 88; in Greek nouns, 95; in adjs., 154, 157. Syntax of, 369.  
 Voices, 195. See also under *Verbs*, *syntax of*.  
*Volens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.  
*Volo*, constr., 551, II. 1.

*-volus*, compds. in, compared, 164.  
 Vowels, 3, I.; sounds of, 6 ff., 14 ff.; before *r*, 6, 2.

**W**, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.  
 Want, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419.

Warning, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.

Weights, Roman, 714.

Winds, gender of names of, 35.

Wishing, constr. of verbs of, 551.

Words, arrangement of, 592.

**X**, SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 48, 50; genitive of, 77-83; gender of, 108.

**Y**, ONLY in Greek words, 2.  
 Nouns in, 48; genitive of, 62; gender, 111.

*Y*, quantity of,—final, 617; in increments, 638.

*-ya*, genitive of nouns in, 74; gender of, 107; quantity of *ys* final, 628.

*-yæ*, genitive of nouns in, 82.

**Z**, ONLY in Greek words, 2.  
 Zeugma, 704, I. 2.

THE END.



## The Works of Horace.

With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. I. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo, 575 pages.

The text of this edition is mainly that of Orelli, the most important readings of other critics being given in foot-notes. The volume is introduced with a biographical sketch of Horace and a critique on his writings, which enable the student to enter intelligently on his work. Peculiar grammatical constructions, as well as geographical and historical allusions, are explained in notes, which are just full enough to aid the pupil, to excite him to gain a thorough understanding of the author, and awaken in him a taste for philological studies, without taking all labor off his hands. While the chief aim has been to impart a clear idea of Latin Syntax as exhibited in the text, it has also been a cherished object to take advantage of the means so variously and richly furnished by Horace for promoting the poetical taste and literary culture of the student.

*From an article by PROF. BAHR, of the University of Heidelberg, in the Heidelberg Annals of Literature.*

"There are already several American editions of Horace, intended for the use of schools; of one of these, which has passed through many editions, and has also been widely circulated in England, mention has been formerly made in this journal; but that one we may not put upon an equality with the one now before us, inasmuch as this has taken a different stand-point, which may serve as a sign of progress in this department of study. The editor has, it is true, also intended his work for the use of schools, and has sought to adapt it, in all its parts, to such a use; but still, without losing sight of this purpose, he has proceeded throughout with more independence. In the preparation of the Notes, the editor has faithfully observed the principles (laid down in his preface); the explanations of the poet's words commend themselves by a compressed brevity which limits itself to what is most essential, and by a sharp precision of expression; and references to other passages of the poet, and also to grammars, dictionaries, &c., are not wanting."

## Sallust's Jugurtha and Catiline.

With Notes and a Vocabulary. By NOBLE BUTLER and MINARD STURGUS. 12mo, 397 pages.

The editors have spent a vast amount of time and labor in correcting the text, by a comparison of the most improved German and English editions. It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition hitherto published in this country. In accordance with their chronological order, the "Jugurtha" precedes the "Catilina." The Notes are copious and tersely expressed; they display not only fine scholarship, but (what is quite as necessary in such a book) a practical knowledge of the difficulties which the student encounters in reading this author, and the aids that he requires. The Vocabulary was prepared by the late WILLIAM H. G. BUTLER. It will be found an able and faithful performance.

## Virgil's *Æneid*.

With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY S. FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. Illustrated. 12mo, 598 pages.

The appearance of this edition of Virgil's *Æneid* will, it is believed, be hailed with delight by all classical teachers. Neither expense nor pains have been spared to clothe the great Latin epic in a fitting dress. The type is unusually large and distinct, and errors in the text, so annoying to the learner, have been carefully avoided. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, costumes, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations. The great feature of this edition is the scholarly and judicious commentary furnished in the appended Notes. The author has here endeavored not to show his learning, but to supply such practical aid as will enable the pupil to understand and appreciate what he reads. The notes are just full enough, thoroughly explaining the most difficult passages, while they are not so extended as to take all labor off the pupil's hands. Properly used, they cannot fail to impart an intelligent acquaintance with the syntax of the language. In a word, this work is commended to teachers as the most elegant, accurate, interesting, and practically useful edition of the *Æneid* that has yet been published.

*From JOHN H. BRUNNER, President of Hiwassee College.*

"The typography, paper, and binding of Virgil's *Æneid*, by Prof. Frieze, are all that need be desired; while the learned and judicious notes appended, are very valuable indeed."

*From Principal of Piedmont (Va.) Academy.*

"I have to thank you for a copy of Prof. Frieze's edition of the *Æneid*. I have been exceedingly pleased in my examination of it. The size of the type from which the text is printed, and the faultless execution, leave nothing to be desired in these respects. The adherence to a standard text throughout, increases the value of this edition."

*From D. G. MOORE, Principal U. High School, Rutland.*

"The copy of Frieze's 'Virgil' forwarded to me was duly received. It is so evidently superior to any of the other editions, that I shall unhesitatingly adopt it in my classes."

## Select Orations of M. Tullius Cicero :

With Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON,  
Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo, 459  
pages.

This edition of Cicero's Select Orations possesses some special advantages for the student which are both new and important. It is the only edition which contains the improved text that has been prepared by a recent careful collation and correct deciphering of the best manuscripts of Cicero's writings. It is the work of the celebrated Orelli, Madvig, and Klotz, and has been done since the appearance of Orelli's complete edition. The Notes, by Professor Johnson, of the New York University, have been mostly selected, with great care, from the best German authors, as well as the English edition of Arnold.

*From THOMAS CHASE, Tutor in Latin in Harvard University.*

"An edition of Cicero like Johnson's has long been wanted; and the excellence of the text, the illustrations of words, particles, and pronouns, and the explanation of various points of construction and interpretation, bear witness to the Editor's familiarity with some of the most important results of modern scholarship, and entitle his work to a large share of public favor."

"It seems to us an improvement upon any edition of these Orations that has been published in this country, and will be found a valuable aid in their studies to the lovers of classical literature."—*Troy Daily Whig.*

## Cicero's de Officiis :

With English Notes, mostly translated from ZUMPT and BONNELL. By  
THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo, 194 pages.

In this edition, a few historical notes have been introduced in cases where the Dictionary in common use has not been found to contain the desired information; the design of which is to aid the learner in understanding the contents of the treatises, the thoughts and reasoning of the author, to explain grammatical difficulties, and inculcate a knowledge of grammatical principles. The Editor has aimed throughout to guide rather than carry the learner through difficulties; requiring of him more study, in consequence of his help, than he would have devoted to the book without it.

*From M. L. STOEVEY, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Pennsylvania College.*

"I have examined with much pleasure Prof. Thacher's edition of Cicero de Officiis, and am convinced of its excellence. The Notes have been prepared with great care and good judgment. Practical knowledge of the wants of the student has enabled the Editor to furnish just the kind of assistance required; grammatical difficulties are removed, and the obscurities of the treatise are explained, the interest of the learner is elicited, and his industry directed rather than superseded. There can be but one opinion with regard to the merits of the work, and I trust that Professor Thacher will be disposed to continue his labors so carefully commenced, in this department of classical learning."

## Lincoln's Livy.

Selections from the first Five Books, together with the Twenty-First and Twenty-Second Books entire; with a Plan of Rome, a Map of the passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo, 329 pages.

The publishers believe that in this edition of Livy a want is supplied which has been universally felt; there being previous to this no American edition furnished with the requisite aids for the successful study of this Latin author. The text is chiefly that of Alschefski, which is now generally received by the best critics. The notes have been prepared with special reference to the grammatical study of the language, and the illustration of its forms, constructions, and idioms, as used by Livy. They will not be found to foster habits of dependence in the student, by supplying indiscriminate translation or unnecessary assistance; but come to his help only in such parts as it is fair to suppose he cannot master by his own exertions. They also embrace all necessary information relating to history, geography, and antiquities.

Lincoln's Livy has been highly commended by critics, and is used in nearly all the colleges in the country.

*From PROF. ANDERSON, of Waterville College.*

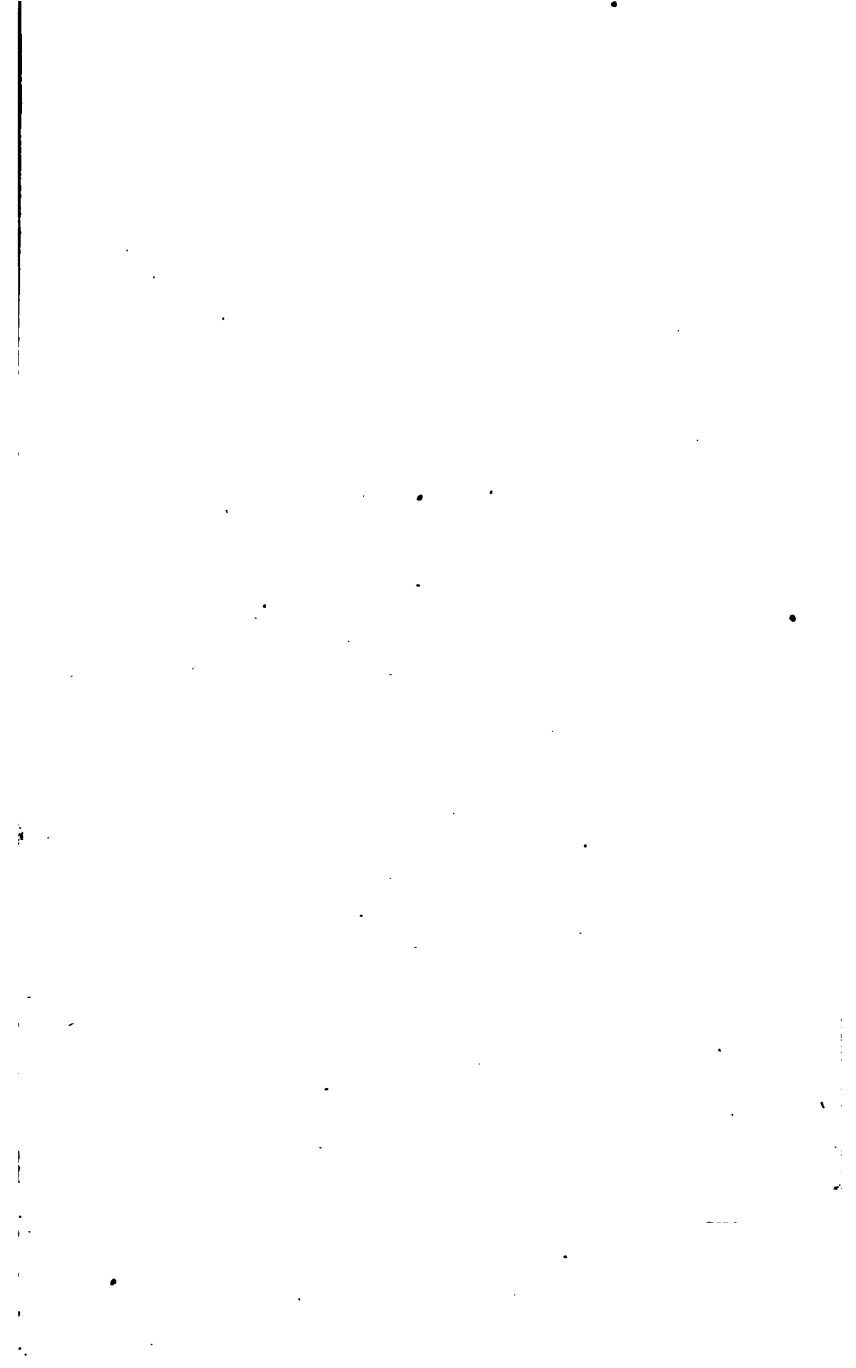
"A careful examination of several portions of your work has convinced me that, for the use of students, it is altogether superior to any edition of Livy with which I am acquainted. Among its excellencies you will permit me to name the close attention given to particles, to the subjunctive mood, the constant reference to the grammars, the discrimination of words nearly synonymous, and the care in giving the localities mentioned in the text. The book will be hereafter used in our college."

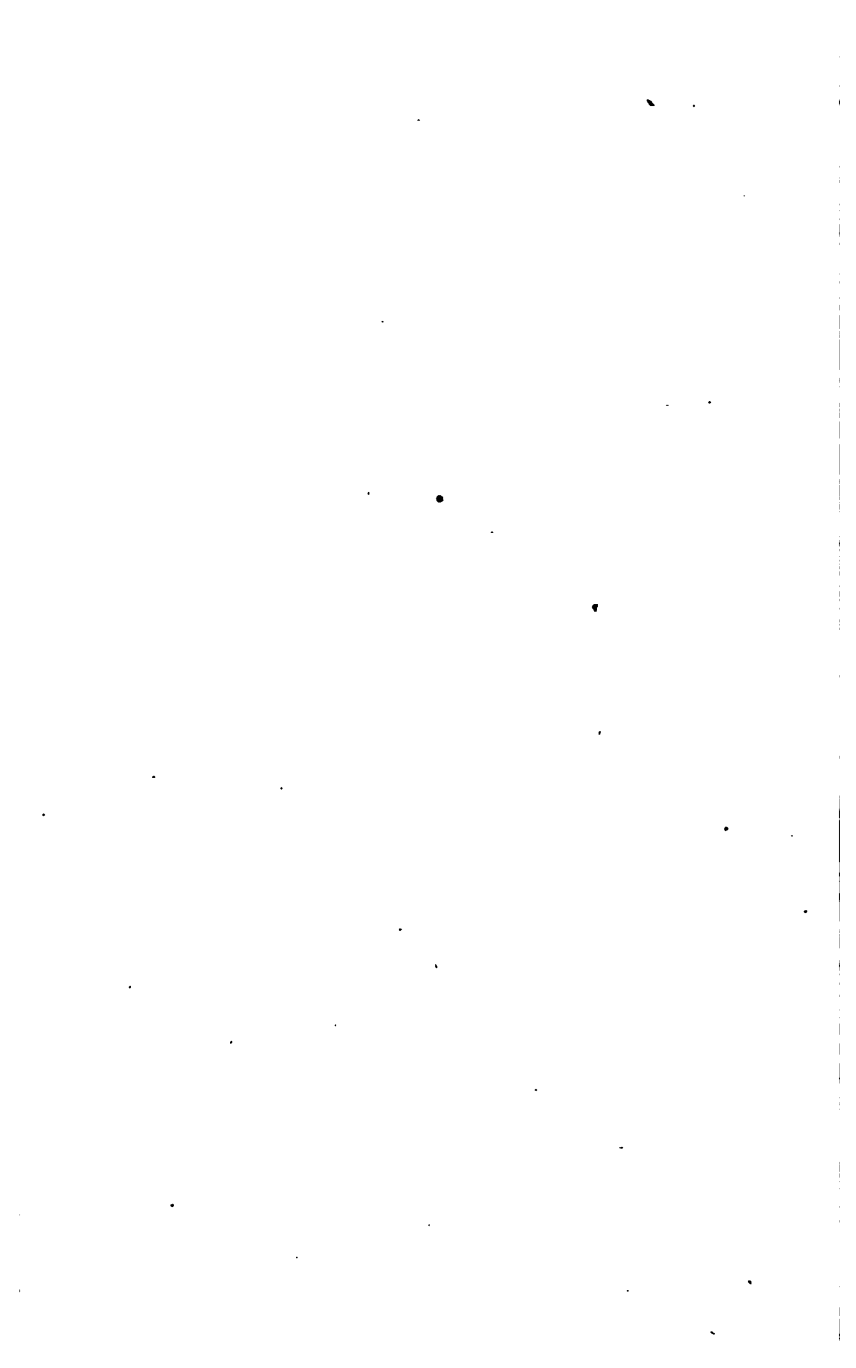
## Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament.

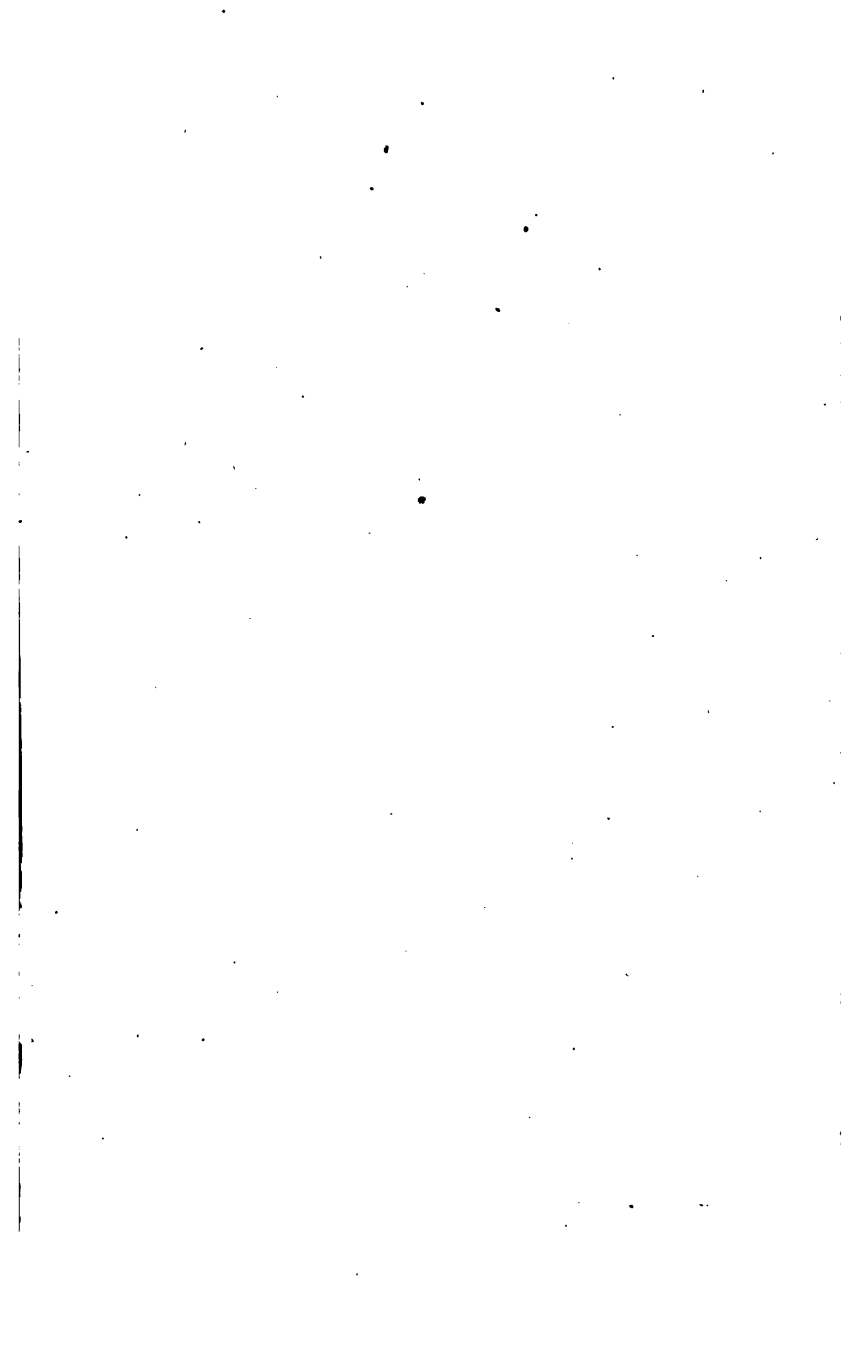
12mo, 291 pages.

The now acknowledged propriety of giving students of languages familiar works for translation—thus adopting in the schools the mode by which the child first learns to talk—has induced the publication of this new American edition of Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament. Ever since its first appearance, this work has kept its place in the general esteem; while more recent versions have been so strongly tinged with the peculiar views of the translators as to make them acceptable to particular classes only. The editor has exerted himself to render the present edition worthy of patronage by its superior accuracy and neatness; and the publishers flatter themselves that the pains bestowed will insure for it a preference over other editions.









## Standard Classical Works.

---

**Arnold's First Greek Book,\*** on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.

**Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.\*** 12mo. 237 pages.

**Arnold's Second Part to the Above.\*** 12mo. 248 pages.

**Arnold's Greek Reading Book.** Containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, Copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.

Dr. Arnold's Greek Courses have been carefully revised, corrected, and improved by J. A. SPENCER, D.D., making them a thorough, practical, and easy Greek course.

**Beise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition.** Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES E. BEISE, Professor of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar.** By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.

**First Lessons in Greek;\*** or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, rector of Hopkins Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. (Recently published.) 12mo.

**Hadley's Greek Grammar,\*** for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. (Recently published.) 12mo. 366 pages.

**Herodotus, Selections From;** Comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D.D., Professor of Philosophy and English Literature in Dickinson College. 12mo. 185 pages.

**Kuhner's Greek Grammar.** Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.

## Standard Classical Works.

---

**Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.\*** Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Professor of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 871 pages.

**Plato's Apology and Crito.\*** With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pages.

**Xenophon's Memorabilia of Socrates.** With Notes and Introduction by R. D. C. ROBBINS, Professor of Language in Middlebury College. 12mo. 421 pages.

**Xenophon's Anabasis.** With Explanatory Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By JAMES R. BOISE, Professor of Greek in the University of Michigan. 12mo. 398 pages.

**Sophocles' *Edipus Tyrannus*.** With Notes for the Use of Schools and Colleges. By HOWARD CROSBY, Professor of Greek in the University of New York. 12mo. 188 pages.

## Hebrew and Syriac.

**Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar.** Seventeenth Edition, with Corrections and Additions, by Dr. E. RUDIGER. Translated by T. J. CONANT, Professor of Hebrew in Rochester Theological Seminary, New York. 8vo. 861 pages. 4.00

**Uhlemann's Syriac Grammar.** Translated from the German. By ENOCH HUTCHINSON. With a Course of Exercises in Syriac Grammar, and a Chrestomathy and brief Lexicon prepared by the Translator. 8vo. 867 pages.

---

D. APPLETON & CO.,

448 & 445 BROADWAY, N. Y.,

PUBLISH UPWARDS OF

### 200 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

#### Descriptive Catalogue

*Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.*

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus\*, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.